Slovak

for Missionaries

Slovak
for Missionaries

Slovak, April 2018

© 2018 by Intellectual Reserve, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

This document may contain proprietary intellectual property that may not be used or shared without proper written consent.

Contents

How Do I Use This Book? vi

Grammar-Task Index viii

Basics

1 Alphabet and Pronunciation 1

2 Word Order and Parts of Speech 4

Asking About and Expressing a State of Being 9

3 Subject Pronouns 10

4 Personal Pronouns 14

5 *Byť* 18

6 Negation 21

7 Questions 25

Review: State of Being 29

Asking About and Describing Objects, People, and Their Characteristics 33

8 Gender 34

9 Pluralization 38

10 Adjective-Noun Agreement 41

11 Possessive Pronouns 46

12 Demonstrative Pronouns 51

13 *Ktorý* (Who, Which, That) 55

14 All, Everything, and Everyone 59

15 Adverbs 62

16 Comparative and Superlative 67

Review: Describing 71

Asking About and Describing Actions and Events 75

17 Verbs 76

18 Irregular Verbs 81

19 Aspect and Future 86

20 Verbal Nouns, Adjectives, and Adverbs 90

21 Verbs of Motion and Verb Prefixes 94

22 Reflexive Pronouns and Articles 99

Review: Actions and Events 103

Narrating Experiences and Telling Stories 107
23 Past Tense, L-form and Aby. 108
24 Prepositions. 114
25 Passive Voice 121
Review: Narrating 126
Asking About and Expressing Desire, Need, Preference, Ability, Intention, or Purpose 129
26 *Rád* (To Like) 130
27 Commands 134
28 Conditional 138
29 *Keby* and *Ak* (If-Then) 142
Review: Expressing. 146
Asking and Answering Questions of Time, Date, and Frequency 149
30 Time and Date 150
31 *To, čo* and Before, During, and After 156
32 When 160
33 How Often 164
Review: Time, Date, and Frequency 167
Asking and Answering Questions of Quantity, Number, and Sequence 171
34 Quantity and Genitive 172
35 Declension of Numbers 177
Review: Quanitity, Number, and Sequence 182
Asking and Answering Questions Using Cases 185
36 Genitive (2nd Case). 186
37 Dative (3rd Case). 191
38 Accusative (4th Case) 196
39 Locative and Instrumental Cases (6th and 7th Cases) 201
40 Uncommon Noun Declensions. 207
Review: Cases. 211
Appendix 215
Missionary Tasks. 225
Scenerio Practice 233
Grammar Glossary 239
Answers 241
Index 283

How Do I Use This Book?

What is This Book?

Preach My Gospel teaches that you should focus your language study "on improving your ability to communicate and teach during scheduled activities" (129). This book is designed to provide you with resources to help you create your own effective language study plan. The grammar principles are organized according to the purpose for communicating gospel topics and missionary tasks to help you choose tasks to learn as you create your own language study plan. Use this book to identify which grammar principles you need to understand to help you address the needs of your investigators and invite them to come to Christ.

This book is not simply to teach you grammar, but more importantly to help you prepare to teach the gospel of Jesus Christ with greater power and clarity in your mission language *(Preach My Gospel, 127).*

Features of This Book

- **Grammar-Task Index.** Easy access to specific grammar principles that can help as you teach and prepare to teach each lesson from *Preach My Gospel* and complete various missionary tasks.
- **Tabs.** Black tabs on the sides of the pages will help you find principles of communication quickly (e.g., possession, describing, expressing, time/location, etc.).
- **Explanations.** Explanations are made up of sentence equations, tables, and examples that will help you understand grammar principles.
- **Activities.** Activities are designed to help you create a language study plan as directed in chapter 7 of *Preach My Gospel*. You don't have to do all the activities, and you don't have to do them in any particular order. It is up to you to choose activities that will help you learn new vocabulary and grammar principles, practice your ability to listen, and improve your ability to read and write. These activities can be done in personal study, with your companion, or with native speakers.
- **Appendix.** While you will find some tables with verb conjugations and verb roots throughout the book, the appendix has a collection of verb conjugation charts, noun and adjective declension charts, pronoun declension charts, composite chart, number declension charts, and a list of prepositions.
- **Missionary Tasks.** Basic sentence structures and vocabulary needed for common missionary tasks.
- **Scenario Practice.** These are sample situations and conversations that you may experience as a missionary. Practicing these situations will prepare you to respond to members and investigators' questions or handle challenging situations.
- **Grammar Glossary.** Occasionally you may find a few English grammar terms that you don't recognize or understand. The grammar glossary is designed to be a quick reference to common grammar terms.
- **Answer key.** Answers to most activities can be found in the back of the book listed by section.

Remember

"As your ability to speak the language grows, people will listen more to what you say than to how you say it. . . You will be better able to respond to the needs of investigators and the promptings of the Spirit" (*Preach My Gospel*, 128). You can receive the gift of tongues as you do all that you can to learn the language, trust in the Spirit to guide you, and have faith that you can be given the gift of tongues (*Preach My Gospel*, 133). Ask Yourself as You Study

- What am I learning about the structure of my mission language? What can the grammar teach me about the people and their culture?
- How can mastering this grammar principle help me to invite others to come unto Christ and receive the restored gospel?
- How do I invite the Spirit to help me learn grammar?
- How am I using my language study time in a way that will help me to improve my ability to communicate with the people?

Feedback

We want to know what you think about the book and how it has impacted your language learning experience!

- How are you using this book to learn your mission language?
- What about this book is most helpful to you? Why?
- Do you have additional suggestions?
    - grammar principles
    - activities
    - corrections

Send a quick message with your mission language in the subject line to formissionaries@mtc.byu.edu.

Grammar-Task Index

The Grammar-Task Index is intended to be a quick reference so you can focus your language study improving your ability to teach specific gospel principles or perform missionary tasks. Because the content in each of the lessons in *Preach My Gospel* is different, your need to understand specific grammar principles will vary based on the lesson you will be teaching. You can use this list to help you determine which grammar principles to study based on the needs of your investigators and planned daily activities.

The grammar principles are divided into two columns, basic and additional, so you can study grammar principles based on your understanding of the language.

Principle/Task	Basic	Additional
Lesson 1		
God is Our Loving Heavenly Father	Subject Pronouns; *Byť*; Possessive Pronouns; Past Tense; L-form & *Aby*	Verbs; Irregular Verbs; Personal Pronouns; Cases (3rd, 4th)
The Gospel Blesses Families	Past Tense; L-form & *Aby*; Gender; Prepositions	Possessive Pronouns; Verbs; Passive Voice; Cases (3rd, 4th)
Heavenly Father Reveals His Gospel in Every Dispensation	Negation; Possessive Pronouns; Verbs; Prepositions	Passive Voice; Past Tense; L-form & *Aby*; Irregular Verbs; Cases (2nd, 3rd, 4th, 6th, 7th)
The Savior's Earthly Ministry and Atonement	Past Tense; L-form & *Aby*; Irregular Verbs; Possessive Pronouns; Prepositions	Aspect and Future; Cases (4th)
The Great Apostasy	To, Čo and Before, During, & After; Past Tense; L-form & *Aby*; Passive Voice	Possessive Pronouns; Prepositions; Cases (2nd, 3rd, 4th, 6th, 7th)
The Restoration of the Gospel of Jesus Christ through Joseph Smith	Past Tense; L-form & *Aby*; Aspect and Future; Prepositions	Verbs; Adjective-Noun Agreement; Cases (2nd, 3rd, 4th, 6th, 7th)
The Book of Mormon: Another Testament of Jesus Christ	Adjective-Noun Agreement; Prepositions; Demonstrative Pronouns	Aspect and Future; Past Tense; L-form & *Aby*; Cases (2nd, 4th)
Pray to Know the Truth through the Holy Ghost	Commands; Aspect and Future; Adjective-Noun Agreement; Prepositions	Verbs; *Byť*; Irregular Verbs; Cases (3rd, 4th, 7th)
Lesson 2		
The Plan of Salvation	Questions; Prepositions	Past Tense; L-form & *Aby*; Aspect and Future; Cases (2nd, 3rd, 4th)
The Creation	Past Tense; L-form & *Aby*; Conditional; Passive Voice	To, Čo and Before, During, & After; Cases (4th)
Agency and the Fall of Adam and Eve	Past Tense; L-form & *Aby*; Aspect and Future	Prepositions; Adjective-Noun Agreement; Cases (2nd, 4th, 7th)
Our Life on Earth	Personal Pronouns; Passive Voice; Verbs	Personal Pronouns; Irregular Verbs; Prepositions; Cases (2nd, 3rd, 4th, 6th, 7th)
The Atonement	Past Tense; L-form & *Aby*; Conditional; Aspect and Future	Personal Pronouns; Verbs; Cases (2nd, 4th, 7th)
The Spirit World	Aspect and Future; *Byť*; To, Čo and Before, During, & After	Passive Voice; Adjective-Noun Agreement; Prepositions; Cases (2nd, 4th)
The Resurrection, Judgment, and Immortality	Adverbs; *Byť*; To, Čo and Before, During, & After; Passive Voice	Aspect and Future; *Ktorý* (Who, Which, That); Cases (2nd, 4th)
Kingdoms of Glory	Comparative and Superlative; Demonstrative Pronouns; *Ktorý* (Who, Which, That)	Aspect and Future, Past Tense; L-form & *Aby*; Cases (2nd, 3rd, 4th)
Lesson 3		
Through Jesus Christ We Can Be Cleansed from Sin	Verbs; Prepositions	Passive Voice; Possessive Pronouns; Cases (2nd, 3rd, 4th, 6th, 7th)
Faith in Jesus Christ	Verbs; Subject Pronouns	Personal Pronouns; Possessive Pronouns Cases (2nd, 3rd, 4th, 6th, 7th)

Repentance	Irregular Verbs; Reflexive Pronouns & Articles; To, Čo and Before, During, & After	Past Tense; L-form & *Aby*; Personal Pronouns; Passive Voice; Cases (2nd, 4th, 7th)
Baptism, Our First Covenant	Cases; Personal Pronouns; Reflexive Pronouns & Articles; Noun Declensions	Passive Voice; Prepositions; Past Tense; L-form & *Aby*; Cases (2nd, 4th, 6th, 7th)
The Gift of the Holy Ghost	Past Tense; L-form & *Aby*; Adjective-Noun Agreement; Verbs	Personal Pronouns; Personal Pronouns; Cases (2nd, 4th, 7th)
Endure to the End	Reflexive Pronouns & Articles; Verbs; Aspect and Future	Prepositions; Passive Voice; Prepositions; Cases (2nd, 3rd, 4th)
Lesson 4		
Obedience	Past Tense; L-form & *Aby*; Possessive Pronouns; Conditional	Personal Pronouns; Verbs; Irregular Verbs; Cases (2nd, 3rd, 4th, 6th, 7th)
Pray Often	Possessive Pronouns; Personal Pronouns; Past Tense; L-form & *Aby*	Reflexive Pronouns & Articles; Prepositions; Cases (2nd, 3rd, 4th, 6th, 7th)
Study the Scriptures	Adverbs; Verbs; Prepositions	Prepositions; Adjective-Noun Agreement; Cases (3rd, 4th, 7th)
Keep the Sabbath Day Holy	Prepositions; Reflexive Pronouns & Articles; Verbs; Conditional	Verbs; Byť; Possessive Pronouns; Cases (2nd, 3rd, 4th, 6th, 7th)
Baptism and Confirmation	Verbs; Personal Pronouns; Noun Declensions	Prepositions; Verbs; Cases (4th, 6th, 7th)
Follow the Prophet	Gender; Past Tense; L-form & *Aby*; Prepositions	Personal Pronouns; Cases (2nd, 3rd, 4th)
Keep the Ten Commandments	Past Tense; L-form & *Aby*; Personal Pronouns; Aspect and Future	Irregular Verbs; Cases (2nd, 3rd, 4th, 6th, 7th)
Live the Law of Chastity	Verbs; Adjective-Noun Agreement	Prepositions; Comparative and Superlative; *Ktorý* (Who, Which, That); Cases (2nd, 4th, 6th, 7th)
Obey the Word of Wisdom	Adjective-Noun Agreement; Verbs; Personal Pronouns	Personal Pronouns; Past Tense; L-form & *Aby; Byť;* Cases (2nd, 4th, 7th)
Keep the Law of Tithing	Personal Pronouns;	Irregular Verbs; Prepositions; Cases (2nd, 4th)
Observe the Law of the Fast	Adjective-Noun Agreement; Reflexive Pronouns & Articles; Adverbs	Past Tense; L-form & *Aby*; Prepositions; Conditional; Cases (4th, 7th)
How to Donate Tithes and Offerings	Passive Voice; Commands; Verbs; Prepositions	Aspect and Future; Irregular Verbs; Cases (3rd, 4th)
Obey and Honor the Law	Verbs; Passive Voice; Conditional	*Byť*; Adjective-Noun Agreement; Cases (2nd, 4th)
Lesson 5		
Priesthood and Auxiliaries	Cases; Personal Pronouns; Adjective-Noun Agreement	Past Tense; L-form & Aby; Passive Voice; Prepositions; Cases (2nd, 3rd, 4th, 6th, 7th)
Missionary Work	Passive Voice; Verbs; *Byť*	Prepositions; Cases (2nd, 3rd, 4th, 6th, 7th)
Eternal Marriage	Cases; Reflexive Pronouns & Articles; *Byť*	Adjective-Noun Agreement; Cases (2nd, 4th)
Temples and Family History	Verbs; Genitive (*2nd Case*); Dative (*3rd Case*); Adjective-Noun Agreement	Cases (4th, 7th)
Service	Past Tense; L-form & *Aby*; Reflexive Pronouns & Articles	Cases (2nd, 3rd, 4th)
Teaching and Learning in the Church	Prepositions; Verbs; Reflexive Pronouns & Articles	Aspect and Future; Cases (4th)
Enduring to the End	Reflexive Pronouns & Articles; Verbs; Aspect and Future	Prepositions; Passive Voice; Prepositions; Cases (2nd, 3rd, 4th)

Missionary Tasks		
Ask Questions	Questions; Prepositions; Verbs	Cases (6th)
Conduct a Meeting	Personal Pronouns; Aspect and Future	Irregular Verbs; Verbs; Passive Voice; Cases (2nd, 4th)
Explain Priesthood Ordinances	Adjective-Noun Agreement; Passive Voice; Past Tense; L-form & *Aby*	Questions; Cases (2nd, 3rd, 4th, 6th, 7th)
Extend Commitment Invitations	Aspect and Future; Questions; Time & Date	*Rád (To Like)*; Cases; Personal Pronouns; Cases (4th, 6th)
Follow up on Commitments	Questions; Time & Date; Aspect and Future	Commands; Past Tense; L-form & *Aby*; Cases (4th)
Get to Know Someone	Questions; *Rád (To Like); Byť*	Irregular Verbs; Conditional; Cases (2nd, 3rd, 4th, 6th, 7th)
Give Directions	Commands; Passive Voice; *Byť*	Cases (2nd, 4th)
Help People Resolve Their Concerns	Questions; Conditional; *Rád (To Like)*	Past Tense; L-form & *Aby*; Aspect and Future; Cases (2nd, 3rd, 4th, 6th, 7th)
Make a Telephone Call	Questions; *Byť*; Conditional	Verbs; Cases (4th, 6th)
Make Appointments	Time & Date; Questions; Conditional	Verbs; Cases (4th, 6th)
Meet Someone	*Byť*; Questions	*Rád (To Like)*; Irregular Verbs; Commands
Obtain Referrals	Questions; Aspect and Future; Conditional	*Rád (To Like)*; Irregular Verbs; Commands; Cases (4th)
Offer a Prayer	Commands; *Byť*	Past Tense; L-form & *Aby*; Irregular Verbs; Cases (2nd, 3rd, 4th, 6th, 7th)
Perform Priesthood Ordinances	Personal Pronouns	Past Tense; L-form & *Aby*; Irregular Verbs; Cases (3rd, 4th)
Plan Daily and Weekly Activities	Questions; Time & Date; Aspect and Future	Verbs; Cases (4th, 6th)
Share an Experience	Past Tense; L-form & Aby; Aspect and Future	Cases (2nd, 3rd, 4th, 6th, 7th)
Talk with Everyone	Irregular Verbs; Questions; Past Tense; L-form & *Aby*	*Rád (To Like)*; Conditional; Cases (2nd, 3rd, 4th, 6th, 7th)
Teach Others How to Pray	Personal Pronouns; Reflexive Pronouns & Articles; Questions	*Byť*; Past Tense; L-form & *Aby*; Cases (4th)
Testify	Irregular Verbs; Verbs	Personal Pronouns; Cases (2nd, 3rd, 4th, 6th, 7th)
Use the Scriptures	Questions; *Byť*; Passive Voice	Conditional; Personal Pronouns; Cases (2nd, 3rd, 4th, 7th)

Alphabet and Pronunciation

Explanation

Slovak and English both use the Latin alphabet. Many Slovak letters have the same sounds as their English equivalents. Unlike English, however, Slovak vowels make only one sound each. The first syllable of a word is always stressed.

Pronunciation and Diacritical Marks

Slovak is almost always pronounced exactly as it is written. The following tables contain the vowels and consonants of Slovak. Next to each letter is an English word with a similar, but not identical, sound. The second column lists some Slovak words that contain the target letter and sound, and the last column explains the sound. Use these tables of basic Slovak sounds as a point of reference only. To develop native-like pronunciation, listen attentively to native Slovak speakers and imitate closely their pronunciation.

The marks used with letters in Slovak are the *dĺžeň (á), mäkčeň (č),* and the *vôkáň (ô)*.

Vowels

Vowels	Sounds like . . .	Slovak Examples
a	*father*	m**a**tk**a**, **a**poštol, n**á**š
e	*let*	**e**vanj**e**lium, záuj**e**m, l**e**kcia
i	*me*	B**i**bl**i**a, Ježi**š**, kn**i**ha (y also sounds like i)
o	*cold*	**o**brad, **o**krs**o**k, **o**tec
u	*boot*	sl**u**žba, d**u**ch, Krist**u**s
y	*me*	Nebesk**ý**, jaz**y**k, svät**ý** (i also sounds like y)
ô	*swore*	d**ô**vod, m**ô**žeme, n**ô**ž
ä	*bend*	sv**ä**tý, op**ä**ť, p**ä**ť

Consonants

Letters	Sounds like . . .	Slovak Examples	Explanation
b	**book**	***b**ol, **B**iblia, **B**oh*	The *b* sounds similar to the English **b**.
c	**oats**	***c**irkev, **c**ena, **c**esta*	The *c* sound is much different than the English c. In Slovak, it sounds like *-ts*. For example, *tipický* is pronounced *tee-peets-kee.*
č	**church**	***č**o, **č**len, **č**istý*	The *č* sound is just like the sound *ch* in English. The accent mark sets it apart. Don't confuse *č* with *ch* in Slovak.
d	**dispensation**	***d**ispenzácia, **d**ar, **d**uch*	The *d* is pronounced the same as the English **d**.
d'	**duty (dyooty)**	***ď**akovať , me**ď**, **Ď**uro*	The *ď* is softer than the normal *d* in Slovak. It is pronounced by flattening the tongue against the roof of the mouth. In many cases this sounds much like it would if we were to add an English **y** after the *d*. For example, *Ďuro* is pronounced *Dyu-ro.*
f	**flip**	***f**otka, **f**irma*	The *f* is pronounced the same as the English **f**.
g	**gas**	***g**aráž, **g**uma, **g**ramatika*	It sounds similar to the English **g** in words like **go**.
h	**help**	***h**aló, **h**ora, **h**riech*	The *h* is similar to the English **h**.
ch	**(similar to) Bach**	***ch**rám, **ch**cieť, ne**ch***	The *ch* sound is like the Scottish word *loch* or the sound a kitten makes when it hisses.
j	**yogurt**	***j**ogurt, evan**j**elium, **J**ežiš*	The *j* sounds like the English **y**.
k	**kick**	***k**ňazstvo, **K**ristus, **k**rst*	The *k* sounds like the English **k**.

Letters	Sounds like . . .	Slovak Examples	Explanation
l	**l**ess	***l****áska,* ***l****ekcia, p****l****án*	The *l* sounds similar to English **l**.
ľ	va**l**ue	***ľ****udia,* ***ľ****ad,* ***ľ****úbiť*	The *ľ* is softer than the normal *l* in Slovak. The tongue is usually placed on the roof of the mouth to make this sound rather than on the teeth.
m	**m**en	***m****isionár,* ***M****or****m****on,* ***m****odlitba*	The *m* is pronounced the same as the English **m**.
n	**n**ot	***n****ádej,* ***n****ebeský,* ***n****áš*	The *n* is pronounced the same as the English **n**.
ň	can**y**on	*den****ň****, dla****ň****, piese****ň***	The *ň* sounds similar to the sound in English **on**i**on**.
p	**p**et	***p****ád,* ***p****lán,* ***p****rávomoc*	The *p* sounds similar to the English **p**.
r	**r**ed	***r****odina, Mo****r****oni,* ***r****ád*	The Slovak *r* is similar to the English **r**, but it is flipped.
s	**s**kate	***s****lužba,* ***s****mrť,* ***s****vedectvo*	The *s* is pronounced the same as the English **s**.
š	**sh**irt	***š****túdium,* ***š****ťastný,* ***š****tudent*	The *š* sounds like the letters sh in English. The accent mark sets it apart.
t	**t**all	***t****ýždeň,* ***t****úžba,* ***t****en*	The *t* is pronounced similar to the English **t**.
ť	**t**une (**ty**oon)	***ť****ažký,* ***Ť****ahanovce, ma****ť***	The *ť* is softer than the normal *t* in Slovak. The sound is similar to the letters **ty** placed next to each other in English.
v	**v**ery	***v****ečera,* ***v****ečný,* ***v****iera*	The *v* is usually pronounced similar to the English **v**.
x	e**x**cellent	ta***x****i,* e***x****pres, fax*	The *x* sounds similar to the English **x**.
z	**z**one	***z****óna,* ***z****ákon,* ***z****áväzok*	The *z* is pronounced similar to the English **z.**
ž	mea**s**ure	***ž****ivot,* ***ž****ena, týž****ž****deň*	The *ž* sound is different than the *z* sound in Slovak. It sounds more like the *s* in the words measure or pleasure.

Note: *Q and W* are rarely used in Slovak, and appear mainly in foreign words.

Dĺžeň: *Dĺžeň* marks placed above vowels indicate that the vowel should be elongated. For example the *á* in *prikázanie* is held out for a slightly longer duration than other vowels. It does not change the actual vowel sound, just the length or duration.

Dipthongs: *ia, ie, iu,* and *ô* are the four Slovak diphthongs. They are pronounced in a single gliding sound, a single syllable, as *ia* (ee-a), *ie* (ee-e), *iu* (ee-oo), and *ô* (oo-o).

Softened sounds: The letters *d, n, l,* and *t* soften and are pronounced as *ď, ň, ľ,* and *ť* when they precede an *e* or an *i*. For an explanation of what these softened sounds are, see *ď, ň, ľ,* and *ť* from the consonant table above. This automatic softening is negated when the *e* or *i* is the beginning of an adjective ending (e.g., *znovuzriadené, krásneho*, and *šťastní* are all pronounced with a hard *n*). The automatic softening of these four consonants also does not occur in several irregular but common words like *ten, teraz*, and *jeden*, which are pronounced with hard *t*, hard *t*, and hard *d* respectively.

Hard vs. Soft: A distinction is made between soft and hard consonants. This is very important for many grammar principles, including declination and gender. ***Soft consonants*** are ***c, j, dz*** and any consonant with a mäkčeň (***č, d', dž, ň, ť, ľ, ž***, and ***š***). All other consonants are hard (***d, t, n, l, g, k, h,*** and ***ch***) or neither (***b, p, m, v, f, r, z,*** and ***s***). See lesson 9 on pluralization for more details.

Voiced and unvoiced sounds: The following Slovak consonants come in pairs of a voiced and an unvoiced consonant, the voiced consonant being listed first: ***b-p, d-t, d'-ť, g-k, h-ch, v-f, z-s, ž-š, dz-c,*** and ***dž-č.*** Voiced consonants in English or Slovak are made by engaging the vocal chords but their unvoiced counterparts are made using only air, with no vocal chord engagement. For example, when you say the English word ***back*** your vocal chords engage to make the ***b*** sound because it is a voiced consonant, but its pair is the letter ***p***, which does not use the vocal chords, like in the word ***pack***. Try saying these two words and notice that the consonants are actually said exactly the same except the ***b*** uses the vocal chords and the ***p*** does not.

In Slovak, the sound (voiced or unvoiced) of these paired letters changes depending on where the letter occurs in a word. This is called **Assimilation of Voice.** When a voiced consonant comes at the end of the word, it is pronounced unvoiced. For example, the word ***dub*** has the voiced letter ***b*** at the end, but because this voiced letter is at the end of the word, it becomes unvoiced. Instead of the normal ***b*** sound, it sounds more like its pair, ***p*** (*du**p***). This also occurs when the voiced letter is before an unvoiced letter, or in a cluster where the final consonant in the cluster is unvoiced. A few other examples include: ***hlad*** (*hla**t***), ***Boh*** (*Bo**ch***), ***už*** (*u**š***), ***vzťah*** (***fs****ťa**ch***), and ***včera*** (***f****čera*).

Unvoiced letters also change. If the unvoiced letter is followed by a voiced letter, it sounds more like its pair. For example, the word ***kde*** has the unvoiced letter ***k*** at the beginning followed by the voiced letter ***d.*** ***Kde*** then sounds more like ***gde*** because the ***k*** changes to its pair ***g***. The rule is that when there are multiple consonants (two or more) in a cluster, each consonant in the cluster becomes voiced or unvoiced to match the final consonant in that cluster.

Pronunciation of *v:* The Slovak letter **v** is usually pronounced the same as in English. As explained above, **v** also usually changes to an **f** sound when it is in a consonant cluster that ends with an unvoiced consonant, like in the word ***včera*** (***f****čera*). However, **v** follows some additional special pronunciation rules. First, it does not cause unvoiced consonants to become voiced when it is the final consonant in a cluster. *Svet* is pronounced with a normal, unvoiced **s** sound, not with a voiced **z** sound, as one might expect. Simply put, **v** changes itself (to **f**) according to assimilation of voice rules but it does not cause other consonants to change when they come before it in a consonant cluster.
Additionally, when **v** comes at the end of a word or a syllable it is pronounced like the English or Slovak vowel **u** (*oo*), for example in the word *cirkev* (*cirke**u***) or the word *pravda* (*pra**u**da*).

Slabikovanie (Breaking Words into Syllables)

When first learning to pronounce words, it is helpful to break each word into separate syllables. When breaking words up, consonants usually begin a new syllable, sometimes this meaning that a consonant cluster is split between the syllables. Vowels can be the beginning of a new syllable but usually only at the beginning of a word and when there is a vowel cluster. Learning how to break up words correctly is helps in learning correct pronunciation. Here are some examples:

Posolstvo → Po-sol-stvo	Kňazstvo → Kňaz-stvo	Vzkriesenie → Vzkrie-se-nie
Znovuzriadenie → Zno-vu-zria-de-nie	Prostredníctvom → Pro-stred-níc-tvom	Milosrdenstvo → Mi-lo-sr-den-stvo
Neumožniť → Ne-u-mož-niť	Uzmierenie → U-zmie-re-nie	Štvrtok → Štvr-tok

Word Order and Parts of Speech

Examples

The Son of God restored the gospel and taught it.	Syn Boží znovuzriadil evanjelium a učil ho.
We renew our covenant every week by taking the sacrament.	Svoju zmluvu obnovujeme každý týždeň tým, že prijímame Večeru Pána.
The Holy Ghost teaches you through thoughts and feelings.	Duch Svätý vás učí prostredníctvom myšlienok a pocitov.
God loves us.	Boh nás má rád.

Explanation

English has a strict word order with little wiggle room. Slovak word order, on the other hand, is more loosely defined because of word declensions (cases). Despite the relatively free word order, there are strict rules used to speak correctly. Developing a correct sense of the word order in Slovak is an important step in learning to speak and understand the language.

Clause

A clause consists of three basic parts: a subject, a verb, and an object (SVO). Like English, Slovak tends to follow a SVO (subject, verb, object) word order.

Boh	*má*	*plán.*
God	has	a plan.
S (subject)	**V** (verb)	**O** (object)

When the object of the sentence is a personal pronoun (I, you, he, etc.), however, it will typically come second in the sentence, in many cases preceding the verb (SOV). Generally, personal pronouns will neither start nor end the sentence (hence “God us loves”), unless the clause is too short to allow otherwise.

Boh	*nás*	*miluje.*
God	us	loves.
S	**O**	**V**

Subject personal pronouns, meaning personal pronouns in the first or nominative case and are being used as the subject of the clause (ja, ty, on . . .), are usually omitted as they are inherent in the verb conjugation. They may be used for emphasis or for clarification when multiple people are included in a narration. The object will appear second in this case (VO).

Miluje	*nás.*
(He) loves	us.
V	**O**

Note: When emphasis is intended for the object or object pronoun, it may appear first in the sentence. This is fairly uncommon and nuanced.

Tomu	*neverím*.
That	I don’t believe.
O	**V**

Conjunctions

Two clauses are combined by a conjunction such as *a* (and) or *ale* (or) to create a sentence. Whenever a conjunction is used, a new clause begins after it following the same word order principles. The conjunction does not act as the subject of the new clause; however, it can take the first position in the new clause for the purpose of determining word order. See the explanation below of determining second position.

Some common conjunctions include: and (a), but (ale), and because (pretože or lebo).

Examples:

Boh stvoril Adama a Evu **a** umiestnil ich do záhrady Eden.
*God created Adam and Eve **and** (He) placed them in the Garden of Eden.*

Všetci budeme vzkriesení, **pretože** Ježiš Kristus prekonal fyzickú smrť.
*We will all be resurrected, **because** Jesus Christ overcame physical death.*

Tieto pocity sa ťažko opisujú, **ale** môžeme ich rozoznať potom, ako ich zažijeme.
*It's hard to describe these feelings, **but** we can recognize them once we've felt them.*

Note: A and ale will never take the first position unlike most other conjunctions in most contexts. See the third and first examples above where in the second clause the personal pronoun ich does not come immediately after the conjunction, but comes after the verb, which takes first position due to the fact that a and ale never take first position. If another conjunction had been used (e.g., ktorý or pretože), the personal pronoun ich (or any other personal pronoun) would have most likely followed the conjunction. Ex. Kristus za nás zomrel, pretože nás miluje. Christ died for us because He loves us (because us He loves). This is consistent in most contexts, except in the rare event that the subject of the new clause needs to be stated immediately after the conjunction. This occurs mostly when the subject is changing from the first clause, and should be fairly natural to construct. Ex. Môžeme sa vrátiť k Bohu, pretože Kristus nás spasil. We can return to God because Christ saved us (because Christ us saved). Changing the subject means the most clear way to express this is with the new subject taking first position and coming immediately following the conjunction.

Questions

One difference between Slovak and English is that Slovak word order does not affect whether the statement is a question or not as strongly as it does in English. Statements are turned into questions in Slovak mainly by raising the intonation of voice at the end of the sentence, not by changing word order. Even a normal sentence with normal word order can become a question when the voice intonation is raised. However, in addition to raising intonation, the subject and verb are typically reversed when a question is being asked and when the subject and verb are both present in the sentence. When the subject is omitted (like when the subject is a pronoun), the word order doesn't change.

Život	*existuje*	*po smrti.*
Live	exists	after death.
Existuje	*život*	*po smrti? (raise intonation)*
Exists	life	after death?
V	**S**	**O**

The Second Position

Some specific words and articles in Slovak want to be in the second position of the sentence (i.e., after the first word or term of the clause). These words all fall into four categories: (1) the conditional article by, (2) conjugated forms of the verb byť, (3) reflexive pronouns sa and si, and (4) all other pronouns. When any of these words are present in a clause, they take the second position. When more than one of these words is present in a clause, they cannot all be in second position, so they line up in a predictable and consistent order following the first position word in the clause. The order in which they line up is the same order in which they were introduced in this paragraph. Below is an explanation of the order of their placement from those with the least precedence (pronouns) to those with most precedence (the conditional article by).

Pronouns (see lessons 4, "Personal Pronouns," and lesson 12, "Demonstrative Pronouns" respectively)

In the absence of other articles discussed in this section, object pronouns (both demonstrative and personal) will take the second position of the sentence as has already been seen.

Boh	***ho***	*miluje.*
God	him	loves.
1st	**2nd**	**3rd**

Reflexive Pronouns *Sa* and *Si* (see lesson 22, "Reflexive Pronouns")

Some verbs require that the reflexive pronouns *sa* or *si* be used in the sentence (ex. ***modliť sa*** (to pray), ***pýtať sa / spýtať sa*** (to ask). When the reflexive pronouns ***sa*** or ***si*** are introduced into a clause, they will "beat" non-reflexive pronouns to the second place. If a non-reflexive pronoun is used, it will therefore always follow the reflexive pronoun. Here are some examples:

Peter	***sa***	*modlí.*
Peter		prays.
1st	**2nd**	

Sára	***sa***	***ho***	*pýta.*
Sarah		him	asks.
1st	**2nd**	**3rd**	

Conjugated Forms of Byt' introduced by L-forms (see lesson 23 "Past Tense, L-form, and Aby")

The reflexives *sa* or *si* are pushed out of the second position if an L-form is used if that use of L-form requires a conjugated form of *byť*. In this case, the conjugated form of the verb *byť* takes the second position in the sentence, pushing the reflexive pronoun to the third position. Notice how in the examples listed below, the reflexive pronouns *sa* and *si* come after the conjugated form of *byť*.

Modlil	***som***	***sa***	*k Bohu.*
I prayed	(I)		to God.
1st	**2nd**	**3rd**	

Aby	***som***	***sa***	***ho***	*spýtal . . .*
In order	(I)		him	ask . . .
1st	**2nd**	**3rd**	**4th**	

The Conditional Article *By* (see lesson 28, "Conditional")

The conditional article by will always beat the articles already discussed in this section to second place.

Mohol	***by***	***som***	**sa**	*modliť . . .*
Could		(I)		pray . . .
1st	**2nd**	**3rd**	**4th**	

Čo	***by***	***som***	***sa***	***ho***	*spýtal?*
What	would	(I)		him	ask
1st	**2nd**	**3rd**	**4th**	**5th**	

Examples:

Mali **by sme sa** dať pokrstiť, aby sme sa mohli vrátiť k Bohu.
We should be baptized so we can return to God.

Mohli **by ste sa ho** spýtať, či Kniha Mormonova je slovo Božie.
You could ask him if the Book of Mormon is the word of God.

This race for the second position is foundational to Slovak word order and can be summarized as follows:

Conditional article *by*	>	**Conjugated form of *byť***	>	**Reflexive pronoun *sa* or *si***	>	**Personal pronoun**

Note: Many sentences only use one or two of these articles. It's important to be able to recognize when each article is needed.

Activities

A. Identify Word Function

Identify the function of each underlined word or phrase (subject, verb, direct object, personal pronoun, conjunction, or clause). Pay attention to where the subject is omitted at the start of the sentence. Write your answers on a separate piece of paper and check your answers in the answer section.

Boh[1] je náš Nebeský Otec. My **sme**[2] jeho deti. **Má**[3] telo z mäsa a kostí, ktoré je oslávené a dokonalé. **Miluje**[4] **nás**[5]. Plače spolu s **nami**[6], keď trpíme. **Chce s nami hovoriť**[7] **a**[8] my s **ním**[9] môžeme hovoriť pomocou úprimnej modlitby. Nebeský Otec pripravil pre **nás**[10] spôsob, ako môžeme byť úspešnými v tomto živote **a**[11] ako sa môžeme vrátiť a žiť v jeho prítomnosti. Neposlušnosť **nás**[12] od neho vzďaľuje.

B. Reorder English

Reorder the following English sentences, putting them in correct Slovak word order unless they are already correct. You can omit articles and other English words that aren't translated into Slovak. Write your answers on a separate sheet of paper.

1. God loves us.
2. He wants to give us everything.
3. I'm grateful for the atonement.
4. I'm grateful for Him.
5. Family is important to me.
6. Prophets receive revelation from God.
7. Jesus Christ can help you.
8. Feelings come to us through the Holy Ghost.
9. God always tries to speak to us.
10. Satan tempts us and tries to lead us astray.

C. Translation

On a separate sheet of paper, translate each of the following sentences. Pay attention to word order especially with verbs requiring reflexive pronouns and constructions using byť. Note: This is an advanced translation requiring knowledge of other grammar.

1. This event is called "The Fall." (*nazývať sa*, to be called)
2. Do you think that God hears your prayers? (*myslieť si*, to think)
3. Will you pray every day? (*modliť sa*, to pray)
4. Could we ask you a question? (*spýtať sa*, to ask)
5. We set up another meeting with him. (*dohodnúť sa*, to set up)
6. We're trying to help you. (*snažiť sa*, to try)
7. Would you share a scripture with us? (*podeliť sa*, to share)
8. Could we pray with you? (*modliť sa*, to pray)
9. After his resurrection, Christ appeared in America. (*zjaviť sa*, to appear)
10. Before we were born to this earth, we lived as spirit children of our Heavenly Father. (*narodiť sa,* to be born)

D. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answers against the ones listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. Boh miluje ***vás.**
   God loves you.
2. Pomodlili ***sa** ste včera?
   Did you pray yesterday?
3. Kedy opäť ***sa** stretneme?
   When can we meet again?
4. Môžeme stanoviť ***si** čas našej ďalšej návštevy?
   Can we set a time for our next visit?
5. Duch Svätý pomáha ***nám.**
   The Holy Ghost helps us.
6. Ak poslúchame Boha, ***nás** požehná.
   If we obey God, He will bless us.
7. Čo to znamená ***pre vás**?
   What does that mean to you?
8. Čo vám na našom cirkevnom zhromaždení ***sa** páčilo?
   What did you like about sacrament meeting?
9. Začnete odteraz žiť podľa zákonu cudnosti tak, ako sme vysvetlili ***vám**?
   Will you begin now to live the law of chastity as we have explained to you?
10. Budete sa modliť a ***sa** pýtať Boha či Joseph Smith bol prorokom?
    Will you pray and ask God if Joseph Smith was a prophet?

E. Scripture Activities

Read the following scriptures in English and identify the personal pronouns and their placement in the sentence. Try to reorder them correctly as you would expect to see in Slovak. Then open to the corresponding scripture in Slovak and check your answers. Memorize one of the verses or passages you'd like to include in your contacting or teaching.

Ev. Sv. Matúša 7:7–11 (Prayer and Revelation)
Ev. Sv. Lukáša 20: 9–16 (Dispensations and Apostasy)
Ev. Sv. Jána 3:3–5 (Baptism)

F. Practice One Principle

Review two or more specific principles from this lesson with your companion during companion study, and then implement them during the day. Discuss situations where you'll need to implement any changes or fixes in word order and practice those with your companion. If you are a newer missionary, you might want to focus on just one principle at a time, like keeping personal pronouns in the middle of a sentence. Ask your more experienced companion to correct you in a way that best fits your learning style.

G. Help from Non-Members and Members

Carry a 3x5 card in your pocket and write down after a contact, lesson or other language experience, any phrase you hear with a different word order than you are used to. Think of how you might use similar constructions in your teaching and create an additional sentence or two from the sentence you heard. Practice those sentences that night or the next day with your companion during companion or language study and ask a native to look over them with you to correct any errors or offer additional ways to say the same thing.

Write out a short talk that you could give during sacrament meeting. Select a pertinent message from general conference or a topic besides what you normally teach in the lessons. Ask a member if you can meet with them and practice giving the talk to them. As you deliver the talk, have them write down any phrases or sentences where you have incorrect word order. Later, implement those changes and keep the corrected talk on hand for future use.

H. Scripture Activities

Choose a passage in the Slovak Bible or Book of Mormon that has difficult grammar or complex sentence structure (such as Moroni 10:3–5, Ep. Sv. Jakoba 1:5 or one used frequently in teaching). Break up into groups giving each group a portion of the scripture to focus on. Break the passages down into their simplest form then write in your own words (in Slovak) what the scripture is trying to say so that you can explain the meaning of the scripture in simple terms. Share with the other groups your findings, then join up with another group and practice sharing the scripture in context of the lessons. Use your newfound understanding to explain in your own words what the scripture means.

Asking About and Expressing a State of Being

Purpose

This section will help you describe something or someone, such as **what** faith is or **who** God is. The grammar principles in this section are targeted at helping you express these ideas. Below are examples of the types of ideas you will be able to communicate with the grammar in this section:

- **We** are children of our Heavenly Father and **He** loves **us**. (Subject/Personal Pronouns)
- Jesus Christ **is** our Savior and through Him we can **be** saved. (*Byt*)
- **What** is a prophet? (Questions)
- The fullness of the gospel was **not** on the earth during the Great Apostasy. (Negation)

Application

Below is a list of doctrinal points that these grammar principles will help you teach, followed by common missionary tasks they will help you perform. Note that this list is not comprehensive but is meant to help you think about how you can use the grammar in real situations. In parentheses next to each point is the title of the principle of task that it relates to.

Doctrines from the Lessons

- God Is Our Loving Father in Heaven (Who is God? What is our relationship to Him?)
- The Great Apostasy (What is an apostasy? Was the gospel on the earth during the Apostasy?)
- Pre-Earth Life (What was our life like before we came to earth?)
- Our Life on Earth (What is the purpose of life?)
- The Atonement (What is the Atonement?)
- Faith in Jesus Christ (What is faith? Who do we believe Christ is?)
- Baptism (What is baptism? What is an ordinance? What is a covenant?)
- The Gift of the Holy Ghost (Who is the Holy Ghost? What is the gift of the Holy Ghost?)
- The Law of Chastity (What is chastity?)
- The Word of Wisdom (What are things we should avoid taking into our bodies?)
- Eternal Marriage (What are the blessings of a temple marriage?)

Tasks from the *Missionary Vocabulary and Phrases* Book

- Ask Questions and Listen (How do I ask them in the language?)
- Explain Priesthood Ordinances (What is the priesthood? What is an ordinance?)
- Get to Know Someone (Who are they? What is their family like? What are their interests?)
- Meet Someone (Who are they? Who am I? Where do I come from?)

Subject Pronouns

Examples

While in the garden, **they** couldn't have children.	Zatiaľ čo boli v záhrade, **(oni)** nemohli mať deti.
He gave His Apostles authority to teach the gospel.	**On** dal svojim apoštolom právomoc, aby učili evanjelium.
We are His children.	**(My)** sme jeho deti.

Explanation

Every sentence has a subject. The subject is the noun or pronoun (person, place, or thing) that performs the action, when an action is being performed. In sentences of description, the subject is being described. For example, in the sentence, "Joseph Smith saw Jesus Christ and Heavenly Father," Joseph Smith is the subject because Joseph Smith is performing the action (seeing). In the descriptive sentence, "The Book of Mormon is true," the Book of Mormon is the subject because it is being described. Sometimes the subject is replaced with a pronoun (a word that replaces a noun). These are the subject pronouns in Slovak with their English equivalents:

**Throughout these grammar lessons, all verb conjugations will be shown in a chart like the one below. The left column shows singular forms and the right column shows plural forms; the first row shows the speaker(s), the second row shows the person or people addressed, and the third row shows the person or people spoken about.*

Subject Pronouns	
ja (I)	**my** (we)
ty (you) (singular/ informal)	**vy** (you) (plural/formal)
on (he) **ona** (she) **ono** (it)	**oni** (they) (masculine) **ony** (they) (feminine)

Examples:

Ja som dostal svedectvo o týchto veciach skrze modlitbu. *I gained a testimony of these things through prayer.*	Keď Boh hovorí, (**my**) musíme počúvať. *When God speaks, we must listen.*
(**Ty**) veríš v Boha? *Do you believe in God?*	(**Vy**) ste katolík? *Are you a Catholic?*
On hľadal pravdu v písmach. *He looked for truth in the scriptures.*	Boh zjavuje evanjelium prorokom a **oni** učia ostatných. *God reveals the gospel to prophets, and they teach others.*

Uses of Subject Pronouns

Leaving Out Subject Pronouns	Native speakers will only use the subject pronoun when necessary. When the context of the sentence or the verb ending/conjugation make it clear who the subject is, the subject pronoun is usually omitted. **<u>činíme</u>** pokánie každý deň. ***We repent*** *every day.* In the example above, notice that the subject pronoun my is left out because the verb ending makes it obvious who the subject is. **Missionaries often frequently overuse subject pronouns.** In general, subject pronouns should only be used to clarify the subject, or for emphasis. An example of emphasis is using the word *aj*, meaning also or "too," to emphasize that the subject also performs an action. Ex. **Aj my** musíme činiť pokánie každý deň. ***We too*** *must repent every day.*
Ony	This feminine form is used only if **EVERY** member of the group being discussed is female.
Ty and Vy	Slovak has both a formal and an informal (or familiar) way of saying **you**. Slovak speakers use *ty* when talking to friends, family, people around their age or younger, or pets. They use *vy* to show respect to those they speak with who are older, who hold a position of prestige (e.g., religious, political, military, educational, etc.), or when speaking to a group (plural). Always use *ty* to address God when praying. Ask your mission president for more direction on when to use *ty* and *vy*.
Pronouns in Different Cases	Subject pronouns are personal pronouns being used in the first or nominative case, as the subject of a clause. Like all other nouns, however, pronouns can be used in different cases, in which context we refer to them simply as personal pronouns, not as subject pronouns, as they are no longer the subject of the clause. See lesson four, "Personal Pronouns." Nebeský Otec **<u>ho</u>** povolal za proroka. *Heavenly Father called him as a prophet.*

Activities

A. Omitting the Subject Pronoun

The sentences below all include examples of sentences that could incorporate subject pronouns. Read the sentence and decide which of the options in parentheses is the best option and write your answer on a separate sheet of paper. Recall the lesson taught, that unless necessary for the meaning of the sentence, pronouns will usually be dropped. Choose from restating the subject, using a pronoun, or omitting the pronoun.

Example:

Kristus navštívil tých ľudí a (on, __) žehnal ich. **Omitted**

1. (Vy, __) pôjdete s nami túto nedeľu na zhromaždenie?
2. Boh je náš Nebeský Otec. (Boh, On, __) má telo z mäsa a kostí.
3. Kristovi apoštoli boli zabití hriešnymi ľuďmi, pretože (tí ľudia, oni, __) nechceli počúvať ich posolstvo.
4. Adam a Eva sa rozhodli jesť z ovocia, aby (Adam a Eva, oni, __) mohli poznať rozdiel medzi dobrom a zlom.
5. Satan nás pokúša, aby sme (my, __) hrešili.
6. Boh a Ježiš Kristus sa zjavili Josephovi Smithovi. (Kristus, On, __) mu povedal, že sa nemá pripojiť k žiadnej cirkvi.
7. Viem, že to, čo (on, __) povedal o Josephovi Smithovi, je pravdivé, a aj (vy, __) to môžete vedieť.

B. Use the Picture

Use the picture below to answer the questions. Check your answers when you finish.

Example:

What pronoun would #9 use to talk to #10? **Ty**

1. What pronoun would #7 use to talk to #8?
2. What pronoun would #3 use to talk to #1 and #2?
3. What pronoun would #6 use to talk about #4 and #10?
4. What pronoun would #8 use to talk to #6, #9, and #10?
5. What pronoun would you and your companion use to talk to #4?
6. What pronoun would #2 use to talk to #9, assuming they do not know each other well?
7. What pronoun would #10 use to talk about herself in addition to #1, #3, and #8?
8. What pronoun would you use to talk about #5, #6, and #4?
9. What pronoun would #6 use to talk about himself in addition to #3 and #4?
10. What pronoun would #10 use to talk about #7?
11. What pronoun would #2 use to talk about #1?
12. What pronoun would #9 use to talk about himself?

Note: The following two activities assume that you have learned about verbs and how to conjugate them.

C. Recognizing Subjects

Each sentence below can have one or more subjects. On a separate sheet of paper, write down the possible subjects for each sentence. Notice that subject pronouns are not necessary for the sentence to make sense. Check your answers after you finish.

1. Modlí sa každý deň.
2. Vieme, že Boh je.
3. Veríte v Ježiša Krista?
4. Čítam Knihu Mormonovu.
5. Hľadá pravdu.
6. Počúvajú slovo Božie.
7. Ideš na zhromaždenie?
8. Študuje Bibliu.
9. Učia ostatných o Božom pláne.
10. Dáte sa pokrstiť?
11. Čo máš na pláne poobede?
12. Snažím sa nasledovať Ježiša Krista.

D. Common Errors

Try to figure out what is wrong with each sentence and why it is wrong. Then check your answer against the one listed in the answers section. The translation under the sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says. Next, pick a principle that you will be teaching today, write out how you might teach it and check to make sure you didn't make any of these errors.

1. ***Ona** čítame písma pravidelne.
   We read the scriptures regularly.
2. ***Ja** sme misionári.
   We are missionaries.
3. On cíti Ducha Svätého, keď *on číta Knihu Mormonovu.
   He feels the Spirit when he reads the Book of Mormon.
4. ***Ty** sa stretaváte s misionármi?
   Are you (formal) meeting with the missionaries?
5. My sa učíme veľa, keď ***my** študujeme.
   We learn a lot when we study.
6. Kedy bude pokrstený ***oni**?
   When will he be baptized?

E. Scripture Activities

1. Turn to Ev. Sv. Lukáša 23:38–40. On a separate sheet of paper, create a table like the one below. Write down the subject pronouns used in the passage, and then write down to whom the pronoun refers. Check your answers after you finish.

Example (from Ev. Sv. Jána 17:18–19):

Subject Pronouns	To Whom It Refers
ty	Heavenly Father
ja	Jesus Christ
oni	Apostles

2. Look up two or three scriptures that you will use to teach today. List any subject pronouns used and why they were used. Discuss your list with your companion or a native speaker to make sure you understood why they were used. Use those pronouns appropriately as you share those verses today.

F. *Preach My Gospel* Activity

Turn to page 49 of *Kážte Moje Evanjelium*. Read the section "Slobodná vôľa a pád Adama a Evy." As you read, pay attention to the subjects and try to replace those subjects (i.e., Satan, Adam and Eve) with subject pronouns.

Teach this principle to your companion as if he or she were a new investigator, paying special attention to your use of subject pronouns.

Who am I?

Think of a person or group of people from the scriptures. Using subject pronouns, describe that person or group to your companion, and have your companion guess whom you are describing. Take turns repeating this activity.

G. Discuss Your Family

Sit down with a member and get to know their family. Ask them questions about their parents, siblings, or children. Listen to their use of subject pronouns. Pay attention to how often they use subject pronouns, as they are not used as frequently as in English. Before sharing the details of your own family with the member, ask yourself the following question:

If subject pronouns are not required, what other way can I express who is doing the action (the subject)?

H. Discuss an Investigator

Take time to talk with the district about the people your companionship is working with. After referring to those investigators or members, seek to use correct subject pronouns to discuss them and their progress. Again, pay close attention to how often more experienced speakers use the pronouns.

Personal Pronouns

Examples

God gives prophets authority to speak for **Him.**	Boh dáva prorokom právomoc, aby hovorili za **neho**.
What can we do to help **you**?	Čo môžeme urobiť, aby sme **vám** pomohli?
God prepared a plan to help **us** return to **Him**.	Boh pripravil plán, aby **nám** pomohol, aby sme sa vrátili k **nemu**.
Faith leads **us** to action.	Viera **nás** vedie k činu.

Explanation

Like all other nouns, pronouns can exist in different cases. Certain verbs, adjectives, and prepositions will require the use of personal pronouns in certain cases. The chart below shows the correct declinations of personal pronouns. Note: The pronouns in first case listed below are the subject pronouns from the previous section.

1	ja	ty	on	ona	my	vy	oni
2	mňa/ma	teba/ťa	neho/ho (jeho)	nej/jej	nás	vás	nich/ich
3	mne/mi	tebe/ti	nemu/mu (jemu)	nej/jej	nám	vám	nim/im
4	mňa/ma	teba/ťa	neho/ho (jeho)	ňu/ju	nás	vás	nich/ich ne/ich
6	mne	tebe	ňom	nej	nás	vás	nich
7	mnou	tebou	ním	ňou	nami	vami	nimi

Note: Notice that most personal pronouns have two forms, a long form and a short form. The long form is only used with prepositions and for emphasis. The short form is used in all other instances.

Examples:

Long Form	Short Form
Ježiš Kristus zomrel **za teba** a **za mňa**. *Jesus Christ died for you and for me.*	On **ťa** má rád a chce **ti** pomáhať. *He loves you and wants to help you.*
Keď máte vieru v Krista, veríte **v Neho**. *When you have faith in Christ, you believe in Him.*	Prijímate **Ho** ako Spasiteľa a Vykupiteľa. *You accept Him as your Savior and Redeemer.*

Uses of Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns take the place not only of people, but of all nouns. After a noun has been stated, it is referred to using the pronoun associated with the gender of that noun. The pronoun must be put in the appropriate case. Neuter nouns are referred to using a masculine pronoun *(ex. Počas zhromaždenia a po ňom . . .).*

Examples		Explanation
Aby človek mohol zistiť, či je Kniha Mormonova pravdivá, musí **ju** čítať, premýšľať nad **ňou** a musí sa za **ňu** modliť.	*In order to know that the Book of Mormon is true, a person must read, ponder, and pray about it.*	In this sentence, all of the personal pronouns are feminine because they refer to the Book of Mormon (*kniha*, fem.).
Ak sa niekomu z **vás** nedostáva múdrosti, nech si **ju** prosí od Boha, ktorý prosto a ochotne dáva všetkým, a dostane sa **mu jej**.	*If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, that giveth to all men liberally, and upbraideth not; and it shall be given him.*	In this sentence, the pronouns *ju* and *jej* refer to *múdrosť.* The pronoun *mu* refers to *niekomu (niekto).*

Word Order & Emphasis

Personal pronouns declined into cases typically take the second position in the sentence (see lesson 2, "Word Order & Parts of Speech"). When the long form of a personal pronoun is used to emphasize whomever the pronoun refers to, it is usually taken out of its natural position and placed either at the beginning or end of the sentence.

Examples:

Aká znalosť pomôže **mne**? *What knowledge will help me?*	**Teba** chcem učiť. *It's you that I want to teach.*

Note: Slovak also has a reflexive personal pronoun for **oneself**. This will be discussed in detail in lesson 22, "Reflexive Pronouns."

Activities

A. Fill in the Table

Make a table identical to the one listed below on a separate sheet of paper. Practice conjugating the listed personal pronouns using the common prepositions. Try this same exercise with other prepositions, repeating aloud each declination. Check your answers.

	ja	ty	on	vy	ona	oni
pre (for)	*ex*. pre mňa					
o (about)						
od(o) (from)						
vďaka (thanks to)						
nad(o) (above)						

B. Fill in the Blank

In each of the following sentences, write down on a separate sheet of paper or say aloud with your companion the correct form of the personal pronoun matching the noun listed in parentheses. Check your answers.

1. Čo je pre ___ dôležité? *(vy)*
2. Keď máte vieru v Krista, veríte v ___. *(Kristus)*
3. Spýtali sa ___, či sa so ___ môžu podeliť o posolstvo. *(ja)*
4. Nevie nič o ___. *(Kniha Mormonova)*
5. Bez pochybnosti ___ to sľubujem . . . *(vy)*
6. Som si istý, že ___ Boh miluje. *(oni)*
7. Posilňujte jeho vieru vo všetkom, čo budete s ___ robiť. *(Peter)*
8. Naša rodina ___ spája navzájom. *(my)*
9. Podelíte sa s ___ o pasáž, ktorá má pre ___ osobný význam alebo ktorá by mohla mať význam pre ___. *(záujemcovia, ty, záujemcovia)*
10. Pomohli sme ___ ,aby začala s jej rodinným rodostromom. *(ona)*
11. Keď študujem, prichádzajú ku ___ myšlienky. *(ja)*
12. Občas bude od ___ požadované robiť veci, ktorým úplne nerozumiete. *(vy)*
13. Pracujeme usilovne, aj keď ___ bolia nohy. *(my)*
14. Rada zboru si tak vo ___ vybuduje dôveru. *(vy)*

C. Translation

Translate the following sentences focusing on correctly using your declination of personal pronouns. After you've finished translating, practice replacing the pronouns in your sentences with other pronouns in the same case. Check your answers.

1. Will you help me please?
2. The Savior died for you and for me.
3. Prophets teach us about how we can come to Him.
4. Could you (formal) give her a blessing?
5. My head hurts when I think about them.
6. We wanted to talk with you (formal) about it (the message).
7. We should serve them.
8. Come to me and be baptized.
9. God spoke to him, calling him by name . . .
10. They can't find it (the truth).
11. Sinful people killed many of them.
12. People will recognize God's servants in you.

D. Common Errors

Try to figure out what is wrong with each sentence and why it is wrong. Then check your answer against the one listed in the answers section. The translation under the sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. Budú šťastní, ak prijmú evanjelium a budú žiť podľa ***nej.**
   They will be happy if they accept the gospel and live by it.
2. Budeme na ***ho** vždy pamätať.
   We will always remember him.
3. My učíme ***ho** o slove múdrosti.
   We are teaching him about the Word of Wisdom.
4. Modlite sa za ***ich**.
   Pray for them.
5. Môžete ***ňu** držať v rukách.
   You can hold it (the Book of Mormon) in your hands.
6. Čo to pre ***ťa** znamená?
   What does that mean for you?
7. Jednotlivci začnú nasledovať Krista, keď používajú vieru v ***ňom**.
   Individuals begin to follow Christ when they use their faith in him.
8. ***Vás** Pán hojne požehnal.
   The Lord has blessed you abundantly.

E. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key. For any questions that you miss, write at least two sentences that you could use in your teaching today that use the correct form of the word.

1. Ak neovládate angličtinu, mali by ste sa ju ako misionár učiť.
2. Zásada zodpovednosti vás bude požehnávať.
3. Nebeský Otec chce, aby sme sa vrátili a žili s ňou.
4. Práca na spasení duší je pre neho dôležitá.
5. Boh chce, aby sa každý z nám mohol tešiť z nesmrteľnosti.
6. Povedal som ju o týchto dvoch mužoch.
7. Rodina dáva nám meno a pomáha nám, aby sme sa cítili potrebnými.
8. Pán ti pošle takýchto ľudí do cesty.
9. Poďte za mnou.
10. Môžeme prísť k ti?
11. Mnohí záujemcovia nečítajú Knihu Mormonovu alebo jej nerozumejú, keď ju čítajú.
12. Sú zadržiavaní pred ňou iba preto, že nevedeli, kde ju nájsť.
13. Povolal ďalšieho proroka a dal mu kňazskú právomoc.
14. Pomôžte nim porozumieť zložitejšie myšlienky.
15. Ak je daná pasáž pre nich ťažká a nemôžu jej porozumieť, pozorne s nimi čítajte.
16. Bol som nimi obklopený i naplnený a vedel som sám pre seba, že svedectvo tohoto muža je pravdivé.

F. Scripture Activities

1. Look up Matúš 11: 25–30. On a separate sheet of paper, create a table like the one below. Write down all the personal pronouns used and then write down the reason each was used. Check your answers after you finish.

Example (from NaZ 128:15):

Subject Pronouns	Reasons for Use
mi	Matches third case verb *(dovoľte)*
vás	Matches fourth case verb *(uistil)*
nás	Follows a second case preposition *(bez)*

2. Look up two or three scriptures that you will use to teach today. List any personal pronouns used and why they were used. Discuss your list with your companion or a native speaker to make sure you understood why they were used. Use those pronouns appropriately as you share those verses today.

G. *Preach My Gospel* Activity

Turn to page 31 of *Kážte Moje Evanjelium*. Read the two paragraphs under the heading "Boh je náš milujúci Nebeský Otec," paying special attention to the use of personal pronouns. Teach the principles in these two paragraphs to your companion in first person (ex. *Ja som dieťa Božie. Boh ma miluje*. etc). Then teach the same principles to your companion in second person informal *(ty)*. Continue this exercise using other personal pronouns.

H. Language Study Plan Activity

Listen carefully throughout the day today and pay attention to when native speakers use personal pronouns. Why do they use them? Do you use them in the same way?

Byť

Examples

Families **are** central to God's plan.	Rodiny **sú** stredom Božieho plánu.
We are His children.	**Sme** jeho deti.
The scriptures **are** the written records of God's commandments.	Písma **sú** písané záznamy Božích prikázaní.
Repentance **is** the second principle of the gospel.	Pokánie **je** druhá zásada evanjelia.

Explanation

The verb *byť* is used to express a state of being. The verb is used like the English verb "to be," and takes the meaning "I am," "you are," "he/she/it is," "we are," you (plural/formal) are," and "they are."

Examples:

Sme Božie deti. *We are God's children.*	Evanjelium **je** jedinou cestou k šťastiu. *The gospel is the only way to happiness.*

Note: *Byť* is **only** used to express a state of being and is **not** used to denote action as is common in English. For example, in English we might say, "I **am** reading," however, in Slovak we would only conjugate the verb by saying, "Čítam."

Forms of the Verb Byť

Here are the present and future tense forms of *byť*. Past tense will be discussed in lesson 23, "Past Tense, L-form, and *Aby*."

Present Tense		**Future Tense (Imperfective)**	
(ja) som	(my) sme	(ja) budem	(my) budeme
(ty) si	(vy) ste	(ty) budeš	(vy) budete
(on/ona/ono) je	(oni/ony) sú	(on/ona/ono) bude	(oni) budú

Note: The future tense of *byť* is used before infinitive, imperfective verbs to describe future actions. However, if the future tense of *byť* is used alone, it denotes a future condition. (ex. *"Budem kňaz"* means "I will be a priest.") ***"Budem byť . . . "* is always incorrect.**

Negation

To negate sentences that use the verb *byť*, simply add the word *nie* immediately before the conjugated form of the verb. This is the only verb that has this irregular negated form.

Examples:

Nie je žiadna iná cesta, ktorá vedie k spaseniu.
There is no other path that leads to salvation.

Nie som prezident pobočky.
I am not the president of the branch.

Nie sme odtiaľto.
We are not from here.

Activities

A. Conjugation

Use the correct conjugation of the verb *byť* and fill in the blanks. Check your answers.

1. On nie _____
2. Ja _____
3. Ona _____
4. Rodina _____
5. Sestra Kováčová _____
6. Joseph Smith _____
7. Boh a Ježiš Kristus _____
8. Ty nie _____
9. Obrady _____
10. My_____
11. Večera Pána _____
12. Vy _____

B. Translation

Translate the following sentences on a separate sheet of paper. Check your answers.

1. Are you (formal) willing to pay tithing?
2. Faith is like a seed.
3. The temple is the house of God.
4. Are they prepared for baptism?
5. Are you (informal) a believer?
6. We are obedient missionaries.
7. We're here to teach the gospel.
8. Why are we here?
9. I am the light of the world.
10. They are not believers.
11. It's time to go to the activity.
12. It's five o'clock.

C. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answer against the one listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. On ***je čítať** Knihu Mormonovu.
   He is reading the Book of Mormon.
2. ***Ja** zo Chicaga.
   I am from Chicago.
3. Krst musí ***je** vykonaný Božou právomocou.
   Baptism must be performed by God's authority.
4. Dvere do celestiálneho kráľovstva ***je** otvorené krstom.
   The door to the celestial kingdom is opened through baptism.
5. Boh a Ježiš ***je** vždy ochotní nám pomôcť.
   God and Jesus are always willing to help us.
6. Budeme ***byť** dobrí misionári.
   We will be good missionaries.
7. Všetci ***sú** deti Božie.
   We are all God's children.
8. Potrebuje moje bábätko ***je** pokrstené?
   Does my infant need to be baptized?

D. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key. For any questions that you miss, write at least two sentences that you could use in your teaching today that use the correct form of the word.

1. Zmluva je dohoda medzi Bohom a mužom.
2. Tomáš modlí sa, aby poznal pravdu nášho posolstva.
3. Apoštoli a proroci je zjavovateľmi.
4. Satan je nepriateľom Božích detí.
5. Príručka *Kážte moje evanjelium* vám pomôže, aby ste boli úspešnými.
6. Ak činíme pokánie, môže nám byť odpustené.
7. Natália neje pripravená na krst.
8. Všetci sme milovaní Nebeským Otcom.

F. Companion Activity

Draw a picture or show your companion a photograph of your family and explain as much as you can about your family.

E. Scripture Activity

Read Alma 18:24–34. In this passage, Ammon teaches King Lamoni about God and about his role as a missionary. On another piece of paper, write down all the sentences where byť is used. Check your answers. Write out some sentences that would help you explain your role as a missionary to an investigator and practice them with your companion.

G. *Preach My Gospel* Activity

Open *Kážte Moje Evanjelium* to page 31. Read the section "Boh je náš milujúci Nebeský Otec" and identify the sentences which use *byť*. Write out five other sentences that you could use during a lesson which use *byť*. Show them to your companion or native speaker to have them check for mistakes. Discuss any questions you might have. Check your answers.

Do Something More

As you study other scriptures in your mission language, pay attention to any time that *byť* is used. Try to identify the rule that explains why it was used. Write sentences that you could use to share that scripture, thinking about specific investigators that you will share those verses with. Focus on using the correct form of *byť*.

H. Language Study Plan Activities

1. Set a goal to focus on people's use of *byť*. Write down each time someone uses *byť* in a way that you do not understand. Discuss your list with your companion or a native speaker and figure out the reasons for each use.
2. Read a chapter in the Book of Mormon that you will use in whole or in part in teaching someone this week. Focus on *byť*. Think about each use of those verbs and try to come up with a reason for each use. Identify a specific investigator that you will teach using those scriptures and write out what you might say to share those scriptures, paying particular attention to your use of *byť*. Practice teaching it to your companion.
3. Write down five sentences using *byť* that you can use in an upcoming teaching situation. Have your companion or a native check your sentences.
4. Describe yourself to a member or other native Slovak speaker. Focus on your use of *byť* and get feedback. Then have the native speaker describe you based on what you told them the first time. How did they use *byť* differently from you or in what way was their description different? Discuss these questions with the native.

Negation

Examples

Without God's authority, people **could not** direct the Church.	Bez Božej právomoci ľudia **nemohli** riadiť cirkev.
They told Joseph that **none** of the churches were true.	Josephovi povedali, že **žiadna** z cirkví **nemala** pravdu.
Satan wanted Adam and Eve to **disobey** God.	Satan chcel, aby Adam a Eva **neposlúchali** Boha.

Explanation

To make a sentence negative in Slovak, attach the prefix *ne-* to the front of the verb.

Example:

Ľudia **nepočúvajú** prorokov.
People don't listen to the prophets.

Note: The verb *byť* is the only exception to this rule. It is negated by adding the word *nie* immediately before the conjugated form of the verb (e.g., Nie sme odtiaľto).

Žiadny/Nijaký

Žiadny/Nijaký (instead of *ne-*) are used with nouns. They have an identical meaning, but *žiadny* is more colloquial. Because they are adjectives, they always agree in gender, plurality, and case with the noun they modify. They are used together with a negated verb.

Examples:

Neexistuje **žiadna** iná cesta k spaseniu. *There is no other path to salvation.*	**Nijaká** cirkev nemala plnosť pravdy. *No church had the fulness of truth.*

Pronouns and Adverbs

Certain Slovak pronouns and adverbs can either be negative or positive. The list below shows the positive form next to its corresponding negative.

Positive	Negative
niečo (*something*)	nič (*nothing*)
niekam (*somewhere-motion*)	nikam (*nowhere-motion*)
niekde (*somewhere*)	nikde (*nowhere*)
niekto (*somebody*)	nikto (*nobody*)
niekedy (*sometimes*)	nikdy (*never*)

Note: Remember that the pronouns listed above will decline.

When using the **positive** pronouns and adverbs listed above, either a positive or negative verb can be used. However, the use of a **negative** adverb or pronoun will require a negated verb, making it a double-negative, which are discussed below. Notice the difference in meanings between the single-negatives and double-negatives in the example below.

Examples:

Positive	Negative
Niečo tam nebolo. *Something wasn't there.*	Nič tam nebolo. *Nothing was there.*
Niekedy nechodí do práce. *Sometimes he doesn't go to work.*	Nikdy nechodí do práce. *He never goes to work.*

Double-Negative

Slovak often uses a double-negative. If a negative pronoun or adverb exists in a sentence, the verb must also be negated.

Examples:

Sentence	Literal Meaning	Actual Meaning
Nemáme nič.	*We **don't** have **nothing**.*	We don't have anything.
Nevidím nikoho.	*I **don't** see **nobody**.*	I don't see anybody.
Boh **nikdy neklame.**	*God **never doesn't** lie.*	God never lies, or God doesn't ever lie.

Activities

A. Negate

The following sentences contain incorrect doctrine. Negate the sentences so that they teach correct doctrine and write them on a separate sheet of paper. Check your answers.

For Example:

Incorrect doctrine: Adam a Eva poznali smútok v záhrade Eden.

Correct doctrine: Adam a Eva nepoznali smútok v záhrade Eden.

1. Tí, ktorí poslúchajú prorokov, sa musia báť budúcnosti.
2. Pamätáme si náš predpozemský život.
3. Niekto nevie, kedy bude druhý príchod.
4. Každý človek nie je dokonalý.
5. Každý inšpirovaný človek je prorok.
6. Adam a Eva mohli napredovať v záhrade Eden.
7. Satan niekedy nechce, aby sme boli šťastní.
8. My sme zodpovední za pád Adama a Evy.
9. Mali sme fyzické telá v predpozemskom živote.
10. Smrť zmení naše túžby.
11. Vy ste tu na zemi náhodou.
12. Máme odpovede na všetky vaše otázky.
13. Človek môže byť spasený bez krstu.
14. Pravda sa mení časom.
15. Právomoc bola na zemi za veľkého odpadlíctva.
16. Sami môžeme prekonať výsledky pádu.

B. Fill in the Blank

On a separate sheet of paper, write the negative word that completes each sentence. Check your answers.

1. ___ *(nobody)* nepozná všetky tajomstvá kráľovstva Božieho.
2. ___ je ___ *(there is nothing)* dôležitejšie ako naše rodiny.
3. Aj keď bol pokúšaný, Ježiš Kristus sa ___ *(never)* nepoddal pokušeniu.
4. Nikto ___mal právomoc.
5. ___ *(No)* nečistá vec nemôže zdediť kráľovstvo Božie.
6. Cirkevní vedúci ___dostávajú ___ peniaze za ich službu.
7. Kristus mu povedal, že sa ___má pripojiť do ___ *(none)* z cirkví.
8. Potom, ako činíme pokánie, už ___ *(never)* nespáchame ten hriech.
9. Nemáme mať ___ *(no)* iných bohov.

C. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answers against the ones listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. Nikto ***môže** slúžiť dvom pánom.
   No man can serve two masters.
2. ***Nie dostaneme** inšpiráciu, keď sme pyšní.
   We will not receive inspiration if we are prideful.
3. ***Niekto** nie je dokonalý.
   Nobody is perfect.
4. ***Nie** pokušenie nie je príliš ťažké, aby sme ho prekonali.
   No temptation is too hard to overcome.
5. ***Je** nič, čo nemôžeme prekonať s Božou pomocou.
   There is nothing we can't overcome with God's help.
6. ***Nie mali** by sme stratiť vieru.
   We should not lose our faith.
7. Za veľkého odpadlíctva, ***žiadny** cirkev nemala právomoc.
   During the Apostasy, no church had authority.
8. Boh ***niekedy** nechce, aby sme trpeli márne.
   God never wants us to suffer in vain.

D. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key. For any questions that you miss, write at least two sentences that you could use in your teaching today that use the correct form of the word.

1. Nemám žiadné pochybnosti, že cirkev je pravdivá.
2. ...nie je žiadne iné meno ani žiadna iná cesta...
3. Nie sme tu na zemi bez Božej pomoci.
4. Krst nemá platnosť pokiaľ neje vykonaný právomocou.
5. Nebudeme môcť skryť naše zločiny pred Bohom.
6. Nikto môže byť spasený bez pokánia.
7. Nič môže nás oddeliť od Božej lásky.
8. Nie vedel som, že nie ste člen.
9. Nie si myslím, že on by prijal ten záväzok.
10. Malé deti nepotrebujú krst.
11. Kristus nespáchal žiadne hriechy.
12. Prečo ste neprišli na zhromaždenie?

E. Scripture Activity

The following scriptures contain negations. On a separate piece of paper, write down the phrases in these verses which use negation. Try to translate them into Slovak. Check your answers. Write out some sentences that will help you share these passages with one of your investigators. Practice sharing them with your companion.

Heb. (*Židom*) 5:4
Amos (*Ámos*) 3:7
1 Ne. 3:7
2 Ne. 26:24

F. *Preach My Gospel* Activity

Turn to the personal study activity on page 190 of *Preach My Gospel*. Complete the activity with your companion in Slovak. Discuss the habits that you and your companion want to change. Use negation in speaking about your goals. (Example: *Nesmiem praskať hánky*.)

G. Teaching a Recent Convert

Prepare a lesson to teach a recent convert about the ten commandments. Reread the commandments as they are found in Exodus 20 and take note of the negated verbs. As you prepare this lesson, be sure to help the convert understand that the commandments aren't simply a list of do's and don'ts, but rather a guide to eternal happiness. Before teaching the lesson, ask the convert to pay attention to your use of negation and get feedback from them after the lesson.

H. Discussing Needs

With the members of your district, take time to discuss an investigator who is struggling to keep commitments. Discuss what is keeping them from living certain commandments. Use negated verbs in order to talk about their concerns, such as opposition from friends and family, misunderstandings, or lack of a spiritual confirmation. Focus on using negation.

Questions

Examples

What do you think about God?	**Čo** si myslíte o Bohu?
Why do you feel that way?	**Prečo** sa tak cítite?
How can you find out for yourself?	**Ako** by ste mohli zistiť sám za seba?
Do you have any questions about this ordinance?	**Máte** nejaké otázky o tomto obrade?

Explanation

A question can either require a **yes** or a **no** as an answer, or be open-ended where any response is possible. There are several ways to ask questions in Slovak.

Intonation Questions

One way of asking yes/no questions is by taking a non-question statement and raising the tone of voice at the end of the sentence. Remember that in Slovak, emphasis is usually placed on the first word or phrase.

Tone of Voice ↘		Tone of Voice ↗
Ježiš Kristus je Syn Boží. *Jesus Christ is the Son of God.*	→	Ježiš Kristus je Syn Boží? *Is Jesus Christ the Son of God?*
Nebeský Otec stvoril zem. *Heavenly Father created the earth.*	→	Nebeský Otec stvoril zem? *Did Heavenly Father create the world?*
Prečítal túto kapitolu. *He read this chapter.*	→	Prečítal túto kapitolu? *He read this chapter? (Or) Did he read this chapter?*

Information Questions

Questions are also formed using interrogative words, such as **who, what, when, where, why, how,** and **which**. Use these kinds of questions when you expect more than a **yes/no** answer. Use them to get information. When asking these questions, lower your tone of voice just as you would when not asking a question.

Examples:

kto	who/whom (whom=cased)	**prečo**	why
čo, ktorý	what/which (one)	**ako**	how
kedy	when	**aký**	what kind of
kde, odkiaľ, kam	where, from, where, to where	**koľko**	how many/how much

Kto sú tí ľudia? *Who are these people?*	**Kde** pracujete? *Where do you work?*	**Akú** máte adresu? *What is your address?*
Kto vie variť? *Who knows how to cook?*	**Odkiaľ** ste všetci? *Where are you all from?*	**Aká** je vaša obľúbená lekcia? *Which lesson is your favorite?*
radi robíte? *What do you like to do?*	**Prečo** ste to robili? *Why did you do that?*	**Koľko** máte detí? *How many children do you have?*
Čo robíte? *What are you doing?*	**Prečo** ste na misii? *Why are you on a mission?*	**Koľko** stojí tá kniha? *How much does the book cost?*
Kedy pracujete? *When do you work?*	**Ako** môžeme poznať pravdu? *How can we know the truth?*	**Koľkokrát** za rok? *How many times a year?*

Because *kto* and *čo* are pronouns, they decline. Below are their declension patterns.

1	kto	čo
2	koho	čoho
3	komu	čomu

4	koho	čo
6	kom	čom
7	kým	čím

Čo and Aký

There is an important difference between *čo* and *aký*. Both *aký* and *čo* can mean **what**. *Čo* is a pronoun. It takes the place of a noun. *Čo* can be used to ask for a definition. *Aký* is an adjective and can also mean **what kind (of).** *Aký* is used to ask for specific information. Note: *Aký* changes with gender.

Čo used to ask for a definition	**Čo** je viera? *What is faith?*	**Čo** je nádej? *What is hope?*
	Čo je odpadlíctvo? *What is apostasy?*	**Čo** sú písma? *What are the scriptures?*
Aký used to ask for specific information	**Aké** je vaše meno? *What is your name?*	**Aký** je rozdiel medzi prorokom a apoštolom? *What is the difference between a prophet and an apostle?*
	Aká je tá kniha? *What book is that?*	**Aká** je táto stanica? *What station is this?*
	Aké sú vaše obľúbené knihy? *What are your favorite books?*	**Aké** máte číslo? *What is your number?*

Activities

A. Create Questions: Yes/No

Change the following statements into **yes/no** questions. Note that all of these statements can also be turned into questions simply by changing the intonation in your voice. For this activity however, reverse the order of the subject and the verb of each sentence to form a question. If the subject is omitted, mark that the question may be formed by intonation. Check your answers in the back of the book.

Example statement: Proroci učia evanjelium.

Example questions: Učia proroci evanjelium?

1. Tí misionári učia s Duchom.
2. Boh miluje svoje deti.
3. Prečítali ste tú kapitolu.
4. Ježiš Kristus je dôležitý vo vašom živote.
5. Uvidíte požehnania, keď budete žiť podľa evanjelia.
6. Boh zjavuje svoj plán šťastia.
7. Majú päť záujemcov.
8. Poznáš blahosklonnosť Božiu.
9. Všetci ľudia majú dar slobodnej vôle.
10. Hovoríme so všetkými.

B. Creating Open-Ended Questions

Turn the following statements into questions. The underlined section is the desired answer.

Example statement: Boh je náš Nebeský Otec.

Example question: Kto je Boh?

1. Boh povoláva prorokov, aby učili evanjelium.
2. Musíme sa riadiť evanjeliom, aby sme boli spasení.
3. Ježiš Kristus je Spasiteľom.
4. Kristus sa zjavil na americkom kontinente.
5. Chodíme na zhromaždenie v nedeľu.
6. Kniha Mormonova je ďalšie svedectvo Ježiša Krista.

C. Fill in the blank

On a separate sheet of paper, write whether you would use *čo* or *aký* in each sentence. Check your answers when you finish.

1. ___ je vaša obľúbená pieseň?
2. ___ je dôležité vo vašom živote?
3. ___ bol váš týždeň?
4. ___ je zjavenie?
5. Na ___ písal Mormon?
6. ___ je vaša adresa?
7. ___ je váš cieľ?
8. Na ___ doskách písal Mormon?
9. ___ znamená 'svedčiť'?

D. Fill in the blank

Elders Davis and Johnson are teaching Miroslav about God's plan for us. Some of the questions that they asked Miroslav during the lesson are found below. On a separate sheet of paper, write the appropriate interrogative word such as *kto, čo, prečo, kedy, ako,* and *aký*. Check your answers when you finish.

1. ___ vám to môže pomôcť?
   How can it help you?
2. ___ sa tam stane?
   What will happen there?
3. ___ je váš vzťah s Bohom?
   What's your relationship like with God?
4. ___ je duchovný svet?
   What is the spirit world?
5. ___ bol nutný pád?
   Why was the Fall necessary?
6. ___ to znamená 'byť spasený'?
   What does it mean to 'be saved'?
7. ___ je zmysel života?
   What is the meaning of life?
8. ___ bude vzkriesený?
   Who will be resurrected?
9. ___ sa dáte pokrstiť?
   When will you be baptized?

E. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answers against the ones listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. ***Čo** je vaše meno?
   What is your name?
2. ***Aký** napredujú vaši záujemcovia?
   How do investigators learn?
3. ***Čo** je rozdiel?
   What's the difference?
4. ***Keď** ste boli pokrstená?
   When were you baptized?
5. ***Čo** je vaše obľúbené písmo?
   What is your favorite scripture?
6. ***Ako** ste mali víkend?
   How was your weekend?
7. ***Aké** je kňazstvo?
   What is the priesthood?
8. ***Robíte** čítať písma?
   Do you read the scriptures?

F. Error Correction

Each question is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key. For any questions that you miss, write at least two questions that you could use in your teaching today that use the correct form of the word.

1. Čo robia proroci?
2. Dokedy budete mimo Košíc?
3. Ku komu sa približujeme, keď žijeme podľa evanjelia?
4. Robiť existuje Boh?
5. Čo máte otázky?
6. Pre čo sa Alma obrátil k Bohu?
7. Aký príklad bol Ježiš?
8. Aký je rozdiel medzi vzkriesením a reinkarnáciou?
9. Kto sa zjavil Moroni?
10. Ako môžeme cítiť Božiu lásku?

G. *Preach My Gospel* Activity

Review a lesson plan that you have recently used in your teaching. Write a question in Slovak for each one of the main principles in the lesson. Then revise your questions making sure that they follow the instructions for asking good questions found in chapter 10 of *Preach My Gospel.* Share these questions with your companion and evaluate them together. Also analyze how these questions could invite the Spirit and help the investigator to learn. Use these questions the next time you teach the lesson.

H. Translation Activity

Ask your companion the following questions in Slovak and have him or her answer.

1. What is your favorite scripture?
2. What blessings have you received on your mission?
3. What trials does name of investigator have?
4. What is your address?
5. What is the gospel?
6. What is faith?
7. Which investigator is progressing the most?
8. What are name of investigator's doubts?
9. What are your goals for today?
10. Which lesson do we need to practice?
11. What time is it?
12. Which lesson are we going to teach?

I. Scripture Activity

Read the following verses with your companion. For each scripture or passage, come up with three to five different types of questions to ask those you teach. For example, ask questions that will help your investigator better understand the language of the scriptures, the doctrines taught in scriptures, and how the scriptures apply to them. Share the questions with your companion and ask for feedback.

Example: Ep. Sv. Pavla Efežanom 3:19–20

Na základe koho Kristus založil svoju Cirkev?

Čo by sa stalo budove, keby sa základ rozpadol?

Prečo sú apoštoli a proroci nevyhnutní v Kristovej Cirkvi?

Alma 34:9–12

Moroni 10:3–5

Malachiáš 3:8–10

Ev. Sv. Jána 3:3–5

J. Scripture Activity

With your companion, choose several passages of scripture that you will use in an upcoming meeting. Sit down with a member and take turns reading the verses aloud, switching after every verse. After you finish reading the verse, form a question based on that verse that you can use to help your investigator better understand the doctrine and apply it to his or her own life. Pay attention to the way the member forms questions. Ask for feedback, and use the questions you create in the upcoming lesson.

K. *Preach My Gospel* Activity

From *Kážte Moje Evanjelium* choose a sentence from chapter 3 that teaches an important piece of doctrine. Take turns breaking down the sentence by asking all of the relevant questions. After you have finished all of the questions for that sentence, pick another sentence and complete the same activity.

Example: Po smrti Ježiša Krista prenasledovali hriešni ľudia apoštolov a členov Cirkvi a mnohých z nich zabili.

Kedy ich prenasledovali?

Kto prenasledoval apoštolov a členov Cirkvi?

Čo robili hriešni ľudia apoštolov a členov Cirkvi?

Koho prenasledovali hriešni ľudia?

Review: State of Being

This review will help you see how well you have learned the material in the previous section. It will also help you evaluate your ability to apply several different grammar principles you have learned in performing the following function:

Asking About and Expressing a State of Being

- Subject Pronouns
- *Byť*
- Questions
- Personal Pronouns
- Negation

Activities

A. Error Correction

There are 12 errors in the paragraph below. On a separate sheet of paper, rewrite the paragraph, correcting all of the errors in it. Check your answers.

> Veľa ľudí premýšľa: „Odkiaľ sme prišli? Prečo sme tu? Kde pôjdeme? Čo je Boží plán?“ Možno také isté otázky máš aj vy. Boh je tvoj Otec a má teba rád. Pripravil pre ťa plán. My ste všetci jeho deti a on nám dal prikázania, aby nám pomohol. Sme súčasťou jeho rodiny a žili sme s neho predtým, ako sme sa narodili na túto zem. Nikdy nás opustí. Vieme však, že nie človek môže vojsť do kráľovstva Božieho bez obradov evanjelia. Preto teba chceme učiť o evanjeliu. Viem, že ja sú veľmi vďačný za evanjelium.

B. Fill in the Blank

On a separate sheet of paper, write the correct form of the pronoun listed in parentheses that should go in each blank. Check your answers.

1. Čo máš pre ____ (ja)?
2. Boh ____ (my) chce pomáhať.
3. Svoje evanjelium založili medzi ____ (my).
4. Ó Bože, my ____ (ty) ďakujeme.
5. Vďaka ____ (ty) môžeme pokračovať.
6. Neviem nič o ____ (ona).
7. Je to od ____ (on). Myslím si, že je to pre ____ (ty).
8. Stál nad ____ (on).
9. Vlak bol za ____ (my).
10. Pomáhali sme ____ (oni).
11. Môžete ísť so ____ (ja).
12. Ak ____ (my) nerozumiete, povedzte.
13. Dáme ____ (vy) dar Ducha Svätého.
14. Bez ____ (oni) by sa to nedalo.
15. Podľa ____ (ja) je pripravený.
16. Pri ____ (on) je papier.
17. Je niečo nad ____ (ona).
18. Prišiel k ____ (on).
19. Hovoríte o ____ (ja) alebo o ____ (my)?
20. Prostredníctvom ____ (on) Boh znovuzriadil evanjelium.

C. Error Correction

This activity will help you see where you need to improve. Each sentence has an error. Write down the corrected sentence or say it to your companion. Check your answers. If you get an answer wrong, the answers section will refer you to the principle you should study.

1. Nikdy môžeme byť dokonalí v tomto živote.
2. Ty budeš sa modliť dnes večer?
3. Nesme odtiaľto. Viete kde sme?
4. Ježiš Kristus za nám prekonal túto prekážku.
5. Ak vy správne rozumiem . . .
6. Čo je tvoja adresa?
7. Kde máme ísť s nimi?
8. Sme sa učíme o uzmierení Ježiša Krista.
9. On z Utahu. Od kde ste vy?
10. Máte nič, o čo sa musíte báť.
11. Rodina sú veľmi dôležitá.
12. Aké viete o Bohu?
13. Väčšina ľudí nevie niečo o znovuzriadení.
14. Čo je rozdiel?
15. Prečo my sme tu na zemi?
16. Nemajú nič predstavu o Bohu.
17. Môžete prísť aj ty.
18. Bolo niečo čo ste nerozumeli?
19. Keď študujem, prichádzajú ku mi myšlienky.
20. Kristus hovorí k my v týchto veršoch.
21. Aké je znovuzriadenie?
22. Vy ste čítate Knihu Mormonovu?
23. Hovoria o niekto, kto tu býval.
24. Boh nám nikdy klame.
25. Budú byť dobrí misionári.
26. Môžem sa spýať, čo je vaše obľúbené písmo?
27. My pripravujeme niečo pre ťa.
28. Môžete ňu držať v rukách.
29. Keď sa dáte pokrstiť?
30. Potrebuje moje bábätko je pokrstené?

D. Translation

On a separate sheet of paper, translate the words in parentheses into Slovak. Check your answers. Say each of the sentences out loud and get feedback from a native speaker on your pronunciation.

1. *(We are)* vďační za naše požehnania.
2. *(You [formal]) (are)* tu?
3. *(Why)* sme tu na zemi?
4. *(From where)* je tvoja rodina?
5. *(You will)* čítať doma?
6. V tejto cirkvi nie je *(any)* človek, ktorý nie je na misii.
7. *(It is)* to tu *(somewhere)*.
8. *(Nobody) (is)* dokonalý.
9. *(How)* sa môžeme zlepšiť?
10. *(They [plural feminine])(will be)* vďačné.
11. Hovorili sme o *(him)* a o *(her)*, ale nehovorili sme o *(you [formal])*.
12. *(You [informal] are not)* odtiaľto?
13. *(When)* chcete ísť?
14. Od *(her)* som sa učil trpezlivosť.
15. Ježiš Kristus zomrel za *(you [informal])* a za *(me)*.
16. *(How many)* je hodín?
17. Nemáš *(something)* v tvojom vrecku?
18. Nemám *(anything)* v mojom vrecku.
19. Z *(what)* žijete?
20. Vďaka *(who)* môžeme byť spasení?

E. Companion Activities

1. Using subject pronouns, personal pronouns, *byť*, negation, and questions, write out a lesson plan for the first two principles of lesson 1. Focus on describing who God is and what the teachings of the gospel that bless families are. Include several questions in your plan. Have your companion check your lesson plan for grammar and vocabulary. Then practice teaching your plan to your companion or a native speaker as if he or she were a new investigator. Get feedback on your grammar and pronunciation.

2. With your companion, go through the first lesson and write down questions that you could ask for each principle. Use subject pronouns, personal pronouns, *byť*, and negation in your questions. Practice alternating principles and asking each other the questions you created.
3. Practice door or street contacts with your companion or a native speaker. Focus on clearly stating who you are and what your purpose is, as well as finding out who the people are and what their interests are. Get feedback on how well you used each of the principles in this review and how clear your introduction was.

F. Native Speaker Activity

Describe your family to a native speaker. Talk about the characteristics of each member of your family and what your family means to you. Relate what you talk about to the principle "Evanjelium Požehnáva Rodiny." Focus on using subject pronouns, personal pronouns, *byť*, negation, and questions. Get feedback on your grammar.

G. Scripture Activities

1. Read Matúš 16:13–18. Note how these verses use subject pronouns, personal pronouns, byť, and questions to discuss who Christ is. Write out a summary of what happens in the verses from a third-person point of view, paying special attention to how you use these grammar principles as you tell who the Apostles said that Christ is. Have your companion check your summary. Think of your investigator who could benefit from these verses and teach this passage to your companion as if he or she were that investigator. Get feedback on your grammar.
2. Read Ján 14:4–6 and write down the phrases and sentences that use negation, questions, and subject pronouns. Then use these verses to describe who Christ is as you teach your companion the principle *"Prostredníctvom Krista môžeme byť očistení od hriechu."* Get feedback on your use of these grammar principles and your pronunciation.
3. Read Moro. 7:16–17 and write down the sentences that use negation. Then use these verses to describe who the Holy Ghost is as you teach your companion the principle *"Dar Ducha Svätého"* as if he or she were one of your investigators. Get feedback on your pronunciation and your use of negation.

H. Writing Activities

1. Using subject pronouns, personal pronouns, *byť*, and negation, write a paragraph about who Heavenly Father **is** (for example, *Je náš Otec v nebi)* and who He is not (for example, *nie je Duch*). Using as many question words as you can (*kto, čo, kde,* etc.), write questions that you could ask to check whether an investigator has understood after you've taught him or her the material in your paragraph.
2. Use subject pronouns, personal pronouns, negation, and *byť* to write a paragraph about our life on earth. Write about who we are, why we are here, and what we should and should not do in order to return to live with God. Write some questions that you could ask to check for understanding. Have your companion or a native speaker check what you wrote and then practice teaching it to him or her as if he or she were your investigator.

I. Reading Activity

With your companion, read the section "Duch Svätý" on pages 90–92 of *Preach My Gospel*. After each paragraph, summarize what you read in your own words. Focus on using subject pronouns, personal pronouns, *byť*, negation, and questions correctly as you describe who the Holy Ghost is. Get feedback on those principles. Also ask your companion several questions about each paragraph, focusing on correctly formulating questions.

Asking About and Describing Objects, People, and Their Characteristics

Purpose

This section will help you talk about what something is like, such as talking about what God is like and what His characteristics are. The grammar principles in this section are targeted at helping you perform this function. Below are examples of the types of things you will be able to express with the grammar in this section.

- **Christ** has **a central role** in **the plan of salvation**. (Gender)
- God has given us **important commandments** to guide us. (Pluralization)
- **Your** family can be **eternal**. (Possessive Pronouns, Adjective-Noun Agreement)
- This life is the time to prepare to meet God. (Demonstrative Pronouns)
- The scriptures **that we have marked** will teach you more about faith. (*Ktorý*)
- We must **carefully** study **everything** in *Preach My Gospel*. (Adverbs, All & Everything)
- The Atonement was the single **most important** event. (Comparison)

Application

Below is a list of doctrinal points that these grammar principles will help you teach, as well as some common missionary tasks that they will help you perform. This list is not comprehensive; it is meant to help you think about how you can use the grammar in real situations. In parentheses next to each point are some sample questions that you can ask yourself to help you think about how to apply the grammar.

Doctrines from the Lessons

- God Is Our Loving Father in Heaven (What are God's characteristics? What is He like?)
- The Great Apostasy (What was it like during the Apostasy? What kinds of things were taught?)
- The Restoration of the Gospel (Describe Joseph Smith. What was it like where he lived?)
- The Book of Mormon (How would I describe the Book of Mormon and bear testimony about it?)
- Pray to Know the Truth (What does the Spirit feel like?)
- Our Life on Earth (How would I describe this life?)
- Spirit World (What is the spirit world like?)
- Kingdoms of Glory (What are the three kingdoms like?)
- Word of Wisdom (What should we avoid taking into our bodies?)

Tasks from the *Missionary Vocabulary and Phrases* Book

- Get to Know Someone (What kind of person are they? What is their family like?)
- Make a Purchase (How would I describe what I want to buy?)
- Meet Someone (What do I want them to know about who we are? Can I describe them to someone else?)

Gender

Examples

Will you keep the Sabbath **day** holy?	Budete svätiť **deň** sabatu?
Will you pray to God to know whether our **message** is true?	Budete sa modliť k Bohu, aby ste poznali, že naše **posolstvo** je pravdivé?
God reveals **truth** to **apostles** and **prophets**.	Boh zjavuje **pravdu apoštolom** a **prorokom**.
Tell me about your **experience** with **prayer**.	Povedzte mi o vašej **skúsenosti** s **modlitbou**.

Overview of Gender, Number, and Case

In Slovak, nouns, pronouns, and adjectives decline according to their **gender, plurality (singular or plural),** and **case**. This lesson will help you know how to correctly determine the gender of a noun. Lesson 9, "Pluralization" will help you determine a noun's number. *Cases* will be discussed in lessons 36–39. With a correct understanding of these three principles and corresponding patterns, you will be able to correctly decline nouns and adjectives.

Explanation

In Slovak, every noun (person, place, or thing) or pronoun is considered **masculine animate, masculine inanimate, neuter,** or **feminine**; even an object such as a chair has gender. Here are some guidelines to help you recognize when a noun is masculine, neuter, or feminine. (Keep in mind that these are only guidelines. There are some exceptions that are used frequently and that must be memorized when each new noun is learned.) The following three guidelines will help you when you're not sure what gender a noun belongs to:

1. If the noun ends in a hard consonant, it is typically masculine. If it ends in a soft consonant, it can be either masculine or feminine.
2. If the noun ends in ***e, o, ie,*** or ***um*** it will generally be neuter. If a noun ends in ***a***, it is most likely feminine, but may be any gender (see note below).
3. If the noun ends in ***osť***, assume it's feminine like ***kosť***. There are two kinds of feminine -***a*** endings. The first is when the ending -***a*** is preceded with a hard consonant (*žena*). The second is when the -***a*** is preceded with a soft consonant (*ulica*).

Endings	Masculine Nouns	Endings	Feminine Nouns	Endings	Neuter Nouns
-n (masculine animate noun ending in a consonant)	pá**n**: *man (animate)* Ten pá**n** je misionár. *That man is a missionary.*	**-na (hard consonant -a ending)**	rodin**a**: family Rodin**a** je časť Božieho plánu. *The family is part of God´s plan.*	**-o**	mest**o**: *town, city* Trenčín je mest**o** na Slovensku. *Trenčín is a town in Slovakia*
-a (masculine animate noun ending in -a)	hrdin**a**: *hero (animate)* Moroni je hrdin**a**. *Moroni is a hero.*	**-ca (soft consonant -a ending)**	uli**ca**: street or road Uli**ca** je dlhá. *The road is long.*	**-e**	srdc**e**: *heart* Srdc**e** je dôležité. *The heart is important.*
-b (hard consonant)	du**b**: *oak tree (inanimate)* Ten strom je du**b**. *That tree is an oak tree.*	**-ň (soft consonant)**	dla**ň**: *palm* Dla**ň** je veľká. *The palm is big.*	**-ie**	námest**ie**: *town square* Námest**ie** je pekné. *The town square is nice.*
-j (soft consonant)	stro**j**: *machine (inanimate)* Ten stro**j** je modrý. *That machine is blue.*	**-osť**	k**osť**: *bone* Zlomil som si **kosť**. *I broke a bone.*	**-um**	evanjeli**um**: *gospel* Evanjeli**um** je pravdivé. *The gospel of Jesus Christ is true.*
				-a (see note below on -a ending nouns)	dievč**a**: *girl* To dievč**a** má svedectvo. *That girl has a testimony.*

Note: Knowing the noun's gender is important for adjective agreement and L-form verb conjugation. See "Adjectives & Agreement" and "Past Tense, L-form, and *Aby*" for more information.

Note on nouns ending in -a: Technically a noun ending in -a could be any gender. Most nouns ending in -a are feminine. These feminine -a ending words divide into two categories, hard consonant followed by -a, and soft consonant followed by -a, as explained above. Those nouns ending in -a that are obviously masculine and living or once alive are masculine animate (e.g., hrdina: *hero*). **Some words ending in -a are neuter, however.** Words such as dievča (*girl*), dieťa (*child*), and zviera (*animal*) end in -a but are neuter and follow their own pattern.

Note on "irregular" feminine nouns ending in a consonant: Several common words ending in consonants that are not soft are actually feminine. Examples include tvár, zem, and cirkev. Some, like tvár (*face*) and zem (*earth*) follow the pattern of dlaň (*palm*), while others, like cirkev (*church*) follow the pattern of kosť (*bone*). Also, some words that should follow one pattern follow another for no apparent reason. Moc (*power*) ends in a soft consonant and is feminine, so we would expect that it follows dlaň. However, it follows kosť.

There are many exceptions to all of these guidelines for determining gender. Follow these guidelines and keep track of and memorize exceptions as you come across them.

More about gender:

Nouns that refer to males are masculine and those that refer to females are feminine.

Masculine	Feminine
brat: *brother*	sestra: *sister*
otec: *father*	matka: *mother*
doktor: *male doctor*	doktor**ka**: *female doctor*
učiteľ: *male teacher*	učiteľ**ka**: *female writer*

Some nouns have a similar form for both masculine and feminine. To make the noun feminine, add -ka to the end.

Masculine		Feminine
futbalista: *male soccer player*	→	futbalistka: *female soccer player*
turista: *male tourist*	→	turistka: *female tourist*
študent: *male student*	→	študentka: *female student*
gitarista: *male guitarist*	→	gitaristka: *female guitarist*
majiteľ: *male owner*	→	majiteľka: *female owner*
kamarát: *male friend*	→	kamarátka: *female friend*
Američan: *male American*	→	Američanka: *female American*

Activities

A. Masculine/Neuter/Feminine

On a separate sheet of paper, write each noun with its demonstrative pronoun (*ten* for masculine, to for neuter, and *tá* for feminine). Check your answers. For a useful bonus activity after learning about adjective-noun agreement, come up with an adjective for each now and write both words together, changing the adjective to match the gender of the noun.

1. prorok
2. deň
3. ruka
4. ryba
5. problém
6. posolstvo
7. stretnutie
8. krst
9. kniha
10. večer
11. slovník
12. práca
13. človek
14. múzeum
15. svedectvo
16. brat
17. láska
18. počasie
19. starosť
20. auto
21. noc
22. strom
23. kňazstvo
24. srdce
25. stroj
26. pokánie
27. centrum
28. trieda
29. služba
30. pes
31. apoštol
32. stvorenie

B. Common Errors

Try to figure out what is wrong with each sentence and why it is wrong. Then check your answer against the one listed in the answers section. The translation under the sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. Joseph Smith založil cirkev na ***tomto** zemi.
   Joseph Smith established the Church on this earth.
2. Vyučoval ich ***svoj** evanjelium.
   He taught them His gospel.
3. ***Kňazský** právomoc je **potrebný** na vykonávanie tohoto obradu.
   Priesthood authority is required to perform this ordinance.
4. ***Pondelky** večer je čas na rodinný domáci večer.
   Monday night is the time for Family Home Evening.
5. Môžete prečítať ***túto** verš nahlas?
   Can you read this verse out loud?
6. ***Aký** odpoveď hľadáte?
   What kind of answer are you looking for?

C. Scripture Activity

Find three passages in your English scriptures that you will share today. Write down all of the nouns you find in English. Then translate the nouns into Slovak and write whether they are masculine, neuter, or feminine. Check your answers using your Slovak scriptures.

D. Learn with Your Companion

Pick a topic you will teach today and have your companion turn to that page in the "Vocabulary and Phrases" section of the *TALL* book. Have your companion pick nouns at random from that topic and say them to you. Tell them whether the noun is masculine, neuter, or feminine. Repeat this activity for nouns you find in other sources, including the scriptures.

Carry an index card with you throughout the day while contacting. Whenever you find a word of which gender you are unsure, write the word down after the contact is over and ask your companion to help you understand what gender the word is. Review these words and their gender with your companion at the end of the day.

E. Learn with a Native Speaker

As you learn new vocabulary, if you are unclear of a word's gender ask a native speaker. Use the demonstrative pronouns *ten, to,* and *tá* with the word. For example: *"Ten sudca alebo tá sudca?"* Native speakers are usually more than willing to help you understand and learn their language.

F. Learn with Your District

As a district, create a list of nouns and practice identifying the gender of each noun. If any words are unclear, be sure to ask for clarification from more experienced speakers. Ask experienced speakers for tips on learning and understanding gender.

Pluralization

Examples

Families are central to God's plan.	**Rodiny** sú stredom Božieho plánu.
When the **apostles** were killed . . .	Potom ako **apoštoli** boli zabití . . .
Our physical bodies are imperfect.	Naše fyzické **telá** sú nedokonalé.
Tell me about your **experiences** with prayer.	Aké **skúsenosti** ste mali s modlitbou?

Explanation

In Slovak, nouns, pronouns, and adjectives decline according to their **gender, plurality (singular or plural),** and **case**. This lesson will help you know how to correctly determine the gender of a noun. Lesson 9, "Pluralization" will help you determine a noun's number. *Cases* will be discussed in lessons 36–39. With a correct understanding of these three principles and corresponding patterns, you will be able to correctly decline nouns and adjectives.

Making nouns plural is somewhat more complex in Slovak than it is in English. In English, we pluralize most nouns by adding an *-s* or an *-es*. Slovak nouns add ***i, e, y, á, ia, ovia, tá***, or they stay the same depending on what kind of nouns they are. There are four main types of neuter nouns: ***o***-ending, ***e***-ending, ***ie***-ending, and ***a***-ending. There are four types of feminine nouns: two ***a***-ending, one ***soft consonant***-ending, and one ***osť***-ending. There are also four kinds of masculine nouns. An explanation of masculine nouns follows:

Animate vs. Inanimate- There are two general classifications for masculine nouns: animate and inanimate. ***Animate*** masculine objects include all those things that move on their own power like a dog, a spirit, or a missionary. ***Inanimate*** masculine objects include everything else or all of those things that don't move on their own like a tree, a castle, and a dictionary. The question of animate vs. inanimate only pertains to masculine nouns. There is no such distinction made in the other two genders.

Hard vs. Soft- Another distinction made with masculine (and feminine) nouns is between nouns ending in a soft consonant and nouns ending in a hard consonant. ***Soft consonants*** are ***c, j, dz*** and any consonant with a mäkčeň (***č, d', dž , ň, ť, ľ, ž,*** and ***š***). All other consonants are hard (***d, t, n, l, g, k, h,*** and ***ch***) or neither (***b, p, m, v, f, r, z,*** and ***s***).

Understanding the **gender** of a noun and whether it is **animate** or **inanimate, hard** or **soft** is important when pluralizing the noun.

Singular to Plural

Masculine	Neuter	Feminine
pán → pán**i** **(animate)**	mesto → mest**á** **(o ending)**	žena → žen**y** **(hard consonant preceding a)**
hrdina → hrdin**ovia** **(animate and a-ending)**	srdce → srdc**ia** **(e ending)**	ulica → ulic**e** **(soft consonant preceding a)**
dub → dub**y** **(inanimate and hard consonant)**	námestie → námest**ia** **(ia ending)**	dlaň → dla**ne** **(soft consonant)**
stroj → stroj**e** **(inanimate and soft consonant)**	dievča → dievča**tá** **(a ending)**	kosť → kost**i** **(osť)**

Note: These patterns are for Nominative (first case) only. Other cases decline differently (See lesson 40, "Noun Declension," for more). Also, these are only general pluralization patterns and there are some variations that must be learned individually.

Spelling Changes

When the final consonant is preceded by an ***e***, the ***e*** will often drop out of the word when you add an ending. Occasionally ***o*** does the same thing.

chlap**e**c	→	chlapc**i**
p**e**s	→	p**si**
člán**o**k	→	člán**ky**
skut**o**k	→	skut**ky**

In Slovak, there are a few words that are automatically plural in their original form. This occurs in English as well occasionally (ex. pants, scissors, etc.).

nohavice	→	pants
nožnice	→	scissors
dvere	→	door
Košice	→	A city in Slovakia

Masculine animate nouns ending in *-k* often change to *-ci* in their pluralized form.

prorok	→	proroci
žiak	→	žiaci
nasledovník	→	nasledovníci

Exceptions: It is important to be aware of any exceptions. If you don't know how to pluralize or case a noun, use your resources to find out. Ask your companion, a member, or another native speaker for help.

Activities

A. Pluralization

On a separate sheet of paper, make each noun plural. Check your answers.

1. prorok
2. deň
3. ruka
4. žena
5. problém
6. leckia
7. otázka
8. pocit
9. meno
10. kniha
11. telo
12. rodina
13. učiteľ
14. služba
15. svedectvo
16. brat
17. svetlo
18. vzťah
19. sestra
20. požehnanie
21. misionár
22. noc
23. hriech
24. písmo
25. príležitosť
26. sľub
27. zázrak
28. túžba
29. člen
30. stretnutie
31. skúsenosť
32. prikázanie

B. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answer against the one listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. ***Proroky** svedčia o Kristovi.
   Prophets testify of Christ.
2. Mnohé ***cirkevy** vznikli.
   Many churches arose.
3. Cirkev Ježiša Krista svätých neskorších ***deny**.
   The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.
4. Desiatky a ***obeti** sú platené dobrovoľne.
   Tithes and offerings are paid voluntarily.
5. My sme ***misionár** z Cirkvi Ježiša Krista.
   We're missionaries from the Church of Jesus Christ.
6. ***Brati** a sestry . . .
   Brothers and sisters . . .

C. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key.

1. Joseph Smith, jeho nasledovníky a proroci Boží dostávajú božské zjavenia.
2. Cnostní človeky sú čistí.
3. Čítam kapitoly z Knihy Mormonovej.
4. Viera a nádej sú zásada evanjelia.
5. Môžeme študovať slovo apoštolov.
6. Rodina sú veľké požehnanie v našich životoch.
7. Sú tmavé nohavice a biele košele.
8. Proroci nás učia prikázania.
9. Obrad musia byť vykonané správnou právomocou.
10. Naše misia sú pre nás posvätné.
11. Na konci roku sa členy stretávajú s biskupom.
12. Pôst a modlitba idú spolu.
13. Naši záujemce postupujú?
14. Ako môžem zlepšovať svoje jazykové schopnosti?

D. *Preach My Gospel* Activity

Turn to page 44 of *Kážte Moje Evanjelium***.** Write down the plural form of each noun listed under *Kľúčové definície***.** Skip words that you would normally not pluralize like immortality and exaltation. Check your answers. Repeat this activity for other lessons.

E. Language Study Plan Activities

1. Make a goal to write down 10 nouns per day whose plural form you are unsure of during your daily activities. Each night, look up the plural form of those nouns and memorize them. Set a goal that whenever you learn a new noun, you will also learn its plural form.
1. Have your companion help you identify times when you make mistakes dealing with number (i.e., during prayers, contacting situations, teaching appointments, etc). Work on correcting these mistakes by saying the nouns you commonly get wrong in five different sentences each. Have your companion remind you when you miss one today.

F. Learn with Your Companion

Pick a topic you will teach today and have your companion turn to that page in the "Vocabulary and Phrases" section of the TALL book. Have your companion pick nouns at random from that topic and say them to you. Tell him or her the plural form of the word. Ask for feedback and apply what you've learned.

G. Scripture Activity

Find three scriptures that you will share today in your English scriptures. Write down all of the nouns from the English scriptures. Translate the nouns used into Slovak and determine the plural form. Check your answers with your companion.

H. Learn with a Native Speaker

Meet with a native speaker (preferably a member) and ask them to give you a noun related to the gospel vocabulary. Repeat the noun back to them in the plural form. If you make a mistake, ask for feedback. If you don't understand the plural form of a word, ask the native speaker to explain the pattern the noun follows.

I. Learn with Your District

As a district, read the "Kráľovstvá slávy" principle in *Kážte Moje Evanjelium*. As you read it aloud, look for the words that are plural. Have experienced speakers point out words that aren't as obvious. List the plural words on a board so everyone can see them and include the singular form as well. Take a few minutes to review the words and commit them to memory with their plural form. Repeat this activity with other principles.

Adjective-Noun Agreement

Examples

Our **physical** bodies are **imperfect**.	Naše **fyzické** tela sú **nedokonalé**.
Adam was the **first** prophet.	Adam bol **prvý** prorok.
The **Great** Apostasy led to **spiritual** darkness.	**Veľké** odpadlíctvo viedlo k **duchovnej** temnote.

Explanation

In Slovak just as in English, adjectives are words that are used to describe nouns (i.e., people, places, or things). Examples of adjectives in English include good, bad, beautiful, happy, foreign, sad, wonderful, younger, spiritual, clean, smart, etc. Adjectives do not have a set gender like nouns and pronouns do. Adjectives change gender to fit the gender of the noun or pronoun they are describing. Adjectives must also change to match the same case and plurality (singular or plural) of the noun they are describing. In the Slovak dictionary, adjectives are typically written in first case, singular, with a masculine gender like the following examples (translated from the English list above): dobrý, zlý, krásny, šťastný, cudzí, smutný, úžasný, mladší, duchovný, čistý, and chytrý. Adjectives can be hard or soft, depending on if the final consonant before the ending vowel is hard or soft. Hard and soft adjectives have different but similar ending-vowel patterns.

Declension of Adjectives

In Slovak, adjectives must change case, gender (masculine, neuter, or feminine), and number (singular or plural) in order to agree with the noun (i.e., person, place, thing, or idea) that they describe. This is done by changing the ending of the adjective in a predictable way. For example, hard adjectives in first case (like in the table immediately below) end in ý if they are describing masculine singular nouns, á if they are describing feminine singular nouns, é if they are describing neuter singular nouns, í if they are describing masculine animate plural nouns, and é if they are describing plural nouns of any gender except for masculine animate. Soft adjectives follow a similar pattern.

pravdiv**é evanjelium** *the true gospel*	**On** je mil**ý**. *He is kind.*	zlat**é dosky** *the gold plates*
posvätn**é obrady** *the sacred covenants*	znovuzriaden**á cirkev** *the restored Church*	**Ona** je čestn**á**. *She is honest.*

The following two charts list how adjectives decline in order to match the noun they describe in gender, case and number. Note the similarities between hard and soft adjectives. Also note how masculine and neuter declensions are identical for the second, third, sixth, and seventh cases.

Singular

Case	Masculine		Neuter		Feminine	
	Hard	**Soft**	**Hard**	**Soft**	**Hard**	**Soft**
1	pekný	cudzí	pekné	cudzie	pekná	cudzia
2	pekného	cudzieho	pekného	cudzieho	peknej	cudzej
3	peknému	cudziemu	peknému	cudziemu	peknej	cudzej
4	(ani.) pekného (ina.) pekný	(ani.) cudzieho (ina.) cudzí	pekné	cudzie	peknú	cudziu
6	peknom	cudzom	peknom	cudzom	peknej	cudzej
7	pekným	cudzím	pekným	cudzím	peknou	cudzou

Note: In the plural form, all declensions are identical for the second, third, sixth, and seventh cases.

Plural

Case	Masculine		Neuter		Feminine	
	Hard	Soft	Hard	Soft	Hard	Soft
1	(ani.) pekní (ina.) pekné	(ani.) cudzí (ina.) cudzie	pekné	cudzie	pekné	cudzie
2	pekných	cudzích	pekných	cudzích	pekných	cudzích
3	pekným	cudzím	pekným	cudzím	pekným	cudzím
4	(ani.) pekných (ina.) pekné	(ani.) cudzích (ina.) cudzie	pekné	cudzie	pekné	cudzie
6	pekných	cudzích	pekných	cudzích	pekných	cudzích
7	peknými	cudzími	peknými	cudzími	peknými	cudzími

Note: For help on recognizing what case a noun follows see lessons 36–39 on cases. For help on recognizing what gender a noun follows, see lesson 8 on gender.

Note: While memorizing these patterns may seem like a daunting task, keep in mind that many other Slovak words follow highly similar declension patterns including "Possessive Pronouns" (lesson 11), "Demonstrative Pronouns" (lesson 12), "*Ktorý*" (lesson 13), "Všetky" (lesson 14), and "Numbers" (lesson 35).

Position of Adjectives

In Slovak, the adjective is usually placed before the noun that it describes. The adjective distinguishes the noun from others of the same type by restricting, clarifying, or specifying the meaning of the noun. Adjectives also highlight inherent characteristics of the noun.

pravdivý prorok *a true prophet* *[distinguished from false prophets]*	**znovuzriadená** cirkev *the restored Church* *[distinguished from other churches]*
náš **Nebeský** Otec *our Heavenly Father* *[distinguished from our earthly father]*	**nutné** zásady *the essential principles* *[distinguished from other principles]*

Note: There are exceptions to this word order. For example the Holy Spirit is referred to using the adjective second *(Duch Svätý).*

Below are some examples of sentences using adjectives. Make sure you understand why each adjective is in its listed form.

Example Sentences	Explanation
Odložia **prirodzeného** človeka . . . *They will put off the natural man . . .*	*prirodzeného (prirodzený)* declines to match the **fourth case, masculine animate, singular** noun *človeka (človeka* is cased because of the fourth case verb *odložiť).*
Bez zjavení a **kňazskej** právomoci . . . *Without revelations and the priesthood authority . . .*	*kňazskej (kňazský)* declines to match the **second case, feminine, singular** noun *právomoci (právomoci* is cased according to the second case preposition *bez).*
Budete pracovať s **aktívnymi** členmi . . . *You will work with active members . . .*	*aktívnymi (aktívny)* declines to match the **seventh case, masculine animate, plural** noun *členmi (členmi* is cased according to the seventh case preposition *s).*

Activities

Note: The activities in this section assume you have some knowledge of cases *(Lesson 36–39).*

A. Find the Adjective

Each sentence has one or more adjectives. Write each adjective in both Slovak and English on a separate sheet of paper. Also list what form each adjective is in (case, gender, and number). Check your answers.

1. Vytvorte si pevný vzťah s biskupom.
   Build a strong relationship with the bishop.
2. Vaše svedectvo môže byť jednoduché.
   Your testimony can be simple.
3. Požiadajte (svojho) Nebeského Otca, aby vás požehnal.
   Ask Heavenly Father to bless you.
4. Vydajte vaše svedectvo o znovuzriadenom evanjeliu.
   Bear your testimony about the restored gospel.
5. Plán krátkej lekcie.
   The plan of a short lesson.
6. Slovo „hriech“ má rôzny význam v rôznych kultúrach.
   The word “sin” has different meaning in various cultures.
7. Toto dosiahneme neustálym používaním viery v Krista.
   We achieve this by the constant use of faith in Christ.
8. Zjaví nám pravdu prostredníctvom osobného zjavenia.
   He will reveal the truth to us through personal revelation.
9. Základnou jednotkou Cirkvi je rodina.
   The basic unit of the Church is the family.
10. Kázali evanjelium celému svetu.
    They preached the gospel to the whole world.
11. Inšpirovaní ľudia získavajú zjavenia alebo pokyny od Boha.
    Inspired people receive revelations or instructions from God.
12. Členovia sú najlepšími zdrojmi k vyhľadávaniu ľudí.
    Members are the best sources for finding people.

B. Fill in the Blank (First and Fourth Case Practice)

Write the correct adjective for each sentence on a separate sheet of paper or do the activity out loud with your companion. Make sure that it agrees with the noun it describes. Check your answers after you finish. Some adjectives may be used more than once.

1. Viem, že Kniha Mormonova je ____.
2. Proroci nás učia ____ zásady.
3. Ježiš Kristus je ____ príklad.
4. Táto pasáž je moja ____ pasáž.
5. Krst je ____ obrad.
6. Písma sú pre nás ____.
7. Život je občas ____.
8. Keď sme ____, môžeme obdržať zjavenie.

dôležité
ťažký
pokorný
obľúbená
posvätný
dokonalý
pravdivá

C. Fill in the Blank (All Cases)

On a separate sheet of paper, write the adjective for each sentence in its correct form so that it agrees with the noun it describes. Check your answers after you finish. You may also do this activity out loud with your companion.

1. Desiatok je _____ požehnanie od Boha. (úžasný)
2. Zamerajte sa na _____ dielo. (základný)
3. Moja rodina je veľmi _____. (láskavý)
4. Vyberte si jednu z _____ lekcií. (misionársky)
5. Mám _____ rodičov. (dobrý)
6. Rád počúvam _____ slová prorokov. (inšpirovaný)
7. Lenka potrebujete byť _____, aby sa dala pokrstiť. (hodný)
8. Vykúpenie prichádza prostredníctvom _____ Mesiáša. (Svätý)
9. Prorok je _____ muž s _____ vierou. (povolaný) (veľký)
10. Božie prikázania sú návod k _____ životu. (šťastný)

11. Všetci ľudia majú dar _____ vôle. (slobodný)
12. Pomôžte všetkým _____ záujemcom. (nový)
13. Smelosť ukazuje vašu _____ vieru. (silný)
14. Blahoželáme Vám k _____ príležitosti. (úžasný)
15. Napíšte _____ myšlienku pasáže v _____ odstavci. (hlavný) (krátky)
16. Pán vás môže požehnať v _____ _____ smeroch. (rôzny) (iný)
17. Varuje nás pred _____ alebo _____ nebezpečenstvom. (duchovný) (fyzický)
18. Prostredníctvom zjavenia sa Adam dozvedel o _____ vzťahu ľudstva s Bohom Otcom. (správny)
19. Ak sa budete modliť s _____ srdcom, s _____ zámerom a vierou v Krista, . . . (úprimný) (naozajstným)
20. Muži a ženy sa začali búriť proti _____ _____ zvyklostiam. (vtedajší) (náboženský)

D. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answers against the one listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. Ja viem, že Joseph Smith je ***pravdivá** prorok.
   I know that Joseph Smith was a true prophet.
2. Duch Svätý je ***vzácne** dar.
   The Holy Ghost is a precious gift.
3. Eva bola ***verný** žena.
   Eve was a faithful woman.
4. ***Celestiálny** kráľovstvo je najvyššie kráľovstvo.
   The celestial kingdom is the highest kingdom.
5. Moc Ducha ***Svätý** je stredobodom obrátenia.
   The power of the Holy Ghost is central to conversion.
6. Boh sa teší z cudnosti a nenávidí ***sexualne** hriech.
   God delights in chastity and hates sexual sin.
7. Smrť je ***nutný** časť plánu.
   Death is an essential part of the plan.
8. Sú ***spravodlivý** muži, ktorých Boh povolal.
   They are righteous men whom God has called.
9. ***Svätá** písma učia o Ježišovi Kristovi.
   The scripture teach about Jesus Christ.
10. Prezident pobočky je ***úžasný** človekom.
    The branch president is a wonderful person.

E. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key. For any questions that you miss, write at least two sentences that you could use in your teaching today that use the correct form of the word.

1. Máme podporovať čestný a múdry vodcov.
2. Sestra Raganová nie je pripravené na krst.
3. Kniha Mormonova hovorí o dávnych zmluvách.
4. Svätá písma svedčia o božskosti Ježiša Krista.
5. Všetci z nás sú zodpovedný za hlásanie evanjelia.
6. Každý je milovaným duchovným synom alebo dcérou.
7. Jeho evanjelium bolo posolstvom pokoja a dobra vôle.
8. Zlý otázky môžu záujemcov urážať.
9. Bol veľkým Jehovom Starého zákona a Mesiášom Nového.
10. Misionárky sú tiež povolané zjavením.
11. Tento nový život začal trvalou zmluvou s Bohom.
12. Tieto písma nám hovoria o Božej časti krstnej zmluvy.

F. Language Study Plan Activities

1. Using the scriptures and chapter 3 of *Preach My Gospel*, find 10 adjectives you don't know that you could use in your teaching today and memorize them. Practice using them correctly in teaching situations.
2. Read through several scriptures that you will be using during your teaching appointments over the next couple of days. Focus special attention on adjectives and their agreement. Find two examples of adjectives for each of the three genders (ex. Duch **Svätý, Veľké** odpadlíctvo, etc.).
3. Prepare a list of your own sentences using adjectives that you would like to use when you teach and give it to a native speaker. Ask them to correct any errors and then talk about the errors together.

G. *Preach My Gospel* Activities

Look up an article in the *Liahona* that is on a topic that you will be teaching today (for example, faith). Identify 5–10 adjectives and noun pairs from the article that are used in teaching this topic. Notice how nouns and adjectives agree one with another. Check with your companion to make sure you understand how to use them and set a goal to use them in your teaching appointment today.

1. Read the story on page 132 of *Kážte Moje Evanjelium* and answer the following question on a separate sheet of paper or with your companion.
   a. What adjectives are used in this story? To better understand agreement, look for the nouns which the adjectives are describing.
2. Read the "Stupne Aktivity" on page 126 of *Kážte Moje Evanjelium.* What adjectives does this activity contain? Using these adjectives, tell your companion some of your goals for developing Christlike attributes.
3. Read "Learn to Recognize the Promptings of the Spirit" on page 96 of *Kážte Moje Evanjelium*. Describe to your companion the promptings of the Spirit.

H. Practice Describing

1. Choose one to three subjects related to what you will be teaching your investigators, such as "faith," "repentance," etc. Think of 5–10 adjectives that describe those subjects and write them down. You may need to use a dictionary to help you. Practice teaching these topics using the adjectives you learned.
2. Think of a figure from the scriptures (for example, Nephi) that you would like to talk about with a specific investigator. Have your companion act as that investigator, and, using adjectives, describe the figure from the scripture in as much detail as possible. Use scriptures to give examples of the characteristics you describe. Relate the character to your investigator and show what it has to do with him or her.
3. Open one of the pamphlets for the lessons and use as many adjectives as you can to describe each picture in the pamphlet to your companion as if he or she were seeing the pictures for the first time as an investigator.
4. Use adjectives to describe what is happening in the picture to the right to your companion in as much detail as you can. Use adjectives to describe who Jesus Christ is.

I. Learn with a Native Speaker

Choose something you struggle describing (a part of a lesson, an experience you would like to share, etc.). Ask native speakers to show you how they might describe it. Pay close attention to what adjectives they use and how they use them. Use what you learned from them to share it yourself.

I. Learn with a Native Speaker

Choose something you struggle describing (a part of a lesson, an experience you would like to share, etc.). Ask native speakers to show you how they might describe it. Pay close attention to what adjectives they use and how they use them. Use what you learned from them to share it yourself.

J. Learn with Your District

During your district meeting, have missionaries pair up with another missionary who is more experienced with the language. Have each missionary write down five nouns from the gospel vocabulary and then exchange the nouns with each other. Each missionary should describe the new words using one adjective per noun, focusing on adjective agreement.

For example:
svetlo.....jasné svetlo
viera.....silná viera
základ.....pevný základ
cirkev.....pravdivá cirkev
uzmierenie.....večné uzmierenie

Possessive Pronouns

Examples

We will be rewarded according to **our** works.	Budeme odmenení podľa **našich** skutkov.
Jesus Christ visited the Americas to teach **His** gospel.	Ježiš Kristus navštívil Ameriku, aby učil **svoje** evanjelium.
I ask Thee to bless **my** companion.	Prosím ťa, požehnaj **môjho** spoločníka.
God's purpose and (**His**) plan for us.	**Boží** zámer a (**jeho**) plán pre nás.

Explanation

Possessive pronouns are used to indicate possession. For example, in the sentence "your book is red," your is a possessive pronoun.

Possessive Pronoun Definition

Possessive pronouns agree in number, gender, and case with the object or person that is possessed, not with the possessor. In the example sentence above—your book is red—your would change to fit the gender of book, regardless of whether the owner of the book is a man or a woman. The possessive pronouns are shown below in their nominative masculine form with the feminine and neuter endings shown in parenthesis.

Possessive Pronouns

môj (moja, moje)	*my/mine*	**náš (naša, naše)**	*our(s)*
tvoj(a,e)	*your(s) (singular/ informal)*	**váš (vaša, vaše)**	*your(s) (plural/formal)*
jeho **jej**	*his, its* *her(s), its*	**ich**	*their(s)*

Examples:

Boh je <u>náš</u> Nebeský Otec. *God is our Heavenly Father*
Sme <u>jeho</u> deti. *We are His children.*
Kážte <u>Moje</u> Evanjelium *Preach My Gospel*

Note: In prayer, use the singular informal *tvoj* with Heavenly Father to express closeness.

Note: The English possessive pronoun **its** can be either *jeho* or *jej* in Slovak depending on the gender of the possessing object. For example, if you wanted to say **"Its power"** when referring to the Book of Mormon's power, you would say *'jej moc'* because the Book of Mormon is a feminine noun. When no gender is specified, **its** assumes the form *jeho*.

Possessive Pronoun Declination

Like nouns and adjectives in Slovak, possessive pronouns also decline. Below are the patterns for *môj*. The patterns for *tvoj, náš,* and *váš* are identical. Note how similar these declination patterns are to adjective declinations in lesson 10.

Case	Masculine	Neuter	Feminine	Plural
1	môj	moje	moja	moje (masc. animate: moji)
2	môjho	môjho	mojej	mojich
3	môjmu	môjmu	mojej	mojim
4	môj (animate: môjho)	moje	moju	moje (masc. animate: mojich)
6	mojom	mojom	mojej	mojich
7	mojím	mojím	mojou	mojimi

Since possessive pronouns agree with the object or person being possessed, you must determine the number, gender, and case of the noun they are possessing in order to decline them properly. *Jeho, jej,* and *ich* never decline or change gender even if the noun they possess declines.

Examples:

Boh povolal proroka v **našej** dobe. God called a prophet in our time.	→	***Dobe*** (time) is the object being possessed. It is a noun in the **singular, feminine, sixth case** form. Thus, the possessive pronoun náš will change to našej (singular, feminine, sixth case) in order to match the object being possessed in **number, gender,** and **case**.
V **ich** životoch. In their lives.	→	***Životoch*** (lives) is the noun being possessed. It is plural, masculine, sixth case. However, since ***ich*** doesn't decline, the possessive pronoun remains ***ich***.

Svoj

Svoj is another way to indicate possession, but is only used when the subject of the sentence possesses its own thing (i.e., when the subject matches the possessor exactly). If *svoj* is in a sentence it is always referring to possession by the subject. Its purpose is to eliminate ambiguity regarding ownership of the object being possessed.

For example, if you were to say in English, "John has his book," it's difficult to tell whether John has **his own** book or if he has **someone else's** book. If **John** has **his own** book, or if **you** have **your own** book, *svoj* is used. If the object, however, belongs to someone besides the subject of the sentence, then the possessive pronouns *môj, tvoj, jeho,* etc. are used.

Examples:

Ježiš Kristus založil **svoju** cirkev.
Jesus Christ established His (own) church.

Spasiteľ vyučoval **svoje** evanjelium.
The Savior taught His (own) gospel.

Note: *Svoj* also declines according to the noun it possesses in number, gender, and case. It follows the same declination pattern as *tvoj*.

Possession using the Genitive Case (Second Case)

In English, possession can also be expressed with the apostrophe s (ex. "Jesus Christ's gospel"). The most common way to express the apostrophe s ('s) in Slovak is by using the genitive case (second case). For example instead of saying, "Jesus Christ's gospel," you could say, "The Gospel of Jesus Christ." For more on the genitive case, see lesson 36.

Example:

Evanjelium **Ježiša Krista** je pravdivé.
The Gospel of Jesus Christ is true.

Note: One exception to this is when saying **the Son of God**. To say this, use the possessive adjective *Boží* (**God's**) and say *Boží Syn* (**God's Son**). *Boží* declines like a soft adjective.

Possessive Endings

Another, less common way of expressing possession in Slovak is by using possessive endings. Possessive endings can be added to any one-word person or name (ex. Peter, Eva, mother, dad, brother, etc.). Masculine names or persons add *-ov* (masculine singular), *-ovo* (neuter singular), *-ova* (feminine singular), *-ovi* (masculine animate plural), and *-ove* (plural and not masculine animate), all depending upon the gender of the thing that is being possessed. Feminine names or persons drop their final *a* and add *-in* (m.s.), *-ino* (n.s.), *-ina* (f.s.), *-ini* (m.ani. pl.), and *-ine* (pl not m.ani), also all depending upon the gender of the thing that is being possessed.

Note: Occasionally names will lose letters when a possessive ending is added (*Kristus → Kristov, Peter → Petrov*). Ask your companion and natives to help you with difficult names.

Examples:

Predstavuje záväzok žiť ako **Kristov učeník**. *It represents a commitment to live as Christ's disciple.*	**Evin priestupok** bol nutný. *Eva's (Eve's) transgression was necessary.*
Sú ochotní vziať na seba **meno Kristovo**. *They are willing to take upon themselves Christ's name.*	**Sárina slúžka** bola Egypťanka Hagar. *Sarai's handmaid was the Egyptian Hagar.*

Like possessive pronouns, possessive endings decline according to the gender, case, and number of the nouns they modify.

Examples:

Vy ste **Kristovi** a **Kristus** je **Boží**. - 1. Korintským 3:23
Ye are Christ's; and Christ is God's. - 1 Corinthians 3:23

Mormon učí o čistej **láske Kristovej**.
Mormon teaches about Christ's pure love.

Prostredníctvom **Kristovho uzmierenia** môžeme byť očistení.
Through Christ's Atonement we can be cleansed.

Vlastnosti podobné **Kristovým**
Attributes similar to Christ's

Note: Though the declinations of possessive endings are almost identical to that of *tvoj*, there are a few exceptions. Namely, possessive endings matching a first or fourth case singular neuter noun end in *-ovo/-ino*, **not** *-ove/-ine. (ex. Som vďačný za* rozhodnutie Evino*).* In addition, except when matching masculine first case plural, all *'i's* and *'í's* become *'ý's (ex. Od* Kristových *apoštolov... **not** Od* Kristovích *apoštolov...).*

Activities

Note: The activities in this section assume you have some knowledge of *cases* (lesson 36–39).

A. Fill in the Blank

Activities for possessive pronouns: Fill in the blanks with the correct personal pronoun. Check your answers.

1. Keď ___ (*my*) spoločník vyučuje, moja myseľ často blúdi.
2. Boh chce, aby všetky ___ (*his*) deti poznali pravdu.
3. Zjavenie je komunikácia Boha s ___ (*his*) deťmi na zemi.
4. Môžete si stanoviť ciele pre ___ (*your--formal*) osobný rozvoj.
5. Čítajte túto knihu a premýšľajte o ___ (*her/its*) posolstve.
6. Boh je ___ (*our*) Otec a my sme ___ (*his*) deti.
7. Po smrti ___ (*our*) duch odíde do duchovného sveta.
8. ___ (*their*) úsilie viedlo k vzniku mnohých cirkví.
9. Boh dal Adamovi a Eve ___ (*their*) slobodnú vôľu.
10. „Hovor [Pane], lebo ___ (*your--informal*) služobník počúva."
11. ___ (*your--formal*) Nebeský Otec vie lepšie čo potrebujete ako vy.
12. Kniha Mormonova podporuje Bibliu a svedčí o ___ (*her/its*) pravdivosti.

B. Fill in the Blank

First, underline which noun is being possessed and determine its number, gender, and case. Then fill in the corresponding possessive pronoun with the same case, gender, and number as the noun it modifies. Check your answers.

1. „Toto je ___(*môj*) milovaný Syn. Vypočuj Ho!"
2. Môžeme žiť spolu s ___ (*náš*) rodinami navždy.
3. „Sme ti vďační za ___ (*tvoj*) lásku."
4. Myslíte si, že Boh počuje ___ (*váš*) modlitby? Prečo?
5. Ako chápete Boží plán pre vás a ___ (*váš*) rodinu?
6. ____ (*Matka*) syn bol Ježiš Kristus.
7. Rozmýšľajte o ___ (*jej*) pravdivosti vo svojej mysli a v svojom srdci.
8. Žili v nevinnosti a Boh sa staral o ___ (*ich*) potreby.

9. „Lebo tak Boh miloval svet, že ___ (*svoj*) jednorodeného Syna dal … aby ho [svet] spasil" (Ján 3:16–17).
10. Prostredníctvom moci Ducha Svätého môžeme cítiť Božiu lásku a ___ (*jeho*) vedenie.
11. Uctite si _____ (*Kristov*) meno vašimi skutkami.
12. Všetci potrebujeme božskú milosť kvôli _____ (*Adam*) pádu.
13. Je to dobrý nápad vysvätiť otca do _____ (*Áron*) kňazstva ihneď po krste.
14. Nasledujte ____ (*Kristov*) príklad.
15. Vďaka _____ (*Mária*) synovi . . .
16. Mali by sme byť vďační za ____ (*Eva*) odvahu.
17. Buďte pokrstení v ___(*môj*) mene, aby ste mohli byť posvätení prijatím Ducha Svätého.
18. Snažte sa žiť v súlade s ____ (*Boh*) prikázaniami.
19. Vždy vyjadrite ____ (*svoj*) vďačnosť za ____ (*svoj*) požehnania.
20. Ako môžem zlepšiť ____ (*môj*) vyučovacie zručnosti?

C. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answers against the ones listed in the answers section. The translation below gives what is meant to be said.

1. Boh je ***nás** Nebeský Otec.
   God is our Heavenly Father.
2. Boh nás odmení podľa toho ako sme prežili ***náš** život.
   God rewards us depending on how we lived our life.
3. Vyberte smietku, ktorá je v oku **bratov**.
   Pull out the mote that is in thy brother's eye.
4. Budete čítať písma s ***váš** rodinou každý deň?
   Will you read scriptures with your family every day?
5. Sme Ti vďační za ***Tvoja** dobrotivosť.
   We're grateful for Thy goodness.
6. Veríte, že Boh je ***vás** Nebeský Otec?
   Do you believe that God is your Heavenly Father?
7. Boh poslal ***Jeho** syna, aby nás spasil.
   God sent His son to save us.
8. Viem, že Kristus je ***náš** Spasiteľom.
   I know that Christ is our Savior.
9. Som vďačný za ***Kristove** uzmierenie.
   I'm thankful for Christ's Atonement.
10. ***Matkova** rodina je veľká.
    My mother's family is big.
11. Prostredníctvom ***našu** viery nás Kristus môže uzdraviť.
    Through our faith, Christ can heal us.
12. Premýšľali ste o ***jejom** posolstve?
    Have you thought about its message?

D. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key. For any questions that you miss, write at least two sentences that you could use in your teaching today which use the correct form of the word.

1. Nebeský Otec pozná naše slabosti a má s nami trpezlivosť.
2. Joseph znovuzriadil evanjelium Ježiša Krista a svoju cirkev.
3. Povolal dvanásť apoštolov a položil ruky na ich hlavy.
4. Viem, že Pán odpovie na vaši modlitby.
5. Spasiteľov pozemská služba
6. Toto je môj milovaný Syn. Vypočuj Ho!
7. Boh poslal svojho jednorodeného Syna.
8. Čítajte Knihu Mormonovu a premýšľajte o jeho posolstve.
9. Mám rád Prvý Petrový list.
10. Cítime v našoch životoch Božie odpustenie a jeho pokoj.
11. Ich úsilie viedlo k vzniku mnohých protestantských cirkví.
12. Moja kolega je z Utahu.
13. Podľa môjho názoru . . .
14. Sestra Evinej matky sa naštvala.
15. Počas jeho pozemského pôsobenia Spasiteľ vyučoval svoje evanjelium a vykonal mnoho zázrakov.
16. Keď zoznamujete druhých s Knihou Mormonovou, krátko popíšte jej obsah.

E. Learn with Your Companion

Talk about your blessings with your companion. Focus on agreeing possessives correctly (number, gender, and case) and get feedback from your companion.

Example:

Som vďačný za **moje** zdravie.

With your companion, practice talking about your new investigators as you would during a ward council meeting. Tell what you know about their children, friends, job, hobbies, etc., using the appropriate possessive pronouns. Get feedback from your companion.

Example:

V **ich** rodine je 5 detí a žijú spolu so **svojou** mamou.

F. Actively Listen

Listen to how the natives in your mission express possession and imitate them. Write down any phrases they use that you would not have used. Pay special attention to how they differentiate between *svoj* and other possessives. Review these phrases with your companion at the end of the day.

G. Learn Grammar

Prepare 5–10 sentences using possessives that you can use in your scheduled activities today. Have your companion check your sentences. Practice using them throughout the day.

H. District Meetings

Similar to companion practice, take time during district meeting to discuss which new investigators you've found, describing them in detail and using the appropriate possessives.

Demonstrative Pronouns

Examples

From **this** passage, what can we learn about faith?	Z **tejto** pasáže, čo sa môžeme učiť o viere?
We understand how **that** could be difficult.	Rozumieme tomu, že **to** môže byť ťažké.
This passage is found in the Book of Mormon.	**Táto** pasáž sa nachádza v Knihe Mormonovej.
God blesses **those** who pay an honest tithe.	Boh požehnáva **tých**, ktorí platia poctivé desiatky.

Explanation

Demonstratives are words used to point things out, namely **this, that, these,** and **those.** They are used to refer to nouns and decline similar to adjectives.

Examples:

Ten príbeh nás učí o viere. *That story teaches us about faith.*	**To** je pravda. *That is true.*
Tí ľudia boli verní. *Those people were faithful.*	**Tá** kapitola je jedna z mojich obľúbených. *That chapter is one of my favorites.*

Case	Masculine	Neuter	Feminine	Plural
1	ten	to	tá	tie (masc. animate: tí)
2	toho	toho	tej	tých
3	tomu	tomu	tej	tým
4	ten (masc. animate: toho)	to	tú	tie (masc. animate: tých)
6	tom	tom	tej	tých
7	tým	tým	tou	tými

Demonstrative Pronouns

Demonstrative pronouns precede and match in case, gender, and number (plurality) the noun they modify. ***Ten, to,*** and ***tá*** are equivalent to **that**, while ***tí*** and ***tie*** (inanimate, neuter, and feminine) are equivalent to **those**.

Examples:

Ten misionár je z Nemecka. *That missionary is from Germany.*	→	***Misionár*** is the object being modified. It is a noun in the **singular, masculine, first case** form. Thus, the demonstrative pronoun needed is ten (singular, masculine, first case) matching the object being possessed in **number, gender,** and **case**.
Čo si Pán myslel o **tých** misionároch? *What did the Lord think about those missionaries?*	→	***Misionároch*** is the noun being possessed. It is plural, masculine, sixth case. Thus, the demonstrative pronoun needed is tých (plural, masculine, sixth case), matching the object being possessed in **number, gender,** and **case**.

Adding a ***-to*** to the end of a demonstrative pronoun changes its meaning to **this** or **these**.

This	That
Toto posilní vašu vieru, znalosť a svedectvo. ***This*** *strengthens your faith, knowledge, and testimony.*	**To** posilní vašu vieru, znalosť a svedectvo. ***That*** *strengthens your faith, knowledge, and testimony.*

Example Sentences	Explanation
Vyučujte všetky náuky v **týchto** lekciách. *Teach all the doctrine in these lessons.*	*Týchto* declines to match the **sixth case, feminine, plural** noun *lekciách* (*lekciách* is cased according to the sixth case preposition *v*).
Žije v súlade s **týmto** učením. *He is living in harmony with this teaching.*	*Týmto* declines to match the **seventh case, neuter, singular** noun *učením* (*učením* is cased according to the seventh case preposition *s*).
Premýšľajte o **tejto** vete. *Think about this sentence.*	*Tejto* declines to match the **sixth case, feminine, singular** noun *vete* (*vete* is cased according to the sixth case preposition *o*).

Activities

Note: The activities in this section assume you have some knowledge of *cases* (lesson 36–39).

A. Identifying Demonstratives

On a separate sheet of paper write down or say aloud with your companion the demonstratives both in Slovak and English in each of the following sentences. Be sure to check your answers.

1. Táto kniha učí, že tieto veci sú pravdivé.
   This book teaches that these things are true.
2. V tom videní videl Joseph Smith Boha a Ježiša Krista.
   In that vision, Joseph Smith saw God and Jesus Christ.
3. V ten deň som obdržal kňazstvo.
   That day I received the priesthood.
4. V tejto lekcii je veľa toho, čo sa môžeme učiť.
   In this lesson there's a lot to learn.
5. Viem, že tieto knihy obsahujú pravdu.
   I know that these books contain the truth.
6. Máme pomáhať tým členom.
   We should help those members.
7. Tie náuky sú veľmi dôležité.
   Those doctrines are very important.
8. Tí misionári boli poslušní.
   Those missionaries were obedient.

B. Fill in the Blank

On a separate sheet of paper write down or say aloud with your companion the correct demonstrative in its correct form for each of the following sentences. Check your answers.

For each demonstrative phrase from the questions in Activity B, write your own sentences that you could use during a teaching appointment today.

Example:

"(this) Cirkev"
Táto Cirkev je znovuzriadená Cirkev Ježiša Krista.

1. Ďakujeme ti za ___ (*these*) požehnania.
2. Máme veľa skúseností v ___ (*this*) živote.
3. Navštívite s nami cirkev ___ (*this*) nedeľu?
4. ___ (*These*) ľudia boli nespravodliví.
5. ___ (*These*) verše hovoria o viere.
6. ___ (*This*) dispenzácia sa volá dispenzácia plnosti časov.
7. Je dôležité dodržiavať ___ (*these*) zákony.
8. Môžeme sa učiť viac o Kristovi v ___ (*this*) kapitole.

C. Fill in the Blank

On a separate sheet of paper write down or say aloud with your companion the correct demonstrative in its correct form for each of the following sentences. Check your answers.

1. Môžeme študovať o ___ (*that*) zásade.
2. Stredom ___ (*this*) plánu je uzmierenie Ježiša Krista.
3. ___ (*Those*) ľudia prenasledovali apoštolov.
4. Pomôžte ___ (*those*), ktorých vyučujete.
5. Chceme sa vyhýbať ___ (*those*) problémom.
6. Môžeme sa vrátiť k Bohu prostredníctvom ___ (*that*) plánu.
7. Boh nám dal ___ (*that*) sľub.
8. Držiteľ kňazstva vykonáva ___ (*those*) obrady.
9. ___ (*This*) kapitola vám pomôže.
10. ___ (*These*) požehnania sú dostupné teraz a vo večnosti.

D. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answers against the ones listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. Ďakujeme Ti za ***ten** deň.
   We thank Thee for this day.
2. ***Tie** verše hovoria o uzmierení.
   These verses talk about the Atonement.
3. ***Tie** ľudia sú poslušní.
   Those people are obedient.
4. ***Títo** prikázania sú nám dané od Boha.
   These commandments are given to us from God.
5. ***Toto** lekcia vám môže pomáhať.
   This lesson can help you.
6. V ***toto** videní...
   In this vision...

E. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key. For any questions that you miss, write at least two sentences that you could use in your teaching today that use the correct form of the word.

1. Tieto obdobie sa nazýva predpozemský život.
2. Tí, ktorí sú pokrstení, majú tiež dar Ducha Svätého.
3. Tento obrad sa nazýva krst.
4. Kam pôjdeme po tomto živote?
5. Chceme čítať tá kapitolu s vami.
6. Viem, že títo veci sú pravdivé prostredníctvom Ducha.
7. Dostal som povolanie od ten proroka.
8. Prejavujeme túto vieru v Krista poslušnosťou.
9. Boh chce, aby sme učili to, čo je v písmach.
10. Tieto pocity sú potvrdením od Ducha Svätého.
11. Musíte byť pokrstený ten správnou právomocou.
12. Ten plán je zameraný na uzmierenie Krista.
13. Tie sú prvé zásady evanjelia.
14. Môžeme sa učiť ten, čo Boh pre nás chce.
15. Toto posolstvo je pre všetkých dôležité.
16. Uzmierenie vám pômože s tými problémami.

F. Language Study Plan Activities

1. Write down sentences using demonstratives that you can use in your scheduled activities. Have your companion or a native speaker check your sentences for correctness and role play the situation in which you will use them.
2. Find scriptures that use demonstratives and that you can use in your teaching. Memorize the scriptures and, in role plays with your companion, practice introducing and applying the scripture to your investigators using demonstratives correctly.

G. Describe the Picture

Describe the picture to the right from Lehi's perspective. Point to the people or things that you are referring to as you describe his dream. Pay special attention to how you use demonstratives. For example, Lehi could have said, "To je ten strom života," "To ovocie je biele," "Tí ľudia sú hriešnici," etc. **Some words you might use include:** *strom, železná tyč, pole, budova, ovocie, fontána, ľudia, rieka, cesta, hmla temnoty, etc.*

H. Scripture Activities

1. Turn to Alma 22:15. There are several demonstratives in this verse. The story is told from the king´s point of view. Write out the story from Aaron´s point of view using the demonstratives *ten, to, tá,* etc. Share it with your companion or during a lesson today.
2. Turn to Alma 34:32. Answer the following questions in Slovak on a separate sheet of paper or aloud with your companion. What demonstratives are used in this verse and what case are they conjugated into? You may need to read the verses beforehand to understand the scripture correctly. Check your answers after you finish.

I. Learn with a Native

During a visit with a native speaker, practice using demonstatives by introducing yourself and getting to know the native. Take out a picture of your family. Point to each member of your family and explain what he or she does for work or school (e.g., Tento brat chodí na univerzitu a študuje . . .). Focus on your use of demonstatives. After you've finished introducing yourself, ask the native speaker to show you a picture of his or her family and tell you about each member of the family. Listen for demonstatives that are used.

J. Learn with Your District

Practice introducing scriptures as a district. Choose three different scriptures you would use when teaching about the plan of salvation. Use demonstratives to introduce the scriptures. Ask for feedback from more experienced speakers and set goals to apply what you've learned to your own teaching.

Ktorý (Who, Which, That)

Examples

Righteous people, **who** try to restore truth . . .	Spravodliví ľudia, **ktorí** sa snažia znovuzriadiť pravdu . . .
Those **who** don't repent will live in the telestial kingdom.	Tí, **ktorí** nečinia pokánie, budú žiť v telestiálnom kráľovstve.
This time in **which** we live is called the last days.	Táto doba, v **ktorej** žijeme, sa volá posledné dni.
God has a body of flesh and bone **that** is perfect.	Boh má telo z mäsa a kostí, **ktoré** je dokonalé.

Explanation

Ktorý is a relative pronoun used in the subordinate clause (the clause coming after the main clause) and serves as a substitute for the noun repeated from the main clause. It agrees with the noun in the main clause in number and gender, but not necessarily in case. Its case in the subordinate clause is determined by its function in that clause. In English, to avoid being redundant and repeating the subject again in the second clause, we insert **who, which,** or **that** in place of the repeated noun. In Slovak, *ktorý* serves this purpose.

God has a body. His body is perfect.	*Boh má telo. Jeho telo je dokonalé.*
God has a body **which** is perfect.	*Boh má telo,* ***ktoré*** *je dokonalé.*
We have bodies. Our bodies are imperfect.	*Máme telá. Naše telá sú nedokonalé.*
We have bodies **which** are imperfect.	*Máme telá,* ***ktoré*** *sú nedokonalé.*
God calls prophets. He gives prophets the priesthood.	*Boh povoláva prorokov. Udeľuje prorokom kňazstvo.*
God calls prophets **to whom** are given the priesthood.	*Boh povoláva prorokov,* ***ktorým*** *udeľuje kňazstvo.*

Take note of how *ktorý* matches the repeated noun in number and gender, and how its case is determined by its function in the new clause. Below are a couple instances where words other than *ktorý* are used in the subordinate clause.

Note: *Ktorý* can also be used to distinguish between nouns (ex. *Ktorú knihu ste chceli?*). In this case, it declines as an adjective by matching the case of the noun being distinguished in gender, number, and case.

Niekto, kto; Niečo, čo; and Všetko, čo

If *niekto* (someone) is the noun in the main clause, you will use *kto* in the correct case in the subordinate clause instead of *ktorý*.

Example:

Poznáte **niekoho, koho** by toto posolstvo zaujímalo?
Do you know someone who would be interested in our message?

Kto (in the correct case) should also be used when clarifying the word *každý*, when it is being used to mean each/every person (only when masculine or unspecified gender).

Example:

Pomáhajte **každému, koho** učíte, aby činil záväzky.
Help everyone (who) you teach make commitments.

In the case that *niečo* (something) is the noun in the main clause, you will use *čo* in the correct case in the subordinate clause instead of *ktorý*.

Example:

Tí, ktorí neplatia desiatok, si ponechávajú **niečo, čo** oprávnene patrí Bohu.
Those who don't pay tithing keep for themselves something that rightfully belongs to God.

Čo must also be used instead of *ktorý* whenever corresponding to the word *všetko*, meaning everything.

Example:

Urobte **všetko, čo** budete môcť . . .
Do everything that you can . . .

Ktorý with Prepositions.

Sentences cannot be ended with prepositions in Slovak. To avoid doing so, the ending preposition will be inserted before *ktorý*, when *ktorý* must be used. For example, instead of saying, "This is the book **which** we talked **about**," Slovaks would say, "This is the book **about which** we talked."

Example:

Toto je kniha, ***o ktorej*** sme hovorili.
This is the book about which we spoke.

Below are some more examples of sentences using *ktorý* with prepositions. Note how *ktorý* declines like an adjective.

Example Sentences	Explanation of Declination
Diskutujte o ľuďoch, **s ktorými** pracujete. *Talk about the people with whom you work.*	*Ktorými* declines to match the **masculine, plural** noun (*ľuďoch*) it replaces, in gender and number. It is cased according to the **seventh case** preposition *s*.
Misionári majú ísť v moci vysvätenia, **do ktorého** boli ustanovení. *Missionaries should go in the power of the calling into which they were set apart.*	*Ktorého* declines to match the **neuter, singular** noun (*vysvätenia*) it replaces. It is cased according to the **second case** preposition *do*.

Activities

Note: The activities in this section assume you have some knowledge of *cases* (lesson 36–39).

A. Translation

Underline both the word(s) *ktorý* modifies and the word to be replaced by *ktorý*. Check your answers.

1. There is no more compelling work than this nor any which brings greater satisfaction.
2. The Savior satisfied the demands of justice for those who repent of their sins.
3. Thus began the pattern of dispensations that makes up much of the history of the Old Testament.
4. The Fall also brought physical death, which is separation of the spirit from the body.
5. The reformers tried to reform teachings and practices that they believed had been changed or corrupted.
6. A dispensation is a period of time in which the Lord has at least one authorized servant on the earth.
7. Those who do not pay tithing rob God.
8. Justice is the unchanging law that brings consequences for actions.
9. "I saw a pillar of light exactly over my head . . . which descended gradually until it fell upon me."
10. Christ's Church is built on the foundation of apostles and prophets, who direct the Church by revelation.
11. All people have the gift of agency, which includes the freedom to accept or reject the gospel.
12. Repentance means to change our thoughts, beliefs, and behaviors that are not in harmony with God's will.

B. Fill in the Blank

Depending on the sentence, fill in *ktorý, niekto,* or *čo* to replace the object of the previous clause. Make sure to agree *ktorý* with the object of the previous clause in **number** and **gender** and be sure to place it in the right **case** based on its function in the new clause. Keep in mind that *ktorý, niekto,* and *čo* won't always be in the same case as the noun they modify. Check your answers.

1. Krst je zmluva, ___ (*which*) uzatvárame s Bohom.
2. Poznáte niekoho, ___ (*who*) by snáď mal záujem?
3. Premýšľajte o niečom, ___ (*that*) vám prináša šťastie.
4. Duch Svätý je posol od Boha, ___ (*that*) nás učí o pravde.
5. Boh dal plán ___ (*which*) nám umožní sa vrátiť k nemu.
6. Nájdete niečo, o ___ (*that*) ste ani nevedeli, že ste to hľadali.
7. Krst musí vykonať niekto, ___ (*who*) je držiteľom kňazskej právomoci.
8. "Nahradenie" znamená navrátenie niečoho, ___ (*that*) bolo odňaté alebo stratené.
9. Poznám niekoho, ___ (*that*) má tú istú starosť ako vy.
10. Obdržíme moc od niekoho, ___ (*who*) má právomoc od Boha.
11. John Wycliffe bol teológ a reformátor, ___ (*who*) preložil Bibliu do angličtiny.
12. Na konci každej návštevy nechajte záujemcovi niečo, ___ (*that*) by mohol čítať.
13. Doba, v ___ (*which*) žijeme, je biblickými prorokmi nazývaná posledné dni.
14. Rado je ten záujemca, ___ (*who*) učíme.
15. Stretli ste sa na našom cirkevnom zhromaždení s niečím, ___ (*that*) ste nerozumeli?
16. Milujte ľudí, s ___ (*whom*) pracujete a ___ (*who*) slúžite.
17. Veríme v dodržiavanie zákonov krajiny, v ___ (*which*) žijeme.
18. Pocítite osobnú zodpovednosť za posvätnú dôveru, ___ (*that*) vám dal Pán.

C. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answers against the ones listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. Hriech prináša pocity hanby a viny, ***že** ťažia naše životy.
   Sin brings feelings of shame and guilt that burdens our lives.
2. Doba, v ***ktoré** žijeme, je prorokmi nazývaná posledné dni.
   The time in which we live is called by prophets, the last days.
3. Milosť je moc od Krista, ***ktorý** nás v ťažkostiach posilňuje.
   Grace is power from Christ which strengthens us in trials.
4. Ľudia, ***kto** dodržiavajú slovo múdrosti, sú požehnaní.
   People who keep the Word of Wisdom are blessed.
5. Počul som niečo, ***čo** som nerozumel.
   I heard something that I didn't understand.
6. Kristus učil svoje evanjelium, ***ktorý** nás vedie k šťastiu.
   Christ taught His gospel, which leads us to happiness.
7. Nebeský Otec žehná tým,***ktoré** majú vieru v Jeho Syna.
   Heavenly Father blesses those who have faith in His Son.
8. Učili sme vás niečo, ***že** ste nerozumeli?
   Have we taught you something that you didn't understand?
9. Boh povoláva prorokov, ***komu** udeľuje kňazstvo.
   God calls prophets to whom He gives the priesthood.
10. Krst musí vykonať niekto, ***ktorý** má kňazskú právomoc.
    Baptism must be performed by someone who has the priesthood.

D. Translation

Translate the following sentences into Slovak. Some sentences may need to be reordered to accommodate an ending preposition. Check your answers.

1. The gospel was something that I didn't know about.
2. As you serve, speak with everyone you meet.
3. It will help you prepare to address (face) the problems of those you teach.
4. There is no other name under heaven by which a person can be saved.
5. What principle did you learn that helped you?
6. Will you obey the laws of the country in which you live?
7. They need to feeling the belonging that comes from knowing that they are children of God.
8. Every person that you teach must decide if they will accept the Book of Mormon.

E. *Kto/Čo Som Ja?*

Using the Book of Mormon or other volume of scripture as your frame of reference, think of a person or thing from that book that you'd like to describe for your companion to guess. Start off by saying, *"Premýšľam o niekom, kto . . . "* or *"Premýšľam o niečom, čo . . . "* and then go on to describe the prophet/character or object by using any descriptive vocabulary that you know.

Example:

Premýšľam o **niekom, kto** žil 600 rokov pred Kristom. Tento človek . . .
I am thinking about someone who lived 600 years before Christ. This person . . .

F. Asking for Referrals

Practice a typical contact with your companion. At the e nd of the contact, whether they have interest or not, ask them if they know anyone who'd be interested in our message. Be sure to use the correct grammatical structure explained in this lesson, *"Poznáte niekoho, kto by mal záujem?"* Set a goal to ask this at the end of contacts and lessons to see who else you can add to your teaching pool.

G. Declining Ktorý

For each of the six cases, choose a preposition commonly used with people (i.e., *bez, k, pre,* etc.). Pull a member aside and practice declining *ktorý* into the proper cases for each of the chosen prepositions. Start with a masculine or neuter word since they both follow the same patterns, then move to feminine. Try the same thing with *niečo, čo* and *niekto, kto* declining čo and *kto* into the six cases. Ask the native for any advice or correction with the sentences you've practiced.

H. *Preach My Gospel* Search

With your district, search through the English gospel lessons in *Preach My Gospel* looking for every instance of the words **who, which,** and **that**. Time yourselves and for 10 minutes write down the translations of each of those words, carefully selecting the correct translation of the word by its context whether its *ktorý, kto,* or *čo*. After the end of the 10 minutes, open up your Slovak *Preach My Gospel* and check your answers. Look for common mistakes made collectively, or with a specific missionary. If the activity is too easy for some or all of your missionaries, step up the level of difficulty by requiring the more advanced missionaries to put all the instances of *ktorý, kto,* and *čo* into the correct cases.

All, Everything, and Everyone

Examples

At the end of this life, **everyone** will die.	Na konci tohto života **všetci** zomrú.
Immortality is a free gift for **all** people.	Nesmrteľnosť je bezplatný dar pre **všetkých ľudí**.
All donations are considered sacred.	**Všetky** príspevky sú považované za sväté.
Do **everything** you can to make the message understandable.	Urobte **všetko** preto, aby bolo posolstvo zrozumiteľné.

Explanation

The words **all** and **everything** are expressed in the Slovak word *všetko. Všetko* must match the noun it modifies in case, gender, and number. The declinations of *všetko* in first case are listed below.

Nominative (First Case)	Masculine	Neuter	Feminine
Singular	*všetok*	*všetko*	*všetka*
Plural	*všetci (Animate)* *všetky (Inanimate)*	*všetky*	*všetky*

Všetko

The following sentences show the pattern that can be used to express the idea of all or everything.

Examples:

Lekcie vám nepovedia **všetko**, čo máte hovoriť. *The lessons will not tell you everything that you should say.*	**Všetko kňazstvo** pochádza od Boha. *All priesthood comes from God.*
Budete venovať **všetok váš čas** službe Pánovi. *You will spend all your time serving the Lord.*	**Všetka práca** v Cirkvi je dobrovoľná. *All work in the Church is voluntary.*

Všetko declines like an adjective with the exception of fourth case masculine and neuter forms which are identical to their nominative forms listed above.

Examples:

Výučba je stredobodom **všetkého**, čo robíte. *Teaching is central to everything you do.*
Boh je zdrojom **všetkej pravdy.** *God is the source of all truth.*
Boh vie **o všetkom,** čo robíme. *God knows about everything we do.*

Všetci and *Všetky*

Všetko becomes *Všetky* (all or everything) when matching a **plural** noun. When referring to a plural masculine animate noun like missionaries or people, *Všetko* becomes *Všetci* (all or everyone).

Examples:

Čiňte pokánie **všetky končiny** zeme. *Repent, all ye ends of the earth.*	**Všetci** sú deti Božie. *All (everyone) are children of God.*
Všetky povolania sú dôležité. *All callings are important.*	**Všetci** proroci od počiatku sveta svedčili o Kristovi. *All prophets, since the world began, have testified of Christ.*

Všetky and ***Všetci*** also decline like adjectives with the exception of fourth case, which is almost identical to the nomitive case listed above. Note, however, that fourth case masculine animate plural declines to become *všetkých* not *všetci*.

My pozývame **všetkých ľudí**, aby prišli ku Kristovi.
We invite all people to come unto Christ.

Večný život je najväčším darom **zo všetkých darov** Božích.
Eternal life is the greatest gift of all the gifts of God.

Pomáhame **všetkým**.
We help everyone.

Activities

A. Fill in the Blank

Fill in the blanks, focusing on using *všetci, všetko,* and *všetky* correctly. Check your answers.

1. Urobte ___, aby ste ľudí presvedčili, aby knihu čítali.
2. Keď ___ ostatná pomoc zlyhala, vždy sa môžeme modliť.
3. Boh prikazuje, aby ste ___ ľud vyučovali pravdu.
4. Kristus bol pokrstený, aby „naplnil ___ spravodlivosť.“
5. Abrahám platil desiatok zo ___ , čo vlastnil.
6. Činia pokánie zo ___ svojich hriechov.
7. Nie ___ ľudia sú však Boží proroci.
8. ___ proroci od počiatku sveta svedčili o Kristovi.
9. Budeme dodržiavať ___ prikázania.
10. ___ zmluvy musia byť spečatené Duchom Svätým.
11. Boh vie o ___ , čo robíme.
12. Boh je zdrojom ___ pravdy.

B. Translation

Translate the following sentences, focusing on using *všetci, všetko,* and *všetky* correctly. Check your answers.

1. The Savior invites all to come unto Him.
2. Everyone will be resurrected.
3. God created everything on the earth.
4. We’re all children of God.
5. All chapters in the Book of Mormon testify of Christ.
6. Do all you can to help others understand the Atonement.
7. A testimony doesn’t need to include everything you know.
8. All people will have the opportunity to hear the gospel.
9. All blessings come from God.
10. Christ fulfilled all righteousness.
11. They receive everything that Heavenly Father has.
12. God has a plan for all of His children.

C. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answers against the ones listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. Čo musíme urobiť, aby sme obdržali ***všetko** požehnania?
   What do we need to do to receive all the blessings?
2. Urobte ***všetky,** čo je vo vašich silách.
   Do everything in your power.
3. My ***všetky** sme misionármi.
   We're all missionaries.
4. Dodržiavajú ***všetci** záväzky?
   Are they keeping commitments?
5. Kristus vykonal ***všetké** to, čo ho Boh poslal vykonať.
   Christ did all that God sent Him to do.
6. ***Všetko** apoštoli svedčia o Kristovi.
   All of the Apostles testify of Christ.
7. ***Všetky** potrebujeme božskú milosť.
   We all need divine grace.
8. Veľa ľudí nebude veriť ***všetko**, čo ich budete učiť.
   A lot of people won't believe everything you teach them.
9. Prikazuje prorokom, aby ***všetci** ľud vyučovali pravdu.
   He commands prophets to teach all mankind the truth.
10. Čo vieme o ***všetký** našich záujemcoch?
    What do we know about all our investigators?

D. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key.

1. Kristus robí všetci, čo robí Otec.
2. Všetci sme deti Božie.
3. Sme vďační za všetko naše požehnania.
4. Všetci misionári sú povolaní prorokom.
5. Urobte všetkého, čo môžete, aby ste napravili problémy.
6. Všetci robíme chyby.
7. Našou povinnosťou je kázať evanjelium všetkým ľuďom.
8. Tieto možnosti sú spôsoby, ktorými môžete posilniť vieru.

E. Scripture Activity

Read Alma 30:39–45 and look for the word **all** in these verses. Determine whether **all** used in each verse should be *všetko, všetky,* or *všetci*. Check your answers with your companion, then discuss when you would use this scripture in your teaching.

F. Companion Activity

Explain to your companion what *všetko, všetky,* and *všetci* mean and the differences between them. After you have defined each word, give your companion two example sentences for each word. If you're struggling or if your definition isn't clear, ask your companion for help.

G. Learn with a Native Speaker

Write out your testimony in Slovak. In your testimony, include *všetko, všetky*, and *všetci* (e.g., *Všetky požehnania v mojom živote sú od Boha*). Practice giving your testimony to a native speaker and ask for feedback. Specifically ask them if you are using *všetko, všetky,* and *všetci* correctly.

H. Learn with Your District

As a district, think about passages in the scriptures that use the words **all, everything,** and **everyone**. Then look up five of the passages in your Slovak scriptures. If the passages contain *všetko, všetky,* or *všetci*, try to focus on how they are used. If the passages contain words other than *všetko, všetky,* or *všetci*, focus on substituting *všetko, všetky,* or *všetci* for those words.

Adverbs

Examples

Heavenly Father wants us to progress **spiritually**.	Nebeský Otec chce, aby sme napredovali **duchovne**.
Mortal life allows us to learn to make decisions **correctly**.	Smrteľný život nám dovolí, aby sme sa učili rozhodovať sa **správne**.
When we **sincerely** repent, we turn away from sin.	Keď sa **úprimne** kajáme, odvrátime sa od hriechu.
Faith helps us to heal **spiritually** and **physically**.	Viera nám pomáha liečiť sa **duchovne** aj **fyzicky**.

Explanation

An adverb tells how something is done. While adjectives describe nouns, adverbs are used to describe adjectives and verbs. For example, missionary work can be performed **kindly, seriously, quickly,** etc.

Examples:

Máme sa ***rýchlo*** kajať z našich hriechov.
We should quickly repent of our sins.

Note: In English these adverbs end in *–ly*. The Slovak equivalent of the *–ly* ending is *–ne, -o,* and *-y*. Most Slovak adverbs end in *–ne*. A few adverbs end in *-o* or *-y,* or another consonant followed by *-e.*

Formation of Adverbs Ending in *-ný*

1. Take an adjective that ends in *-ný.*		2. Drop the *-ý.*		3. Add the ending *-e.*
duchovný *(spiritual)*	→	duchovn	→	duchovn**e** *(spiritually)*
hrozný	→	hrozn	→	hrozne
jasný	→	jasn	→	jasne
pekný	→	pekn	→	pekne

Examples:

Boh nás **jasne** učí, ako dostať odpustenie.
God teaches us clearly how to receive forgiveness.

Musíme **verne** nasledovať Ježiša Krista.
We must faithfully follow Jesus Christ.

Máme **usilovne** študovať písma.
We should diligently study the scriptures.

Note: Adverbs do not change in form (i.e., case or gender). The words ***dobrý*** and ***zlý*** follow the ***-ný*** pattern.

Adjectives not Ending in -ný

For adjectives that don't end with ***-ný,*** we typically drop the final ***-ý*** or ***-y*** and add an ***-o***.

krátky (short)	→	krátko (shortly)
drahý (dear)	→	draho (dearly)
rýchly (fast, quick)	→	rýchlo (quickly)

Examples:

Ježiš Kristus zaviedol tento obrad **krátko** pred svojím uzmierením.
Jesus Christ introduced this ordinance shortly before His Atonement.

Tieto pocity lásky sú zakorenené **hlboko** v našich dušiach.
The feelings of love are rooted deeply within our souls.

Adjectives that end in ***-cký*** or ***-ský*** form adverbs simply by dropping the final *dĺžeň*.

sebecký (selfish)	→	sebecky (selfishly)
praktický (practical)	→	prakticky (practically)

Examples:

Satan **sebecky** túžil po Božej sláve.
*Stan **selfishly** sought after God's glory.*

Správaj sa **priateľsky** k svojim záujemcom.
Be friendly to your investigators.

Adverbs of Motion

Some adverbs are used to denote location. Adverbs of location sometimes change depending on whether there is motion or not, so there are sometimes two forms for each adverb. For example:

At rest: Hanka je vonku.	Hannah is outside.
Motion: Hanka ide von.	Hannah is going outside.
At rest: Michal je hore.	Michal is up(stairs).
Motion: Michal ide hore.	Michal is going up(stairs).
At rest: Zuzka bola dolu/dole.	Zuzka was down(stairs).
Motion: Zuzka išla dolu/dole.	Zuzka went down(stairs).
At rest: Robert je doma.	Robert is home.
Motion: Robert ide domov.	Robert is going home.
At rest: Monika je vo vnútri.	Monika is inside.
Motion: Monika ide dovnútra.	Monika went inside.

vonku	outside
von	outside (motion)
hore	up
hore	up (motion)
dole/dolu	down (interchangeable)
doma	at home
domov	to home (motion)
vo vnútri	inside
dovnútra	inside (motion)

Remember, adverbs do not decline. More common adverbs are listed below:

často (often)	málokedy (rarely)
stále (constantly)	občas (sometimes)
vždy (always)	veľmi (very)

Using Adverbs

Adverbs are used more often in Slovak than in English when describing feelings and appearances. For example, in English, the verb "to look, seem, appear" is followed by an adjective (ex. He looks happy/sad/tired). The Slovak equivalent *vyzerať* must be followed by an adverb. This same principle applies to other Slovak verbs including *mať sa* and *cítiť sa*.

Examples:

Vyzerá výborne.
It/He/She looks excellent. (Lit. "It/He/She looks excellently.")

Pomôžte kandidátovi, aby **sa cítil pohodlne**.
Help the candidate feel comfortable (Lit. "Help the candidate feel comfortably.")

Mám sa úžasne.
I'm wonderful. (Lit. "I'm having myself wonderfully.")

There are two common ways to express feeling in Slovak: ***Cítiť*** (to feel something) and ***cítiť sa*** (to feel someway). ***Cítiť*** is used to express **what** is felt (noun). ***Cítiť sa*** is used to express **how** one feels (adverb).

Cítiť

Budete ***cítiť*** Ducha, ako svedčí ľud'om prostredníctvom vás.	*You will feel the Spirit testify to people through you.*
Keď ***cítite*** Ducha pracujúceho prostredníctvom vás . . .	*When you feel the Spirit working through you . . .*
Diskutujte o tom, čo ***cítite*** ohľadom toho, ako prijali toto posolstvo.	*Talk about how (what) you feel (about how) they received the message.*

Cítiť sa

Ako ***sa cítite*** ohľadom toho, že smelo pomôžete ľud'om dosiahnuť tieto nároky?	*How do you feel about boldly helping people meet these standards?*
Ako ste s***a cítili***, keď ste sa modlili?	*How did you feel when you prayed?*
Cítim sa zle.	*I feel bad.*

Note: ***Cítiť*** can also refer to smell and touch.

Activities

A. Find the Adverb

On a separate sheet of paper, write down the adverbs in each of the following sentences. Check your answers.

1. ...nech si ju prosí od Boha, ktorý prosto a ochotne dáva...
2. Musíme verne nasledovať príklad nášho Spasiteľa.
3. Pokiaľ činíme pokánie, milosrdne nám odpustí naše hriechy.
4. Kristus nás môže uzdraviť fyzicky a duchovne.
5. Keď sme pokrstení, musíme vojsť úplne do vody.
6. Prečo by sme mali prijímať večeru Pána pravidelne?
7. Sme doslovne deti Božie.
8. Videl som stĺp svetla, presne nad svojou hlavou...
9. Boh nás bude individuálne súdiť.
10. Adam a Eva sa slobodne rozhodli jesť zo stromu.

B. Fill in the Blank

On a separate sheet of paper, write the adverb that should go in each blank, using the adjective given. Check your answers.

1. V modlitbe by sme mali hovoriť ____ (otvorený).
2. Keď sa ____ (pokorný) modlíme, cítime Ducha.
3. Boh nás bude ____ (hojný) požehnávať, keď platíme desiatky.
4. ___ (často) chodíte do kostola?
5. Mali by sme čítať písmo ____ (denný).
6. Musíte sa ____ (rýchly) pripraviť na druhý príchod.
7. ____(Tichý) sa modlili na lavičke.
8. Jozef ___ (odvážny) odolal pokušeniu.
9. Keď ste trpezlivý, odoláte tlaku a ste schopný čeliť nepriazni ____ (pokojný) a ____ (optimistický).
10. Máme pomáhať novým obráteným k tomu, aby sa cítili ____ (príjemný) medzi nami.

C. Translation

On a separate sheet of paper, translate each of the following sentences. Check your answers.

1. I like teaching a lot.
2. We take the sacrament weekly.
3. I know our investigators well.
4. I pray daily to have the Spirit.
5. We should courageously follow the guidance of the Spirit.
6. We quickly and simply taught about the gospel.
7. I want to briefly summarize this principle.
8. We should attend the temple regularly.
9. God blesses us temporally and spiritually.
10. I wait patiently for the promises of the Lord to be fulfilled.

D. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answers against the ones listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. ***Pevné** verím v Boha a Jeho evanjelium.
   We firmly believe in God and His gospel.
2. Modlitba nás posilňuje ***duchovný.**
   Prayer strengthens us spiritually.
3. ***Krátke** sa podelíme o dôležité posolstvo.
   We are briefly sharing an important message.
4. Kristus prišiel ***dole** na zem, aby mohol spasiť všetkých.
   Christ came down to earth to save everybody.
5. Máme ***pravidelné** prijímať večeru Pána.
   We should regularly partake of the sacrament.
6. Kristus ***osobno** cítil bolesti každého človeka.
   Christ personally felt the pains of every person.
7. Ako sa citíte ***do vnútra**?
   How are you feeling inside?
8. Nevezmeš meno Hospodina, svojho Boha, ***nadarme.**
   Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain.

E. Error Correction

Each sentence below is either correct or has one error. On a separate sheet of paper, write down the error in each sentence that has one. If the sentence has no error, write “Correct.” Check your answers after you finish.

1. Postíme sa mesačne za určitý dôvod.
2. To myslíte vážny?
3. Vždy sa máme vyhýbať pokušeniu.
4. Skutočne uskutočnil uzmierenie.
5. Musíme neustále rozvíjať Kristove vlastnosti.
6. Prostredníctvom Ducha môžeme byť duchovný posilňovaný.
7. Boh chce, aby sme sa vrátili doma k nemu.
8. Kristus išiel hore na vrch premenenia.
9. Môžeme sa stretnúť von alebo vo vnútri.
10. Vďaka vzkrieseniu nemusíme zomrieť fyzicko.

F. TALL VP Activity

Look up a topic you will be teaching today in *Missionary Vocabulary and Phrases*. Find the adverbs in the vocabulary list and create as many sentences as you can with them. If there are no adverbs listed, find adjectives and turn them into adverbs that you can create sentences with. Use your sentences to practice teaching your companion as if he or she were your investigator.

Example:

Principle: Agency and the Fall of Adam and Eve
Adjective: *nesprávny* Adverb: *nesprávne*
Sentence: Satan si nesprávne myslel, že zničil Boží plán.

G. Asking Questions

Remember that one of the roles of adverbs is to tell how something was done. Ask and answer the following questions with your companion. Make sure you use adverbs in all of your answers. After each answer, evaluate whether you could use that sentence in a teaching situation that you have coming up. If so, write it down and memorize it.

Example:

Ako by sme mali sľúbiť požehania?
Mali by sme presvedčivo sľúbiť požehnania.

1. Ako sa máme modliť?
2. Ako máme študovať písma?
3. Ako by sme mali pracovať?
4. Ako máme poďakovať Bohu?
5. Ako máme nasledovať prorokov?
6. Ako musíme poslúchať?
7. Ako máme činiť pokánie?
8. Ako by sme mali dôverovať Ježišovi Kristovi?

H. Sharing a Personal Experience

With a member, describe your experience in coming to know the truthfulness of the Book of Mormon. Focus on properly creating adverbs from adjectives, and make your account interesting and descriptive by using those adverbs. Ask the member to listen to your use of adverbs, and seek assistance if you have trouble. Ask the member to recount the same experience and pay attention to their use of adverbs and word order.

I. *Preach My Gospel* Activity

Choose a principle taught in chapter 3 of *Kážte Moje Evanjelium.* Take turns replacing the existing adverbs with adverbs that you come up with on your own. Seek to find other adverbs that can describe adjectives and verbs that are not already being described by an adverb.

Comparative and Superlative

Examples

Evenings are the **best** for us.	Večer je pre nás **najlepšie**.
Tomorrow would be **better**.	Zajtra by bolo **lepšie**.
How can goals help me be a **more effective** missionary?	Ako mi môžu ciele pomôcť, aby som bol **efektívnejším** misionárom?
The Spirit is the **most important** part of this work.	Duch je **najdôležitejšou** časťou tejto práce.

Explanation

In Slovak, adjectives can change to express comparison. In English this typically occurs by adding an **-er** ending to adjectives or by adding the words "more" or "most" (ex. strong g stronger, popular g more popular).

Formation of Adjectives of Comparison

1. Take any adjective	→	2. Drop the ending *-ý*	→	3. Add the ending *-ejší*
rýchly *(fast)*	→	rýchl-	→	rýchl**ejší** *(faster)*

Examples:

schopný	→	schopn-	→	schopn**ejší**
úžasný	→	úžasn-	→	úžasn**ejší**
efektívny	→	efektívn-	→	efektívn**ejší**

Note: Adjectives of comparison decline like soft adjectives (see lesson 10).

Ľudia, ktorí dodržiavajú slovo múdrosti, sú **vnímavejší** k duchovným pravdám.
People who keep the Word of Wisdom are more sensitive to spiritual truths.

Ako môže byť moja rodina **šťastnejšia** a **jednotnejšia**?
How can my family be happier and more united?

Naše srdcia a naše chovania sa stanú **podobnejšími** Kristovmu.
Our hearts and our behaviors become more similar to Christ's.

Note: The word *ako* (than) is used to express comparison between two different things.

Počúvanie je **dôležitejšie ako** rozprávanie.
Listening is more important than speaking.

Note on pronunciation of superlatives: As explained in chapter 1, the consonants *n, d, t,* and *l* are normally softened when followed by *e* or *i*, except in adjective endings (ex. pekné, krásni) where they are pronounced with hard sounds. However, in the superlative form, if *n, d, t,* and *l* come immediately before the ending *-ejší* they are pronounced soft.

Ex. The *n* in úžasnejší is soft.

Irregulars and Exceptions

Frequently, adjectives will change by adding *-ší* instead of *-ejší (ex. bohatý - bohatší)*. Additionally, several irregulars are found among the most common adjectives of comparison. Here is a list of some irregular adjectives of comparison.

Examples:

dobrý (good)	→	lepší (better)	zlý (bad)	→	horší (worse)
veľký (big)	→	väčší (bigger)	malý (small)	→	menší (smaller)
ľahký (easy)	→	ľahší (easier)	ťažký (hard)	→	ťažší (harder)
vysoký (tall)	→	vyšší (taller)	krátky (short)	→	kratší (shorter)
pekný (pretty)	→	krajší (prettier)	blízky (close)	→	bližší (closer)
sladký (sweet)	→	sladší (sweeter)	úzky (narrow)	→	užší (more narrow)

Note: All adjectives ending in *-ený, -oký, -iký* and many others in *-ký* follow similar patterns to those above. Note how they commonly drop the ending *-ký* (and occasionally a vowel) and add *-ší.*

Superlative

To express the superlative (ex. fastest, best, most effective etc.), simply add the prefix naj- to the adjective of comparison.

Examples:

Jedným z **najväčších** prejavov svetla Kristovho je svedomie.
One of the greatest manifestations of the Light of Christ is the conscience.

Pokrstenie a konfirmovanie ľudí, ktorých učíte, je vaším **najdôležitejším** cieľom.
Baptism and confirmation of the people you teach is your most important goal.

Adverbs of Comparison

To express adverbs of comparison, simply replace the ending *-(ej)ší* by *(ej)šie*.

Presnejšie povedané, je to znovuzriadenie plnosti evanjelia.
More exactly stated, it is a restoration of the fulness of the gospel.

Častejšie vyučujete z písiem zrozumiteľne a s presvedčením.
You teach understandably more often from the scriptures and with conviction.

Note: Remember that adverbs do not change in form (i.e., case or gender).

Activities

A. Create the Adjective of Comparison and the Superlative

From the given adjective, form both the adjective of comparison and its superlative. (ex. schopný → schopnejší → najschopnejší)

1. otvorený
2. dobrý
3. optimistický
4. zábavný
5. blízky
6. slušný
7. bezpečný
8. ľahký
9. bohatý
10. správny
11. rýchly
12. malý
13. ušľachtilý
14. krásny
15. jednoduchý
16. zlý

B. Fill in the Blank

On a separate sheet of paper, write the adjective (describes nouns) **or** adverb (describes verbs) of comparison that should go in each blank. The context of the sentence will help you tell whether an adverb or adjective should be formed. Mark whether each describing word is an adjective or adverb.

1. Neexistuje ____ (závažný) práca, ako je táto.
2. Rodina tvorí ____ (dôležitý) jednotku spoločnosti.
3. Rastieme v poznaní Krista a slúžime ____ (užitočný).
4. Môžem ____ (správny) uctievať Boha.
5. Vaša viera v Ježiša Krista rastie, keď sa ____ (dobrý) oboznamujete s Ním.
6. Cnosť vzniká vo vašich ____ (vnútorný) myšlienkach a túžbach.
7. Otvorí vašu myseľ a srdce ____ (veľký) svetlu a poznaniu.
8. Kniha Mormonova privádza ľudí ____ (blízky) k Bohu.
9. Dar Ducha Svätého je jedným s ____ (vzácny) darov nášho Nebeského Otca.
10. Zameriavajte sa na ____ (dôležitý) posolstvá a náuky počas výučby.

C. Superlative Practice

Using the given categories below, create a sentence with an appropriate superlative.

Example: Sväté miesto g Chrám je najsvätejšie miesto na zemi.

1. Mocná knihy
2. Milosrdná udalosť
3. Veľké prikázanie
4. Dobrí učitelia

D. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answers against the ones listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. Domov je ***najdobrejším** miestom na vyučovanie evanjelia.
   The home is the best place for the teaching of the gospel.
2. Ako ***najlepší** používať príručku Kážte Moje Evanjelium?
   How to best use the manual Preach My Gospel?
3. Rodiny môžu byť zdrojom našej ***najväčší** radosti.
   Families can be the source of our greatest happiness.
4. Ako môže byť moja rodina ***šťastnejší**?
   How can my family be happier?
5. Minulý rok bol tým *najťažší rokom, aký som vo svojom živote zažila.
   It was the hardest year that I'd ever experienced in my life.
6. Ako budete vyhľadávať Ducha *svedomitejšieho?
   How will you seek the Spirit more conscientiously?
7. Príde ***veľkejšie** svedectvo o živej skutočnosti Boha.
   There will come a greater testimony of the living reality of God.
8. Budete ***schopnejšie** lepšie reagovať na potreby.
   You will be more able to better react to needs.

E. Error Correction

Each sentence below is either correct or has one error. On a separate sheet of paper, write down the error in each sentence that has one. If the sentence has no error, write "Correct." Check your answers after you finish.

1. Čítajte a diskutujte o krátkejších pasážach.
2. Reformovať znamená niečo zmeniť k lepšiemu.
3. Dosiahnete vyššiu úroveň výkonu.
4. Nebeský Otec vie lepší čo potrebujete ako vy.
5. Stretnutia by nemali trvať dlhšie ako 45 minút.
6. Vaše porozumenie sa zvýši a budú (zásady) zrozumiteľnejšie.
7. Niektorí budú napredovať rýchlejšie alebo pomalejšie ako iní.
8. Robte všetko, čo môžete, aby ste vaše územie zanechali silnejšie, ako bolo predtým.

F. Asking Questions

Ask and answer the following questions in Slovak with your companion. Make sure you use adjectives and adverbs of comparison in all of your answers. After each answer, evaluate whether you could use that sentence in a teaching situation that you have coming up. If so, write it down and memorize it.

Example: What things do you do to study more effectively?

Q: Aké veci robíte, aby ste študovali efektívnejšie?

A: Aby som efektívenejšie študoval, modlím sa o Ducha predtým, ako začínam.

1. What verse in the scriptures is most meaningful to you?
2. What has helped you learn the language the fastest?
3. Who has had the greatest influence on your life?
4. Where is the most peaceful place you have been?
5. What is the most powerful lesson you've ever learned?
6. What is your most valuable possession?
7. What is the hardest trial you've ever experienced?
8. What is the most beautiful truth about the gospel to you?

G. Sharing a Personal Experience

With a member, discuss effective methods of studying and teaching from the scriptures. For example, what study habits are better than others? How must one study to prepare to teach? How do the most powerful/effective/simple teachers teach? How do they help those they teach come closer to Christ? Focus on properly creating adjectives and adverbs of comparison. Ask the member to listen to your use of adjectives and adverbs of comparison, and seek assistance if you have trouble. Ask the member to recount the same experience and pay attention to their use of adverbs and word order.

H. *Preach My Gospel* Activity

Read the principle "Kráľovstvá Slávy" from lesson 2 in *Kážte Moje Evanjelium*. Write down all of the comparative and superlative statements from this principle. Then write as many sentences using comparative and superlatives as you can that relate to this principle. Have your companion check them. Using your sentences, teach your companion this principle as if he or she were one of your investigators. Get feedback on how well you used comparatives and superlatives.

Review: Describing Objects, People, and Their Characteristics

This review will help you see how well you have learned the material in the previous section. It will also help you evaluate your ability to apply several different grammar principles you have learned in performing the following function:

Asking About and Describing Objects, People, and Their Characteristics

- Gender
- Possessive Pronouns
- All, Everything, & Everyone
- Pluralization
- Demonstrative Pronouns
- Adverbs
- Adjective-Noun Agreement
- *Ktorý* (Who, Which, That)
- Comparatives and Superlative

Activities

A. Error Correction

There are 12 errors in the paragraph below. On a separate sheet of paper, rewrite the paragraph, correcting all of the errors in it. Check your answers.

> Ježiš Kristus znovuzriadil svoj evanjelium prostredníctvom proroka v tieto neskorší dňoch. O evanjeliu sa dozvedáme z Knihy Mormonovej, ktorá môžeme čítať, nad ktorou môžeme premýšľať, a za ktorú sa môžeme modliť. Táto kniha je záverný kameň náš náboženstva. Keď sa modlíte úprimné, Boh vám pomocou Ducha Svätého povie, že je pravdivé. Keď poznáte, že je pravdivé, budete chcieť činiť pokánie a dať sa pokrstiť, aby ste obdržali odpustenie hriechov a dar Ducha Svätého. S toto darom budete vnímavejše k duchovnému pravdám.

B. Error Correction

There are 13 errors in the paragraph below. On a separate sheet of paper, rewrite the paragraph, correcting all of the errors in it. Check your answers.

> Kniha Mormonova je silný dôkazom Kristovej božskosti. Je najviac správnejšia spomedzi všetký kníh na zemi. Ako misionár musíte mať najskôr osobný svedectvo o tom, že Kniha Mormonova je pravdivá. Toto svedectvo potom vedie k hlbokému a trvalému viere. Buďte si istý, že Duch Svätý dosvedčí komukoľvek, kto číta a premýšľa o Knihe Mormonovej a pýta sa Boha s úprimným srdcom, skutočný úmyslom a vierou v Krista, či je pravdivé. Tento svedectvo Ducha Svätého má byť stredobodom vášmu záujmu pri výučbe. Aj keď nie všetci ľudia budú veriť všetko, čo ich budete učiť, mali by ste presvedčive a jasne svedčiť o jejej pravdivosti.

C. Error Correction

This activity will help you see where you need to improve. Each sentence has an error. Write down the corrected sentence or say it to your companion. Check your answers. If you get an answer wrong, the answers section will refer you to the principle you should study.

1. Stredom Boží plánu je Ježiš Kristus.
2. Všetke kapitoly v príručke vám pomôžu.
3. Prekonajú odpor, ktorý čelia.
4. Budú nadšenejšie pre misionársku prácu.
5. Počas života na zemi sme fyzickí oddelení od Boha.
6. Ako najlepší vieme . . .
7. Všetky práca v Cirkvi je dobrovoľná.
8. Je nanič bez druhe polovice.
9. Jedna hovorila k nemu, volajúci ho menom.
10. Prostredníctvom týmto obradov ľudia vchádzajú bránou.
11. Aby sme obdržali všetko požehnania uzmierenia . . .
12. Môžete im dať brožúrku, v ktorom sa hovorí o tom . . .
13. Boh poslal jeho Syna, aby nás spasil.
14. Rýchle činia pokánie z akéhokoľvek hriechu.
15. Pán očakáva z naše rúk . . .
16. Ona vyzerá vyborná.
17. Buďte presvedčivejší učiteľom.
18. Duch je Utešiteľom, ktorý Spasiteľ prisľúbil.
19. Hovoríme o dobrých ľuďoch, s ktorým pracujeme denne.
20. Vybudujte také vzťah, ktorý by im umožnil cítiť sa príjemne.
21. Každý človek na zemi je Božie dieťaťom.
22. Veľa z týmito ľudí hľadá zmysel života.
23. Máte učiť tak, aby ostatní rozumeli vášom posolstvu.
24. My pozývame všetci, aby prišli ku Kristovi.
25. Neexistuje závažnejší práca.
26. Vyniesli toto evanjelium do celému sveta.
27. Po všetkých, čo bolo povedané . . .
28. Pomôžte tým, ktorý učíte.
29. Hovorila otvorená a úprimná s milujúcim Otcom v nebi.
30. Vyučujte všetky náuky v tieto lekciách.

D. Fill in the Blank

On a separate sheet of paper, write the correct form of the word listed in parentheses that should go in each blank. Check your answers.

1. ____ (všetko) pravda.
2. Táto kniha, o ____ (ktorý) sme hovorili . . .
3. Pomáhali sme ____ (náš) Otcovi v ____ (jeho) práci.
4. Tohto ____ (najsprávnejší) proroka
5. K ____ (toto) obchodu
6. V ____ (tie) mestách
7. Tieto ____ (požehnanie) sú ____ (večný).
8. Jozef ___ (odvážny) odolal pokušeniu.
9. Žijúci prorok dnes vedie ____ (toto) Cirkev.
10. Zomrel za ____ (všetci).
11. Vďaka ____ (všetký) veciam
12. Povolal ____ (ďalší) proroka.
13. Nevedel, ku ____ (ktorý) cirkvi sa má pridať.
14. Ideme ____ (dole). Idete ____ (hore)?
15. Vedenie od ____ (moji) vedúcich
16. S ____ (dôležitý) posolstvom
17. Náuky z ____ (misionársky) lekcií.
18. Lekcie nemajú byť vyučované ____ (mechanický).
19. Nad ____ (tieto) stoličkami.
20. Pre ____ (tieto) ____ (šťastný) ženy
21. Kvôli ____ (najúžasnejší) chlapovi.
22. Od ____ (tvoj) matky
23. Z ____ (toto) dôvodu
24. Ten prorok, o ____ (ktorý) hovorí Kniha Mormonova.
25. ____ (Všetko) kňazstvo pochádza od Boha.
26. ____ (Všetky) ____(milosť) sú od Boha.
27. Odložia ____ (prirodzený) človeka
28. V ____ (najväčší) budovách
29. Dodržiavali prikázania ____ (verný).
30. Právomoc, ____ (ktorý) vykonávajú obrady.
31. Poznáme ____ (ich) potreby.
32. Ako ____ (splnomocnený) zástupca Ježiša Krista . . .
33. S ____ (všetky) ____ (váš) otázkami
34. Do ____ (ktorý) mesta pôjdeme?
35. Dal nám ____ (ťažký) veci.
36. Odpovie Boh na ____ (môj) modlitby?
37. Nerozumiem ____ (tieto) ____ (ťažký) veciam.
38. Chodí ____ (často) na ____ (ktorý) z ____ (tieto) bohoslužieb?
39. O ____ (ktorý) knihách ste hovorili?
40. Od ____ (toto) ____ (menší) domu

E. Translation

On a separate sheet of paper, translate the words in parentheses into Slovak. Check your answers. Say each of the sentences out loud and get feedback from a native speaker on your pronunciation. This exercise assumes that you can do present tense conjugations.

1. Plán (*short*) lekcie.
2. V (*this*) videní . . .
3. Joseph Smith znovuzriadil (*his*) cirkev.
4. Je (*it*) od (*these*) ľudí.
5. (*All*) ľudia sú Božie deti.
6. Bola (*taller*) ako ja.
7. Učil ma o (*your* [*plural formal*]) posolstve.
8. Je to (*most important*) pravda.
9. *(Who are those scriptures for?)*
10. Máte (*strong*) túžbu.
11. Modlíme sa (*sincerely*) (*to our loving*) Nebeskému Otcovi.
12. Budete pracovať s (*active*) členmi.
13. (*Which book are you talking about?*)
14. (*Everyone is*) dôležití pre Boha.
15. Kázali evanjelium (*whole*) svetu.
16. Naše svedectvá pomáhajú (*other*) ľuďom.
17. Evanjelium hovorí o (*it*), čo musíme robiť.
18. Behal (*more quickly*).
19. (*Which building are you in?*)
20. (*Who are you speaking with?*)
21. Toto je (*harder*), ako som očakával.
22. Je to cirkev, (*that*) Joseph Smith znovuzriadil.
23. Pomáhali sme (*our*) susedovi včera.
24. Tam stála, (*bearing*) jej svedectvo o evanjeliu.
25. Viem, že (*everything*), čo sme učili, je pravdivé.
26. Trpel za (*our*) hriechy.
27. Ako môže toto posolstvo pomáhať (*your*) susedom?
28. Poznáte (*anybody*), (*who*) by toto posolstvo zaujímalo?
29. Cnosť vzniká vo vašich (*innermost*) myšlienkach a túžbach.
30. Pomodlil sa s (*really good*) otázkou.

F. Companion Activities

1. Describe the Book of Mormon to your companion as if he or she were a new investigator. Describe the different sections and choose a particular person from the Book of Mormon and describe him or her as well. Use scriptures in your descriptions. Focus on using the principles of this review correctly and get feedback on how well you used these principles.
2. Choose a principle from one of the missionary lessons and write down at least 20 nouns from that lesson. Then write as many adjectives as you can that could describe each noun (for example, for *pocity* from the principle "Modlite sa, aby ste poznali pravdu prostredníctvom Ducha Svätého," you could use the adjectives *mocný, jemný, tichý*, etc.). Practice using these nouns and adjectives in combination with prepositions to teach your companion the principle you chose as if he or she were one of your investigators. Focus on correctly declining each adjective according to its gender, case, and number.
3. Take turns with your companion translating a preposition, demonstrative pronoun, adjective, and noun from English into Slovak. For example you might translate phrases like "from that sincere prophet" or "about these important books." Focus on correctly declining the kinds of words covered in this review into their appropriate case, gender, and number.

G. Scripture Activities

1. Read 2 Nephi 2:27. Write down each noun and then every word that agrees with that noun. Specify each word's gender, case, and number. Check your answers. Then have your companion play the role of one of your investigators and teach this scripture to your companion, describing God, Satan, and men. Describe why agency is preserved or taken away according to whom we choose to follow. Get feedback on how well you used agreement.
2. Read 2 Nephi 33:10–11 and write down where demonstratives are used. Then have your companion play the role of an investigator who wonders why the Book of Mormon is important. Teach this scripture, focusing on helping the investigator resolve his or her concern by describing the role of the Book of Mormon. Use demonstratives correctly and get feedback.

H. Writing Activities

1. Imagine that you are talking with one of the members in the ward or branch in which you serve about a family they know who is interested in the gospel. Write the questions you would ask in order to find out what each member of the family is like, and write possible answers they could give. Pay special attention to agreement between nouns and adjectives and adverbs. Have your companion or a native speaker check your questions and answers. Then set a goal to ask a member for referrals and use your questions to find out about the people they describe.
2. In the *Missionary Vocabulary and Phrases* book, go to a principle that you will soon be teaching that relies on your ability to describe someone or something (such as "The Great Apostasy" or "The Spirit World"). Write down the phrases that use adjectives and other principles in this review. Write different variations on the sentences adapting them to your upcoming teaching situation.

I. Reading Activity

1. Read the first section (before the * * * * * * *) of *Svedectvo proroka Josepha Smitha* in the Book of Mormon. Then describe to your companion in your own words, using as much detail as you can, what the angel Moroni looked like and what the objects hidden in the Hill Cumorah looked like. Get feedback from your companion about how well you used the principles from this review in your descriptions.
2. Find a section in *Kážte Moje Evanjelium* that uses a lot of adjectives, adverbs, comparisons, and possessives to describe objects, people, and motion (some examples are "Pokánie" on page 62 and "Cnosť" on pages 118–119). Read through the section and identify why each word is declined its given form. Then restate in your own words to your companion what you read. Focus on using the principles in this review correctly.

Asking About and Describing Actions and Events

Purpose

This section will help you talk about what is happening or what we need to do; for example, what God does for us, or what we do to keep the Sabbath day holy. The grammar principles in this section are targeted at helping you perform this function. Below are examples of the types of things you will be able to express with the grammar in this section.

- Will you **read** the scriptures tonight? (Verbs, Aspect, and Future)
- We can **live** with our Heavenly Father again. (Irregular Verbs)
- How is your **reading** going? (Verbal Nouns, Adjectives, and Adverbs)
- We **left** to go visit another investigator. (Verbs of Motion and Verb Prefixes)
- Joseph Smith **prayed** to know what to do. (Reflexive Pronouns & Articles)

Application

Below is a list of doctrinal points that these grammar principles will help you teach, as well as some common missionary tasks that they will help you perform. This list is not comprehensive; it is meant to help you think about how you can use the grammar in real situations. In parentheses next to each point are some sample questions that you can ask yourself to help you think about how to apply the grammar.

Doctrines from the Lessons

- Heavenly Father Reveals His Gospel in Every Dispensation (What is the pattern of gospel dispensations? What does God do to reveal the gospel to His children?)
- Pray to Know the Truth through the Holy Ghost (What do we do to learn truth?)
- Our Life on Earth (What are we supposed to do during this life?)
- Atonement (What does the Atonement do for us? What do we do to apply it in our lives?)
- Faith in Jesus Christ (How do we show our faith? How do we exercise it?)
- Repentance (What do we do to repent?)
- Baptism (What happens during baptism?)
- Gift of the Holy Ghost (What does the Holy Ghost do for us?)
- Endure to the End (What do we do to endure to the end?)
- Lesson 4: The Commandments (What actions do the commandments require of us?)
- Teaching and Learning in the Church (What does the Church do for us?)

Tasks from the *Missionary Vocabulary and Phrases* Book

- Explain Priesthood Ordinances (What do we do with the priesthood?)
- Extend Commitment Invitations (What does my invitation really ask them to do? How will I know if they fulfilled the commitment?)
- Help People Resolve Their Concerns (What is keeping them from gaining a testimony?)
- Obtain Referrals (What can members do to prepare their friends?)
- Perform Priesthood Ordinances (What things do I say and do during an ordinance?)
- Plan Daily and Weekly Activities (What are you doing this week?)
- Talk with Everyone (What do they do for work/fun?)
- Teach Others How to Pray (What do we do when we pray?)
- Use the Scriptures (How can someone apply the scripture in his or her life?)

Verbs

Examples

The Atonement makes it possible for us to return to God.	Uzmierenie nám umožňuje, aby sme sa vrátili k Bohu.
We must show that we accept him.	Musíme ukázať to, že ho prijímame.
Death will not change our personality.	Smrť nezmení našu osobnosť.
Through baptism we promise to always remember Him.	Krstom sľubujeme, že budeme vždy na neho pamätať.

Explanation

A **verb** is a word that conveys action or a state of being. In Slovak, all verbs end in *-ť*. Most Slovak verbs end in *-ať, -iť, -núť, -ieť, -ovať,* or *-stať,* but verbs are not limited to these endings. Verbs in the form of ending with *-ť* are said to be in **infinitive form**, which means that they have not been conjugated to show who is performing the action.

Here are some examples of verbs in infinitive form:

English	→	Slovak
to have	→	m***ať***
to speak	→	hovor***iť***
to forget	→	zabud***núť***
to want	→	chc***ieť***
to work	→	prac***ovať***
to stay	→	zo***stať***

Verb Stems: To conjugate Slovak verbs you must have two parts, a stem and an ending. Many Slovak verb stems are formed simply by dropping the ending (*-ať, -iť, -núť, -ieť, -ovať, -stať,* etc.) from the verb infinitive. However, a significant number of very common verbs do not form their stem in this way. This lesson deals mostly with verbs that have a predictable stem, and the next lesson will discuss verbs with less predictable stems. Here is a chart showing the "regular" formation of verb stems from infinitives:

Infinitive	→	Stem
m***ať***	→	m-
hovor***iť***	→	hovor-
zabud***núť***	→	zabud-
chc***ieť***	→	chc-
prac***ovať***	→	prac-
zo***stať***	→	zo-

Verb Endings: To conjugate a verb, take the verb stem and add the correct ending that corresponds with the "person" who is doing the action of the verb. Each "person" uses a different ending. Since each person uses a different ending, the ending of the verb automatically tells you which person is doing the action. For example, if a conjugated verb ends in *-m*, the only possibility is that it has been conjugated for first person singular (*ja*). There are many different sets of endings in Slovak, but the chart below shows the common elements of the endings of all Slovak verbs (the only exception being the verb *byť*). Note: For a reminder of how these charts are organized and displayed, see chapter 3.

-m	-me
-š	-te
-Ø	-???

Note: The first and second persons (*ja, ty, my,* and *vy*) are highly predictable, as shown in the table. Third person singular (*on, ona,* and *ono*) has what is called the "zero ending" meaning that there is no final consonant. It ends with whatever vowel preceded the *-m* and *-š* in the *ja* and *ty* conjugations. The third person plural is unpredictable and varies from verb to verb.

Each verb has a corresponding set of endings that it always uses to conjugate. You can predict the endings that some verbs will use simply by looking at the infinitive of the verb. We could say these verbs follow "regular" conjugations. For example, the verb *mať* (to have) uses the *-ám-ajú* endings from below, the *a* in the infinitive corresponding to the *a* in the verb endings in a predictable way. **However, a significant number of very common verbs use a different ending pattern than you may predict by looking at the infinitive.** For example, the common verb *musieť* (to have to) uses the *-ím-ia* endings while the also common verb *chcieť* (to want) uses the *-em-ú* endings, even though their infinitive forms have the same ending (*-ieť*). This may seem complicated and difficult to master, but conjugation is full of patterns and can be summarized simply as follows:

1. Know the stem of the verb. "Regular" stems are those formed just by dropping the end of the infinitive.
2. Know which ending the verb uses. "Regular" conjugations use the set of endings that corresponds with the infinitive ending of the verb. Know which verbs use endings that do not directly correspond with their infinitive ending.
3. The following are some of the most common sets of endings that verbs follow, with an explanation of which groups of verbs they are typically used to conjugate.

-ám-ajú	
-ám	-áme
-áš	-áte
-á	-ajú
Regularly conjugates with *-ať* verbs	

-ím-ia	
-ím	-íme
-íš	-íte
-í	-ia
Regularly conjugates with *-iť* verbs and with many *-ieť* verbs	

-nem-nú	
-nem	-neme
-neš	-nete
-ne	-nú
Regularly conjugates with *-núť* verbs	

-em-ú	
-em	-eme
-eš	-ete
-e	-ú
Very common pattern. Conjugates with many different infinitive types	

-ujem-ujú	
-ujem	-ujeme
-uješ	-ujete
-uje	-ujú
Regularly conjugates with *-ovať* verbs	

-stanem-stanú	
-stanem	-staneme
-staneš	-stanete
-stane	-stanú
Regularly conjugates with *-stať* verbs	

Examples:

Mať (to have) *(ned.)*	
Mám	Máme
Máš	Máte
Má	Majú

Hovoriť (to speak) *(ned.)*	
Hovorím	Hovoríme
Hovoríš	Hovoríte
Hovorí	Hovoria

Zabudnúť (to forget) *(dok.)*	
Zabudnem	Zabudneme
Zabudneš	Zabudnete
Zabudne	Zabudnú

Chcieť (to want) *(ned.)*	
Chcem	Chceme
Chceš	Chcete
Chce	Chcú

Pracovať (to work) *(ned.)*	
Pracujem	Pracujeme
Pracuješ	Pracujete
Pracuje	Pracujú

Zostať (to stay) *(dok.)*	
Zostanem	Zostaneme
Zostaneš	Zostanete
Zostane	Zostanú

Note: Some Slovak verbs are perfective, which means that when conjugated normally they automatically take the future tense. So, for example, **zabudnem** means *I will forget*. See lesson 19 for more information about perfective and imperfective verbs.

Slovak Verbs

Verbs are often used in different ways than commonly used in English. As you learn new verbs, pay attention to how they are used. They are often used in conjunction with a preposition or require the noun that follows them to be declined into a particular case. Here are some examples of expressions commonly used in Slovak that are significantly different than their direct English translation:

Examples:

Bolí ma hlava. *My head hurts. (lit. My head hurts me.)*	(*bolieť* + fourth case)
Cítim sa úžasne. *I feel wonderful. (lit. I feel wonderfully.)*	(*Cítim sa* + adverb)

Cases

Verbs are not cased. They do, however, determine how the noun they act upon is cased. Most verbs put the noun they act upon into fourth case. Some, however, decline the noun they act upon into second, third, and seventh cases. It's important to learn each verb's associated case and how they are used in a sentence. See the lessons 36–39 on cases for more examples.

Čo je mojou zodpovednosťou, keď **pomáham ostatným**, aby sa obrátili? *What is my responsibility as I **help others** become converted?*	(*Pomáhať* + third case)
Musíme **sa** prostredníctvom poslušnosti **stať čistými**. *We must **become clean** through obedience.*	(*Stať sa* + seventh case)

Modal Verbs

These six verbs are modal verbs. They are some of the most frequently used verbs in the Slovak language. They are used to add a sense of certainty, necessity, desirability, or possibility to the main verb. The main verb comes after the modal verb and remains in its infinitive (non-conjugated) form.

Verb	Example (imp./perf.)	Translation
Potrebovať (need)	Potrebujem zavolať Pavlovi.	*I need to call Pavol.*
Musieť (must)	Musím zavolať Pavlovi.	*I must call Pavol.*
Mať (should)	Mám zavolať Pavlovi.	*I should call Pavol.*
Smieť (allowed)	Smiem zavolať Pavlovi.	*I may (am allowed to) call Pavol.*
Chcieť (want to)	Chcem zavolať Pavlovi.	*I want to call Pavol.*
Môcť (can)	Môžem zavolať Pavlovi.	*I can (am able to) call Pavol.*

Vediet' and Poznat'

The English verb "to know" is expressed by two different Slovak verbs: *vedieť* and *poznať*. *Vedieť* means to know a fact (some piece of information) or to know how. It has an irregular stem (*v-*) and uses a very uncommon set of endings (*viem, vieš, vie, vieme, viete,* and *vedia*). *Poznať* means "to be familiar with" and follows a "regular" *-ať* conjugation both in stem and endings.

Verb	Example (imp./perf.)	Translation
Vedieť (to know something or to know how)	Viem, že Boh žije. Viem, ako sa modliť.	I know that God lives. I know how to pray.
Poznať (to be familiar with)	Poznáte Petra? Poznáte jeho reštauráciu?	Do you know Peter? Do you know (are you familiar with) his restaurant?

Activities

A. Conjugation

Conjugate the following verbs according to the pronouns in the parentheses. Look up the definitions of the verbs as well and memorize them. Check your answers.

1. kračať (ja)
2. modliť sa (vy)
3. stretnúť sa (my)
4. zjaviť (on)
5. potrebovať (oni)
6. prestať (ty)
7. svedčiť (ona)
8. spievať (vy)
9. odmietnuť (oni)
10. dostať (ty)
11. prečítať (my)
12. nasledovať (ty)
13. stať sa (on)
14. poznať (ja)
15. zabudnúť (on)

B. Fill in the Blank

On a separate sheet of paper, write the conjugated verb in each blank.

1. ____ (Potrebovať, oni) cítiť spolupatričnosť.
2. Často ho ____ (nazývať, my) aj Duch.
3. Proroci a apoštoli ____ (hovoriť, oni).
4. V duchovnom svete ____ (zostať, my) až do vzkriesenia.
5. ____ (Musieť, ja) sa o evanjelium ____ (deliť) s ostatnými.
6. ____ (Čítať, ona) z Knihy Mormonovej a ostatých písiem.
7. Čo ____ (mať, ja) študovať a vyučovať?
8. ____ (Chcieť, my) ich ____ (dodržiavať).
9. ____ (Získať, oni) odpustenie svojich hriechov a ____ (dostať, oni) dar Ducha Svätého.
10. ____ (Prijímať, vy) a ____ (uplatňovať, vy) jeho uzmierenie.

C. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answers against the ones listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. Aké ***mať** otázky pre nás?
   What questions do you have for us?
2. ***Potrebovaš** sa modliť o poznanie.
   You need to pray for knowledge.
3. ***Dostaš** odpovede na vaše modlitby?
   Are you receiving answers to your prayers?
4. ***Viete** túto pieseň?
   Do you know this song?
5. ***Študovam** Knihu Mormonovu.
   I am studying the Book of Mormon.
6. Proroci nás ***učíme** prikázania.
   The prophets teach us the commandments.
7. Som ***hovorím** s nimi o Ježišovi Kristovi.
   I am speaking with them about Jesus Christ.
8. Sme sa ***môžeme** vrátiť do Božej prítomnosti.
   We can return to God's presence.
9. ***Potrebuja** sa dať pokrstiť.
   She needs to be baptized.
10. Chcem ***nasledujem** Ježiša Krista.
    I want to follow Jesus Christ.
11. Kde sa ***stretnujeme**?
    Where are we meeting?
12. Poznám, ako hrať na ***klavír**.
    I know how to play the piano.

D. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key.

1. Ja hovoriť s tebou o Kristovi.
2. Poznáme pravdu prostredníctvom modlitby.
3. Kniha Mormonova svedčí o Bohu.
4. Proroci nás učia Božiu vôľu.
5. Nasledováme príklad Ježiša Krista.
6. Viem, že Boh vás miluje.
7. Potrebujeme sa modlime často.
8. Prestáte fajčiť?
9. Oni obdržaju obrady krstu a konfirmácie.
10. Evanjelium Ježiša Krista požehnáva rodiny.

E. Language Study Plan Activities

1. Listen carefully to native speakers. Especially note when they use verbs. Look up those verbs and learn how to use them correctly. Use them in your contacting and teaching.
2. Read out loud in Slovak, paying special attention to verbs used in the text. Ask native speakers to listen to your pronunciation and help you understand the meaning of the verbs and their conjugations.
3. Find verbs in your Slovak materials that you can use in teaching specific lessons.

F. Companion Activity

With your companion, make a list of 10 verbs that you would like to use when teaching the first lesson. Choose verbs that aren't irregular and are normally followed by a noun declined into the fourth case. Work together to find the translations for each of the verbs and then work on the proper conjugations with your companion. Make these verbs a part of a lesson plan that you will teach today or tomorrow.

G. Scripture Activity

Read 2 Nefi 25:26 with your companion. This verse contains a few different verbs. Discuss the meaning of the verse and the verbs' conjugations with your companion. Read the verse again, but change the conjugations as if Nephi was doing the actions (e.g., Nephi speaks or he writes). Repeat the activity for other pronouns as well.

H. Drilling Activity

Have your companion open the vocabulary section at the back of the *TALL* book. Then have your companion choose 15 common verbs. Have him or her give you the definition of the verbs in English with a subject pronoun (e.g., I need or you teach). Practice conjugating the verb with the subject pronoun as quickly as possible. Ask for feedback if you have problems. Practicing conjugating verbs with your companion will help you speak faster when you are talking with natives.

I. *Preach My Gospel* Activity

In *Kážte Moje Evanjelium* read the section "Pokánie" on page 62. Identify all of the verbs in this section with your companion and identify the subject pronouns associated with them. Write down any verbs that you are unfamiliar with and memorize them and their conjugations. Plan a lesson for an investigator and make sure to include the verbs you've found.

J. Learn with A Native

Look at a picture from *Preach My Gospel* or other gospel related materials with a native speaker (you may pick the picture below). Describe what is taking place in the picture. Focus on your conjugation of present tense verbs as you explain what is taking place. You can also ask what the native speaker thinks is taking place.

K. Learn with Your District

As a district, discuss how you can see the hand of the Lord in your lives and work right now. Focus on using verbs in the present tense to do this. Consider writing some of the verbs down on the board for less experienced missionaries and discussing some of the more complex verbs and their conjugations.

Irregular Verbs

Examples

Christ **took upon** Him our sins.	Ježiš Kristus **vzal** na seba naše hriechy.
I want to follow Christ's teachings.	**Chcem** nasledovať Kristove učenia.
We **can** return to God.	**Môžeme** sa vrátiť k Bohu.
When we die, **we go** to the spirit world.	Keď zomrieme, **pôjdeme** do duchovného sveta.

Explanation

This lesson continues from lesson 17 by going into more depth on "irregularities" in verb conjugations. As explained in the previous chapter, many verbs in Slovak have a regular stem and follow predictable conjugation patterns *-ať → -ám-ajú, -iť → -ím-ia, -ovať → -ujem-ujú,* etc. "Irregular" verbs in Slovak occur because of changes in the stem when the verb is conjugated AND/OR because the verb uses an unpredictable set of endings. This chapter focuses on irregular stems. The majority of verbs with irregular stems follow the *-em-ú* conjugation (*-em, -eš, -e, -eme, -ete, -ú*). The following are examples of a few common irregular-stem verbs and their conjugations.

Ísť and Verbs Like *Ísť*

-ísť is a common irregular verb ending. In all verbs ending in *-ísť,* the stem changes by dropping the *-sť* and adding a *-d*. The *í* may also be shortened to *i*, as in the verb **ísť** (*to go*). These verbs are conjugated using the *-em-ú* endings listed above. Notice how the stem changes between the infinitive and conjugated forms. See lesson 21 on verbs of motion and verb prefixes for more information about these verbs of motion.

ísť (to go) *(ned.)*	
idem	ideme
ideš	idete
ide	idú
L-form: (i)šie**l**	

nájsť (to find) *(dok.)*	
nájdem	nájdeme
nájdeš	nájdete
nájde	nájdu
našie**l**	

prísť (to come) *(dok.)*	
prídem	prídeme
prídeš	prídete
príde	prídu
prišie**l**	

prejsť (to go through, cross) *(dok.)*	
prejdem	prejdeme
prejdeš	prejdete
prejde	prejdú
prešie**l**	

odísť (to leave) *(dok.)*	
odídem	odídeme
odídeš	odídete
odíde	odídu
odišie**l**	

Note: The L-forms of the above verbs will drop the *ie* whenever gender or number is applied (i.e., *išie**l*** **(he went)** → *išla* **(she went)**; *našie**l*** **(he found)** → *našli* **(they found)**). In this lesson, underlined letters in the L-form will drop.

Note: for *ísť* to assume the future tense its stem changes to *pôjd-*, with the endings remaining the same. For example, *pôjdem* **(I'll go)**, *pôjdeš* **(you'll go)**, etc.

Other Irregular Verbs

Other irregular-stem verbs can end in *-ať, -iať, -ieť, -iť, -uť, -yť, -cť, -sť,* and *-zť.* Notice how these irregular-stem verbs follow the *-em-ú* pattern.

začať (to begin, per.) *(dok.)*		**vziať** (to take, per.) *(dok.)*		**chcieť** (to want) *(ned.)*		**žiť** (to live) *(ned.)*	
začnem	začneme	**vezm**em	vezmeme	**chc**em	chceme	**žij**em	žijeme
začneš	začnete	vezmeš	vezmete	chceš	chcete	žiješ	žijete
začne	začnú	vezme	vezmú	chce	chcú	žije	žijú
L-form: začal		vzal		chcel		žil	

počuť (to listen) *(ned.)*		**umyť** (to wash) *(dok.)*		**môcť** (to be able to) *(ned.)*		**písať** (to write) *(ned.)*	
počujem	počujeme	**umyj**em	umyjeme	**môž**em	môžeme	**píš**em	píšeme
počuješ	počujete	umyješ	umyjete	môžeš	môžete	píšeš	píšete
počuje	počujú	umyje	umyjú	môže	môžu	píše	píšu
počul		umyl		mohol		písal	

Note: Often prefixes are used to give additional meaning to verbs. For example, *vyrásť* means **to grow up**, *prežiť* means **to live through (survive)** and *pomôcť* (per.) means **to help**. See lesson 21, "Verbs of Motion and Verb Prefixes," for more information.

Not all irregular-stem verbs use the *-em-ú* endings. A significant number use the *-iem-ú* pattern, like the verb **niesť** *(to carry)*.

niesť (to carry) *(ned.)*	
nesiem	nesieme
nesieš	nesiete
nesie	nesú
niesol	

Other examples of these verbs include **rásť** (*to grow*), **klásť** (*to lay*), **viesť** (*to lead*), and many others.

Here are several irregular-stem verbs that use either *-em-ú* or *-iem-ú* endings, listed with their first person singular (*ja*) conjugation with the stem underlined:

brať (to take) *(ned.)*	→	**ber**iem	**priať** (to wish) *(ned.)*	→	**praj**em	**kryť** (to cover) *(ned.)*	→	**kryj**em
pozvať (to invite) *(dok.)*	→	**pozv**em	**smiať sa** (to laugh) *(ned.)*	→	**smej**em sa	**pomôcť** (to help) *(dok.)*	→	**pomôž**em
prezliecť sa (to change clothes) *(dok.)*	→	**prezleč**iem sa	**chvieť sa** (to tremble) *(ned.)*	→	**chvej**em sa	**piecť** (to bake) *(ned.)*	→	**peč**iem
kázať (to preach) *(ned.)*	→	**káž**em	**piť** (to drink) *(ned.)*	→	**pij**em	**viesť** (to lead) *(ned.)*	→	**ved**iem
plakať (to cry) *(ned.)*	→	**plač**em	**použiť** (to use) *(dok.)*	→	**použij**em	**klásť** (to lay) *(ned.)*	→	**klad**iem
poslať (to send) *(dok.)*	→	**pošl**em	**obuť** (to put on shoes) *(dok.)*	→	**obuj**em	**liezť** (to climb) *(ned.)*	→	**lez**iem

Irregular Oni Form with Stem Changes

These verbs have an irregular *oni* (third person plural) form in addition to their stem and/or spelling changes in the other forms. *Jesť, povedať,* and *vedieť* all end in *-edia* in the *oni* form instead of *-ú.*

jesť (to eat) *(ned.)*		**povedať** (to tell) *(dok.)*		**vedieť** (to know) *(ned.)*		**rozumieť** (to understand) *(ned.)*		**báť sa** (to be afraid of) *(ned.)*	
jem	jeme	poviem	povieme	viem	vieme	rozumiem	rozumieme	bojím sa	bojíme sa
ješ	jete	povieš	poviete	vieš	viete	rozumieš	rozumiete	bojíš sa	bojíte sa
je	jedia	povie	povedia	vie	vedia	rozumie	rozumejú	bojí sa	bojа sa
jedol		povedal		vedel		rozumel		bál sa	

Note: Stáť (*to stand, to cost*) follows the same conjugation pattern as **báť sa.**

Activities

A. Conjugation

Conjugate the following verbs in a verb tree on a separate sheet of paper without looking at the charts above. Check your answers. Pay particular attention to stem changes for each verb.

-ís verbs

ísť (to go) nájsť (to find) prísť (to come) prejsť (to cross, to go through) odísť (to leave)

Other Irregular-stem Verbs

rásť (to grow)	brať (to take)	viesť (to lead)	pomôcť (to be able to)
kryť (to cover)	písať (to write)	priať (to wish)	obliecť (to put on clothes)

Irregular *Oni* Form with Stem Changes

jesť (to eat) odpovedať (to answer) vedieť (to know something) stáť (to stand, to cost.)

B. Conjugating in Sentences

Translate on a separate sheet of paper or say each of the following phrases aloud with the correct future or present (depending on its aspect) conjugation of the verb in parentheses. Personal pronouns are not necessary unless to distinguish between he and she. Check your answers.

***-ísť* verbs**

1. I go
2. He comes
3. They leave
4. You (inform.) find
5. You (form.) cross
6. We go
7. You (form.) leave
8. They come
9. I cross
10. We find
11. I come
12. She goes

Other Irregular-stem Verbs

1. I take
2. We laugh
3. They want
4. He bakes
5. You (form.) drink
6. You (inform.) take
7. We can
8. I'll begin
9. You (form.) take
10. She wants
11. You (inform.) can
12. They will begin

Irregular *Oni* Form with Stem Changes

1. He will tell
2. I eat
3. You (form.) understand
4. They know
5. You (inform.) will tell
6. I'm afraid
7. She eats
8. They will tell
9. You (form.) know
10. We understand
11. We are afraid
12. They eat

C. Translation

Write the correct form of the verb in parentheses on a separate sheet of paper and then say each of the following sentences out loud. For some sentences, personal pronouns are given in square brackets to let you know how to conjugate. Check your answers.

-íst' verbs

1. Kam [my] (ísť)?
2. [Ja] (nájsť) to v písmach.
3. Po smrti náš duch (odísť) do duchovného sveta.
4. Všetci [my] (prejsť) fyzickou smrťou.
5. Požehnania [oni] (prísť).
6. O čo [ono] (ísť)?
7. [Vy] (nájsť) odpovede.
8. Požehnania určite (prísť), keď dodržiavame Božie zákony.
9. [Vy] (ísť future) s nami túto nedeľu na cirkevné zhromaždenie?
10. Bez pokánia a odpustenia tieto pocity ne(odísť).

Other Irregular-stem

1. [My] (môcť) sa stať takými, ako je Boh.
2. Keď [vy] (vziať) na seba meno Ježiša Krista . . .
3. Keď Pán (začať) novú dispenzáciu, opäť zjaví evanjelium.
4. Boh (odobrať) svoju kňazskú právomoc.
5. Boh (chcieť) s nami hovoriť.
6. [My] (vybrať si) každý deň medzi dobrom a zlom.
7. [My] (môcť) byť oslobodení od bremena našich hriechov.
8. [Ja] (báť sa) robiť chyby.
9. Naša viera (rásť) počúvaním slova Božieho.
10. Cirkev (stať) a padá s pravdivosťou Knihy Mormonovej.

Irregular _Oni_ Form with Stem Changes

1. Počas večere Pána, [my] (jesť) chlieb a pijeme vodu.
2. Lekcie vám [oni] ne(povedať) všetko, čo máte hovoriť.
3. Tomu [ja] ne(rozumieť).
4. [My] (vedieť), odkiaľ sme prišli a kam ideme.
5. Pretože Boh je náš Otec, (odpovedať) na naše modlitby.
6. Keď dokončíš aktivity v tejto učebnici, ľudia ti po(rozumieť).
7. Ako [vy] (rozumieť) zákonu cudnosti?
8. Tí, ktorí [oni] (jesť) zdravé potraviny, budú žiť dlhšie.
9. Kniha Mormonova pomáha ľuďom, ktorí [oni] ne(vedieť) nič o Kristovi.
10. Ak ste uprimný a naozaj [vy] (chcieť) vedieť, či existuje Boh, on vám (odpovedať).

D. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answer against the one listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. Ako ***vediete,** že Boh počúva vaše modlitby?
   How do you know God hears your prayers?
2. Ľudia často ***nerozumú** slovám Biblie.
   People often don't understand the words of the Bible.
3. ***Chciete** čítať Knihu Mormonovu?
   Do you want to read the Book of Mormon?
4. Boh určite ***odpovedie** na vaše modlitby.
   God certainly will answer your prayers.
5. ***Stojíme sa** takými, ako je Kristus.
   We will become like Christ.
6. Boh ***odobrá** kňazstvo zo zeme, keď ho ľudia nepočuvajú.
   God takes the priesthood from the earth when people don't listen to him.
7. V dnešných časoch nás apoštoli ***vediú.**
   In our day, Apostles lead us.
8. Oni ***vedú,** že evanjelium je pravdivé.
   They know the gospel is true.

E. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key. For any questions that you miss, write at least two sentences that you could use in your teaching today that use the correct form of the word.

1. Mnohí ľudia nerozumejú tomu, prečo sú tu.
2. Vyberieme si každý deň medzi dobrom a zlom.
3. Vziame na seba zodpovednosť žiť čestne, keď sa dáme pokrstiť.
4. V svojom svedectve, Moroni písa niekoľko slov spôsobom nabádania.
5. Kam ideme?
6. Prieš túto nedeľu na zhromaždenie?
7. Začám štúdium teraz.
8. Pomôžem ti čítať túto pasáž.

F. Scripture Activity: The Atonement

Read Alma 7:11–14 in Slovak. Identify the irregular verbs used in verse 11 and take note of how they are used. The last verb in that verse, *vezme*, is used in a useful fixed expression: *vziať na seba* (to take upon oneself). This phrase can be used to describe all the things Christ took upon Himself through His atonement. Now reread verses 11–13 and make a list, in Slovak, of all the things Christ took upon Himself. Make sure to put *vziať* into past tense as you make the list.

Example: **Kristus vzal na seba** naše bolesti a choroby.
Christ took upon Himself our pains and sicknesses.

Use these scriptures in a lesson to share your testimony of the Savior and what His sacrifice personally means to you. Form a question using the phrase *vziať na seba* to ask the investigator why he or she thinks Christ took upon Himself those things. Reread the passage with your investigator, reinforcing and clarifying any points regarding the importance of repentance and baptism in verse 14. Help the investigator understand what we must do to access the Atonement.

G. Learn with Your Companion

Have your companion ask you the following questions and respond in complete sentences conjugating the verbs into the correct ja form.

1. Začneš štúdium s modlitbou?
2. Kedy odídeš (z MTC, z Trenčína, etc.)?
3. Koho/čoho sa bojíš?
4. Prečo kážeš evanjelium?
5. Ako vieš, že Kniha Mormonova je slovo Božie?
6. Kam ideš?
7. Rozumieš slovensky?
8. Pôjdeš so mnou na obed?
9. Môžeš hovoriť so mnou po slovensky?
10. Povieš mi niekedy, aké máš krstné meno?

H. Actively Listen

Listen for irregular verbs from native speakers. Try to imitate how they use irregular verbs, especially if they say them or use them in a way different than from how you would. You may discover useful colloquial phrases or idioms as you pay attention to the context surrounding the irregular verb. Irregular verbs are among the most commonly used verbs in Slovak.

I. Developing Questions

Using these or other irregular verbs, develop situation-specific questions that you would ask your investigator in a teaching situation. For instance, develop a question asking what the investigator understands about a certain scripture using *rozumieť*, a question asking them what they know about a particular doctrine or idea using *vedieť*, or any other common questions you might use in teaching. Practice using these verbs with other missionaries and become comfortable conjugating them into the you-formal. Make a plan to use at least two new irregular verbs during your scheduled activities.

Aspect and Future

Examples

The obedient **will live in a state of happiness.**	Poslušní **budú žiť v stave šťastia.**
Jesus Christ **visited** the Americas to . . .	Ježiš Kristus **navštívil** Ameriku, aby . . .
We will remain in the spirit world until the Resurrection.	**Ostaneme** v duchovnom svete až do vzkriesenia.
We make sacred covenants in the temple.	**Uzatvárame** sväté zmluvy v chráme.

Explanation

Many English verbs have at least two Slovak equivalents, which differ in aspect: **perfective** *(dokonavý)* and **imperfective** *(nedokonavý)*. In general, **imperfective** verbs emphasize the **process** of doing something **over time. Perfective** verbs emphasize the **completion** of a single action. It is important to learn the difference between the two and to be able to recognize which instances will require **imperfective** or **perfective**.

Use the Imperfective to Describe

Incomplete action (in progress).	Boh **povoláva** prorokov i v dnešnej dobe. *God calls prophets even in our day.*
Something not ending in a specific result or not emphasizing the result.	**Cítim** Ducha, keď **čítam**. *I feel the Spirit when I read.*
Habitual or repeated actions.	**Modlíme sa** ako rodina každý deň. *We pray as a family every day.*

Imperfective verbs can take all three tenses: past, present, and future. **Perfective verbs can refer to past and future action, but cannot refer to action in the present tense** because action in the present tense is incomplete and in progress.

Use the Perfective to Describe

Completion of a single action in the past.	Joseph Smith **uvidel** dve bystosti nad sebou. *Joseph Smith saw two personages above him.*
Completion of a single action in the future.	**Prečítate** túto kapitolu dnes večer? *Will you read this chapter tonight?*

Recognizing Perfective and Imperfective Verbs

Verbs that end in *-ovať* are almost always imperfective (the exception is usually prefixed verbs), and verbs that end in *-stať* and *-núť* are almost always perfective (rare exceptions include *kradnúť* to steal, which is imperfective). Verbs ending with other endings can be either perfective or imperfective.

Also, verbs that have been given a prefix will frequently be perfective. Verbs that have elongated endings will almost always be imperfective. Examples are given below.

Imperfective *(ned.)*		**Perfective** *(dok.)*
čítať (to read)	→	**pre**čítať
modliť sa (to pray)	→	**po**modliť sa
požehn**ávať** (to bless)	→	požehnať
d**ávať** (to give)	→	dať

Other examples of verbs in both forms are listed below.

Imperfective → Perfective	Imperfective → Perfective
Nachádzať → Nájsť (to find)	Začínať → Začať (to start)
Prichádzať → Prísť (to come)	Prekonávať → Prekonať (to overcome)
Odchádzať → Odísť (to leave)	Stretávať sa → Stretnúť sa (to meet up)
Pozývať → Pozvať (to invite)	Otvárať → Otvoriť (to open)
Robiť → Urobiť (to do)	Pomáhať → Pomôcť (to help)

Note: Verbs ending in *-ísť* are perfective and end in *-chádzať* in their imperfective form.

Future Tense

Future tense is formed differently for imperfective and perfective verbs.

Future Imperfective

Imperfective future verbs are formed by using the future conjugation of *byť* with the infinitive of the verb. To say **will be**, simply use the future conjugation of *byť*.

byť	
bud**em**	bud**eme**
bud**eš**	bud**ete**
bud**e**	bud**ú**

+ (infinitive)

Examples:

Budete môcť prísť na zhromaždenie túto nedeľu?
Will you be able to come to come to church this Sunday?

Vaše svededctvo **bude rásť**, ak **budete čítať** písma každý deň.
Your testimony will grow if you read your scriptures every day.

Všetci **budeme** vzkriesení vďaka uzmiereniu Ježiša Krista.
We will all be resurrected thanks to the Atonement of Jesus Christ.

Pán sľúbil tým, ktorí **budú** verne **platiť** desiatky, že . . .
The Lord promised those who will faithfully pay their tithing that . . .

Future Perfective

Conjugating a perfective verb automatically refers to an action in the future tense. Always remember:
Perfective verbs cannot refer to action in the present tense.

Examples:

Pomodlíte sa na konci tohto stretnutia?
Will you pray at the end of this meeting?

Prostredníctvom vzkriesenia **sa** všetci ľudia **stanú** nesmrteľnými.
Through the resurrection, all people will become immortal.

Tí, ktorí **prijmú** znovuzriadené evanjelium, **obdržia** celestiálne kráľovstvo.
Those who receive the restored gospel will obtain the celestial kingdom.

Prečítate tento verš, prosím?
Will you read this verse, please?

This table summarizes how Slovak verbs are modified in past, present, and future tense.

	Past Tense	Present Tense	Future Tense
Imperfective *(ned.)*	L-form verb + conjugated *byť* **Example:** **<u>Čítal si</u>** tento týždeň? *Did you read this week?*	Conjugated verb **Example:** **<u>Čítate</u>**? *Are you reading?*	Future-tense *byť* + infinitive verb **Example:** **<u>Budete čítať</u>** tento týždeň? *Will you read this week?*
Perfective *(dok.)*	L-form verb + conjugated *byť* **Example:** **<u>Prečítal si</u>** niečo včera večer? *Did you read something last night?*	N/A	Conjugated verb **Example:** **<u>Prečítate</u>** niečo dnes večer? *Will you read something tonight?*

For more information on past tense and present tense verbs see lesson 23 and lesson 17.

Activities

A. Perfective or Imperfective?

On a separate sheet of paper, write down whether the highlighted verb or verbs should be perfective or imperfective. Check your answers.

1. Jesus Christ **died** for our sins.
2. We **will baptize** Lukáš next month.
3. **Will** you **follow** the example of Jesus Christ?
4. God **shows** His love for us by calling prophets.
5. **Will** you **come** to church with us this Sunday?
6. When we **read** God's word, we can **find** answers.
7. Revelation can **come** through the Light of Christ.
8. Adam and Eve **taught** their children the gospel.
9. We can **become** clean through the Atonement.
10. The investigators **will keep** the Word of Wisdom.

B. Identify Aspect

On a separate sheet of paper, make a list of all the verbs in the following paragraph and mark whether they are perfective or imperfective. Check your answers.

> Pred týmto životom sme sa rozhodli nasledovať Ježiša Krista. Boh nám dal slobodnú vôľu a náš večný pokrok závisí na tom, ako tento dar používame. Prišli sme na zem, aby sme získali fyzické telo a boli skúšaní. Keď sme na zemi, ukazujeme našu vieru tým, že sa riadime Božími prikázaniami. Tieto prikázania nám pomáhajú, aby sme zostali na ceste k večnému životu. Učíme sa o jeho zákonoch v písmach a aj od tých služobníkov, ktorých povolal Boh. Pokiaľ sme poslušní a hodní, Boh nám pošle svojho Ducha a ten Duch bude s nami neustále.

C. Identify Aspect

On a separate sheet of paper, make a list of all the verbs in the following paragraph and mark whether they are perfective or imperfective. Check your answers.

Potom, ako Joseph Smith išiel do lesa, pokľakol k modlitbe. Neskôr opísal svoj zážitok: "Videl som stĺp svetla, presne nad svojou hlavou, jasnejší ako slnko, ktorý sa pomaly približoval, až spočinul na mne...Keď svetlo spočinulo na mne, uvidel som dve bytosti, ktorých jas a sláva sa vymykali akémukoľvek popisu, stojace nado mnou vo vzduchu. Jedna hovorila ku mne, volajúc ma menom, a povedala, ukazujúc na druhú—*Toto je môj milovaný Syn. Vypočuj Ho!*"

D. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answer against the one listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. Ježiš Kristus ***prekonával** fyzickú smrť.
   Jesus Christ overcame physical death.
2. Nebeský Otec nám ***otvára** okná nebies.
   Heavenly Father will open the windows of heaven.
3. ***Budete** s nami **prísť** na zhromaždenie v nedeľu?
   Will you come to church with us on Sunday?
4. Duch Svätý nám ***poveda** duchovné pravdy.
   The Holy Ghost tells us spiritual truths.
5. Chceme **sa** s vami **stretávať** zajtra.
   We want to meet with you tomorrow.
6. Evanjelium nám **pomôže** čeliť našim skúškam.
   The gospel helps us face our trials.
7. ***Budeme byť** súdení podľa našich skutkov a túžob.
   We will be judged according to our actions and desires.
8. Keď ***sa pomodlíme** denne, cítime sa bližšie k Bohu.
   When we pray daily, we feel closer to God.
9. ***Čítali ste** tie kapitoly, ktoré sme vám dali?
   Did you read the chapters that we gave you?
10. Boh ***dá** prikázania, aby sme mali jeho pomoc.
    God gives commandments so we have His help.

E. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key. For any questions that you miss, write at least two sentences that you could use in your teaching today that use the correct form of the word.

1. Poslušní budú očistení Kristovým uzmierením.
2. Dostáme odpovede na naše modlitby.
3. Kristus navštevoval Božie deti na americkom kontinente.
4. Keď odmietnu prorokov, vzďaľujú sa od Boha.
5. Boh odoberie svoju právomoc, ak nie sme hodní.
6. Stanete sa Kristovým deťmi, keď sa dáte pokrstiť.
7. Pozveme ľudí, aby prišli ku Kristovi každý deň.
8. Môžeme končiť s modlitbou?
9. Jozeph Smith preložil Knihu Mormonovu mocou Božou.
10. Starodávni proroci písali Božie slová na zlatých doskách.

F. Share an Experience

Think of an experience that you could share with one of your investigators. Some possible topics include how you gained a testimony of the gospel, an experience that strengthened your faith, a time you were blessed for obedience, etc. Write out your experience and have your companion or a native speaker check it, paying special attention to your use of perfective and imperfective verbs. Practice sharing your experience with your companion and use the experience in an upcoming lesson with that investigator.

G. Scripture Activity

Read Alma's experience with the Atonement in Alma 36. Using your scriptures, write out the story in a way that your investigator can understand. Practice telling the story to your companion, personalizing the story for your investigator. Get feedback on your use of perfective and imperfective verbs.

H. Language Study Plan Activities

1. Ask a native speaker who is a convert to tell you his or her conversion story. Listen carefully to how he or she uses the perfective and imperfective. Later, retell the story to your companion and get feedback on your use of perfective and imperfective.
2. Write down the spiritual experiences you and your companion have. Focus on using perfective and imperfective correctly. Have your companion check what you write.
3. Look in the lessons or brochures for sentences that use both perfective and imperfective. Memorize the sentences and come up with other ways to express the same idea, focusing on using perfective and imperfective correctly.

Verbal Nouns, Adjectives, and Adverbs

Examples

The **Atonement** is central to God's plan.	**Uzmierenie** je stredom Božieho plánu.
The Book of Mormon is **convincing** evidence that Joseph Smith was a prophet.	Kniha Mormonova je **presvedčujúci** dôkaz toho, že Joseph Smith bol prorok.
We will remain in the spirit world until the **Resurrection**.	Ostaneme v duchovnom svete až do **vzkriesenia**.
The ten **commandments** include . . .	Desať **prikázaní** obsahuje . . .

Explanation

In English, verbal nouns, adjectives, and adverbs can be formed from most verbs by adding *-ing.* This lesson details the rules for creating useful nouns, adjectives, and adverbs from verbs in Slovak.

Verbal Nouns

All verbs ending in *-ať,* including *-ovať* and *-stať,* become verbal nouns by dropping the *ať* and adding *-anie*. A verbal noun is a **noun (person, place, thing, or idea)** that is formed directly from a verb and takes its meaning from that verb.

***-ať* Verbs**	**Verbal Noun**	**Example**
požehnať *(to bless)*	požehnanie *(blessing)*	Aby sme obdržali toto požehnanie, musíme tiež byť očistení od hriechu. *To receive this blessing, we must also be cleansed from sin.*
uplatňovať *(to apply)*	uplatňovanie *(applying)*	Domov je tým najlepším miestom na uplatňovanie zásad evanjelia. *Home is the best place for applying principles of the gospel.*

All verbs ending in *-iť, -ieť,* or *-eť* become verbal nouns by dropping the final two or three letters and adding *-enie*.

***-iť* Verbs**	**Verbal Noun**	**Example**
učiť *(to teach)*	učenie *(teaching)*	Učenie prorokov sa nachádza v písmach. *The teachings of prophets are found in the scriptures.*
uzmieriť *(to atone)*	uzmierenie *(atonement)*	Uzmierenie Ježiša Krista je stredom Božieho plánu. *The Atonement of Jesus Christ is central to God's plan.*

All verbs ending in *-núť* become verbal nouns by replacing *-núť* with *-nutie*.

***-núť* Verbs**	**Verbal Noun**	**Example**
odmietnuť *(to reject)*	odmietnutie *(rejecting)*	Odmietnutie prorokov vedie k odpadlíctvu. *Rejecting the prophets leads to apostasy.*
rozhodnúť *(to decide)*	rozhodnutie *(decision)*	Duch Svätý vám pomôže urobiť správne rozhodnutie. *The Holy Ghost will help you make correct decisions.*

Note: When forming verbal nouns, typically the perfective form of the verb is used unless the intended meaning calls for the use of an imperfective verb (e.g., zjaviť > zjavovať).

Active Verbal Adjectives

Some verbs can be made into -ing adjectives. This is done by using the three-step process explained below. These adjectives decline like soft adjectives, except that the ending uses only short vowels and no diphthongs.

Note: These are active verbal adjectives. For how to form passive verbal adjectives see lesson 25.

1 Take the infinitive	2 Conjugate the verb third person plural *(oni)*	3 Add the *-ci* ending
žiť *(To live)*	žijú	žijúci *(living)*

Examples:

Pravdu **hľadajúci** muži a ženy sa začali búriť proti vtedajším náboženským zvyklostiam.
Truth-seeking men and women began protesting current religious practices.

Náš **milujúci** Nebeský Otec znovuzriadil evanjelium prostredníctvom **žijúceho** proroka.
Our loving Heavenly Father restored the gospel through a living prophet.

Vaša **rastúca** znalosť bude budovať vaše svedectvo.
Your growing knowledge will build your testimony.

Active Verbal Adverbs

Active verbal adverbs can be created in the same way as active verbal adjectives. Note, however, that the final *-i* is left off. As always, adverbs do not change in form (i.e., case or gender).

Examples:

Jedna hovorila ku mne, **volajúc** ma menom a povedala, **ukazujúc** na druhú . . .
One of them spake unto me, calling me by name and said, pointing to the other . . .

Duch bude čakať dovtedy, pokiaľ sa nevrátime **hľadajúc**, **načúvajúc** a **hovoriac** naším spôsobom a **cítiac** sa tak ako Samuel za stara, keď povedal: 'Hovor [Pane], lebo Tvoj služobník počúva.' (1 Sam. 3:10)
The Spirit will wait until we come seeking and listening and saying in our manner and expression, feeling like Samuel of ancient times, 'Speak [Lord], for thy servant heareth.' (1 Sam. 3:10)

Activities

A. Verbs to Nouns

Turn the following verbs into nouns and write your answer on a separate sheet of paper. Check your answers.

1. vytrvať
2. prijímať
3. stretnúť
4. pokrstiť
5. konfirmovať
6. vyučovať
7. obdržať
8. odpočinúť
9. zamerať
10. opakovať
11. potvrdiť
12. odpustiť
13. porozumieť
14. povolať

B. Translation

Turn the following verbs into active adjectives and write your answer on a separate sheet of paper. The adjective should agree with the quantity and gender of the word in parentheses. Check your answers.

1. predsedať (kňazská právomoc)
2. posilňovať (vplyv)
3. žiť (prorok)
4. začínať (dispenzácia)
5. napredovať (záujemcovia)
6. nasledovať (otázky)
7. inšpirovať (krstné zhromaždenie)
8. kajať sa (duch)

C. Translation

Translate the following sentences, focusing on using verbal nouns and active verbal adjectives correctly. Check your answers.

1. By keeping the commandments we obtain forgiveness.
2. We should invite our progressing investigators to church.
3. God will help us make good decisions.
4. Home teaching and visiting teaching are important.
5. We can find happiness when our lives are built upon the teachings of Jesus Christ.
6. The Book of Mormon is the most powerful resource for the teaching of this message.
7. Why should we know about God's commandments?
8. If we are worthy, we have the right to receive revelation.
9. Baptizing and confirming people who you teach is your most important goal.
10. District meetings should include the sharing of experiences and testimonies about missionary work.

D. Revise to Verbal Nouns

The following sentences all include verbs in their standard form. Change the sentences by replacing the bolded verbs with verbal nouns (and possibly a preposition). Check your answers.

Example: Môžeme nájsť odpovede, keď **čítame** písma. → Môžeme nájsť odpovede čítaním písiem.

1. Keď **počúvame** Božie slovo, naša viera rastie.
2. Rád **čítam** Knihu Mormonovu.
3. **Nasledovať** proroka znamená, že žijeme podľa evanjelia.
4. Pripravte sa **vyučovať** vašich záujemcov.
5. Čo môžeme robiť, aby sme **posilňovali** naše svedectvo?
6. Ako môžeme lepšie **plánovať**?
7. Udeľujeme kňazstvo, keď **vkladáme** ruky na hlavu.
8. Keď **vydávame** svedectvo, cítime Ducha Svätého.

E. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answer against the one listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. Bez ***zjavovania** by sme boli stratení.
   Without revelation we would be lost.
2. Pán má radosť, keď cítite Ducha ***pracujúci** skrze vás.
   The Lord is pleased when you feel the Spirit working through you.
3. Chceme, aby ste študovali slová ***žijúci** prorokov.
   We want you to study the words of the living prophets.
4. Pod ***vedenie** Otca stvoril Kristus zem.
   Under the direction of the Father, Christ created the world.
5. Všetky naše ***požehnani** prichádzajú od Boha.
   All of our blessings come from God.
6. Ak nás to vyzýva k ***čininiu** dobra, je to od Boha.
   If it entices us to do good, it is from God.
7. Misionári majú ísť v moci, ***hlásajúci** radostné zvesti.
   Missionaries should go in power, declaring glad tidings.
8. Joseph Smith mal ***vedenie** potom, ako sa pomodlil.
   Joseph Smith had a vision after he prayed.

F. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key. For any questions that you miss, write at least two sentences that you could use in your teaching today that use the correct form of the word.

1. Chceme, aby dodržiaval nasledujúci záväzky.
2. Radosť prichádza nasledovanie Božích zákonov.
3. Keď Adamovi potomkovia zavrhli evanjelium, vznikli opakujúce sa prorocké dispenzácie.
4. Kristus ponúka milosrdenstvo prostredníctvom svojej uzmierenej obete.
5. Bez Ducha nikdy neuspejete, nedbajúc na vaše talenty.
6. Po vzkriesení budeme súdení podľa našich skutkov.
7. Môžeme robiť lepšie rozhodnania, keď nasledujeme Ducha.
8. Dodržiavanie Božích prikázaní prináša pokoj.
9. Kristove uzmierenie zahŕňa jeho utrpenie v Getsemanskej záhrade.
10. Prikázania sú pokyny od milujúci Otca v nebi.

G. *Preach My Gospel* Activity

Read the principle "Znovuzriadenie Evanjelia Ježiša Krista Prostredníctvom Josepha Smitha" on pages 36–37 in *Kážte moje Evanjelium*. Write down all of the verbal nouns, adjectives, and adverbs from this principle. Check your answers. Then write as many sentences using verbal nouns, adjectives, and adverbs as you can that relate to this principle and have your companion check them. Using your sentences, teach your companion this principle as if he or she were one of your investigators. Get feedback on how well you used verbal nouns, adjectives, and adverbs.

H. Language Study Plan Activities

1. Look for verbal nouns and adjectives in the scriptures, *Kážte Moje Evajelium*, brochures, and other missionary materials. Ask others for help understanding how verbal nouns and adjectives are used.
2. Make as many sentences as you can that use verbal nouns and adjectives and that you could use in upcoming teaching appointments. Have your companion or a native speaker check them.

I. General Conference Activity

1. Find Elder Richard G. Scott's talk titled, „ Moc písiem," in the October 2011 Saturday morning session of general conference. In his talk, Elder Scott frequently uses verbal nouns, often in places that you might not. Read the talk and underline the verbal nouns and adjectives in his talk, then look for ways to incorporate them more into your own speaking.

Verbs of Motion and Verb Prefixes

Examples

After the mission I would like to **go** to school again.	Po misii by som chcel **chodiť** zase do školy.
Who else could we invite to **come** to church?	Koho ešte by sme mohli pozvať, aby **prišiel** na zhromaždenie?
The records of the prophets are **found** in the scriptures.	Záznamy prorokov sa **nachádzajú** v písmach.
When we die, we **go** to the spirit world.	Keď zomrieme, **pôjdeme** do duchovného sveta.

Explanation

Verbs of motion are categorized as either determinate or indeterminate rather than perfective or imperfective. The most commonly used verbs of motion are **the determinate *ísť* and indeterminate *chodiť* and *jazdiť***.

Use the Indeterminate to Describe:

Action with no clear-cut direction.	**Chodíme** po meste, hovoriac so všetkými o evanjeliu. *We go (walk) around town, speaking with everyone about the gospel.*
A regularly repeated action.	**Budem jazdiť** po Slovenskej Republike. *I will be going (riding) all over the Slovak Republic.*

Use the Determinate to Describe:

A single action moving in a definite direction.	**Idem** do kostola teraz. *I'm going to church (building) now.*
Infrequent, irregularly repeated, goal-oriented action.	**Pôjdem** na Slovensko za mesiac. *I will go to Slovakia in a month.*

Note: Both determinate and indeterminate verbs of motion can take the present tense as shown in the examples above. This is in contrast to the perfective/imperfective pattern in which perfective verbs can only take past and future tense (see lesson 19). Note the differences of meaning between the determinate *ísť* and indeterminate *chodiť* and *jazdiť*.

Future Tense

Future Indeterminate

To express indeterminate verbs of motion in future tense, add the future of *byť* (i.e., *budem, budeš, bude,* etc.) to its infinitive form.

Examples:

Budem chodiť na zhromaždenia odteraz. *From now on, I will be going to the meetings.*	**Budem jazdiť** na Slovensko trikrát za mesiac. *I will be going to Slovakia three times per month.*

Future Determinate

To form the future tense of determinate verbs, add *po-* to the conjugated verb. To the conjugation of *ísť*, add *pô-* and change *i* to *j*.

Examples:

Kam **pôjdeme** po smrti? *Where will we go after death?*	**Poletí** zajtra z Bratislavy do Nemecka. *He will fly out of Bratislava to Germany.*

Other determinate verbs of motion include *bežať* (to run) and *letieť* (to fly), which use *-í-ia* endings. Irregular-stem verbs of motion (see lesson 18 for information on irregular-stem verbs) include the following:

nieseť (to carry on foot) - nes**iem**, nes**ieš**, nes**ie**, nes**ieme**, nes**iete**, nes**ú**
viesť (to lead, take on foot) - ved**iem**, ved**ieš**, ved**ie**, ved**ieme**, ved**iete**, vedú
viezť (to carry by transportation) - vez**iem**, vez**ieš**, vez**ie**, vez**ieme**, vez**iete**, vez**ú**

Verb Prefixes

Determinate verbs of motion can be combined with a verb prefix to form a perfective verb with a different meaning than the original determinate verb of motion. That perfective verb of motion can in turn be lengthened to form an imperfective verb with a similar meaning. The following table shows how verb prefixes can be added to the determinate verb *ísť* to form verb pairs with a new meaning. Listed with these prepositions are their "meanings" when added to verbs of motion and some other verbs. **While knowing and using these meanings may be helpful with many verbs, many times these prefixes are added to verbs and the meaning does not change in the way this list would suggest. Do not assume that you can take one of these prefixes and make up a new verb. Use them as guidelines to help you make connections as you learn the meanings for verbs.**

Prefix	Meaning	Example (imp./ perf.)	Translation	Other Examples
do-	up to, final phase	dochádzať > dôjsť	to get to, reach	doletieť (to fly as far as)
na-	upon	nachádzať > nájsť	to come upon, find	napadnúť (to fall upon, to attack)
o-/ob-	round, around	obchádzať > obísť	to go around, evade	ostať (to stand around, to stay)
od-	away from	odchádzať > odísť	to leave, go away	odoslať (to send off/ away)
pod-	under, up to	podchádzať > podísť	to go under, to go up to	podložiť (to put under)
pre-	through, across	prechádzať > prejsť	to go/pass through	premyslieť (to think through)
pri-	arrive, come	prichádzať > prísť	to come	priviezť (to bring)
roz-	apart, asunder	rozchádzať sa > rozísť sa	to part, separate	rozlíšiť (to distinguish)
u-	off, away	uchádzať > ujsť	to get away	uhasiť (to extinguish, to put out)
v-	into	vchádzať > vojsť	to enter, go in	vpustiť (to let in)
vy-	out, out of	vychádzať > vyjsť	to go/come out	vystúpiť (to get out/ off)
z-/s-	together	schádzať sa > zísť sa	to come together, meet	zviazať (to tie together)
za-	behind	záchádzať > zájsť	to go behind	zariadiť (to arrange)

Prepositions of Motion

The following prepositions are commonly used with verbs of motion. They can, of course, be used in other contexts and express some similar and some different meanings.

Preposition + Case	Meaning	Examples
K + Third Case	To express motion **up to** a person or location. (Opposite of *od*)	Poďte **ku mne** a buďte pokrstení v mojom mene. *Come unto me and be baptized in my name.*
Od + Second Case	To express motion "from" when **away from** is a better description than "out of." (Opposite of *k*)	Keď páchame hriech, oddeľujeme sa **od Boha**. *When we commit sin, we separate ourselves from God.*
Do + Second Case	To express motion when **into** could replace "to" without changing the meaning. (Opposite of *z*)	Vysvetlili, prečo sa rozhodli vstúpiť **do Cirkvi**. *They explained why they decided to enter into the church.*
Z + Second Case	To express motion "from" when **out of** could reasonably be used to describe the motion. (Opposite of *do*)	Odišli sme **z domu**. *We went out of the house.*
Na + Fourth Case	To express motion **to an event** or **for a purpose**.	Budem chodiť **na zhromaždenie** odteraz. *From now on, I will be going to the (church) meeting.*
Po + Sixth Case	To express motion **in** or **around** a place.	Chodíme **po meste** a hovoríme s ľuďmi. *We go around town and we speak with people.*

Activities

A. Chodi or Ís?

On a separate sheet of paper, write down whether the verb "to go" should be translated as *chodiť* or *ísť*. Also, when appropriate, list which preposition should be used with the associated verb of motion. Check your answers.

1. They will be going to church regularly.
2. We need to go to Christ in order to be saved.
3. Every Sunday we go into the house of the Lord to worship.
4. We're going to the city center to teach.
5. He went about, doing good.
6. We're walking around the park right now.
7. How is it going for you today?
8. I'll go to the store this weekend.
9. Will you go to church with us this Sunday?
10. I am going to the river.
11. I am going to church this Sunday.
12. She's going to a concert.
13. I am going to church now.
14. I am going home.
15. I am going to church regularly.
16. The missionaries went to the branch president's house.
17. I often go to my teacher for help.
18. We go around the city to talk with people often.
19. I'll ride the buses home from now on.
20. Are they going (coming) to the activity this Thursday?

B. Fill in the Blank

Fill in the blank with the appropriate form of to go and the appropriate preposition. Check your answers.

1. Každý sabatný deň (my) ___ ___ domu Pána.
2. Vieme, odkiaľ sme prišli a kam ___ po smrti.
3. Budete ___ ___ zhromaždenia pravidelne?
4. (My) ___ ___ Slovensko budúci týždeň.
5. Každú nedeľu som ___ ___ kostola.
6. Po smrti ___ náš duch ___ Bohu.
7. Po smrti náš duch ___ ___ duchovného sveta.
8. Oni ___ ___ tej ulici celkom často.
9. (My) ___ ___ obchodu, ak chcete prísť.
10. (My) ___ ___ Seidlovcom teraz.

C. Fill in the Blank

Fill in the blank with the appropriate verb. Verb stems are provided in parenthesis. Though it may at first seem like guess work, try to become with how each verb prefix modifies other verbs to aid you in creating and recognizing definitions for new verbs. Check your answers.

1. Potrebujú cítiť spolupatričnosť, ktorá ___ (*chádza*: it goes) z poznania, že sú deťmi Božími.
2. Môžete sa ___ (*chýliť*: to near) od poradia lekcií.
3. Tieto zážitky nám poskytujú príležitosť k tomu, aby sme sa učili a rástli, ___ (*lišovali*: we differed) dobro od zla.
4. Všetci robíme rozhodnutia a všetci sa ___ (*púšťame*: we let outselves fall) hriechu.
5. ___ (*stúpili*: we stepped) sme do vlaku a potom sme jazdili 20 kilometrov.
6. ___ (*cvičujte*: (You) exercise), ako vyslovíte jednotlivé výzvy k záväzku.
7. ___ (*čiarknite*: (You) line) tvoje obľúbené písma.
8. Učí vás nové pravdy a ___ (*nesie*: it carries) náuky, ktoré ste študovali naspamäť.
9. ___ (*ložia*: they put) prirodzeného človeka a stanú sa svätými.
10. ___ (*čítajte*: read) Moroni 10 a vlastnými slovami napíšte, k čomu Moroni nabáda.

D. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answer against the one listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. Chcete prísť ***ku cirkvi** s nami?
   Do you want to come to church with us?
2. ***Budeme ísť** na zhromaždenie. Prídete?
   We are going to go to church. Will you come?
3. ***Budete** s nami **prísť** na zhromaždenie v nedeľu?
   Will you come to church with us on Sunday?
4. ***Chodíme** do parku zajtra.
   We are going to the park tomorrow.
5. Duch ***nesie** vaše učenie do ich sŕdc.
   The Spirit will carry your message into their hearts.
6. Môžete ísť ***do** biskupa a hovoriť s ním.
   You can go to the bishop and talk to him.
7. ***Ide** k doktorovi každý týždeň.
   He goes to the doctor every week.
8. ***Vyčítate** tento verš pre nás?
   Will you read out (loud) this verse for us?

E. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key. For any questions that you miss, write at least two sentences that you could use in your teaching today that use the correct form of the word.

1. Ideme hore, aby sme mohli hovoriť s bratom Ďurišom.
2. Chodíte často na doktora?
3. Budeme ísť do Trenčína zajtra vlakom.
4. Chodí na prechádzky pri rieke celkom často.
5. Pôjdete s nami chodiť na zhromaždenie tento týždeň?
6. Ideme k Jurajovi o chvíľu.
7. Budeme chodiť na stretnutie v sobotu. Prídete?
8. Chodili sme tam, aby sme ho učili raz za týždeň.
9. Prečo idete k cirkvi pravidelne?
10. Nemusím premýšľať nad tým, či idem na zhromaždenie.

F. Companionship Activity

During daily planning, take time to describe to your companion the events that took place that day. Describe where you went, what activities you took part in, and how long you did each activity. Use the verbs of motion presented in this lesson, paying special attention to verb tenses and prepositions of motion. Ask for feedback. Then repeat this activity and describe the next day's activities you've planned together.

G. Scripture Activities

1. Read Ammon and King Lamoni's experience with King Lamoni's father in Alma 20. Pay attention to the verbs of motion that are used and try to understand why each is used the way it is. Ask for help if you don't understand.
2. Read Alma 7 and make a list of the verbs used with modifying prefixes. Using a dictionary, try to understand exactly how each prefix modifies the verb's stem. Repeat this activity with other chapters in the Book of Mormon and look for patterns between verb prefixes.

H. Language Study Plan Activities

1. Ask a native speaker who is a convert to tell you his or her conversion story. Listen carefully to how he or she uses verbs with common prefixes such as those listed in this lesson. Later, retell the story to your companion and get feedback on your use of verb prefixes. Look for other similar words in the dictionary with different prefixes.
2. As you listen to native speakers, write down new phrases and verbs you hear with new prefixes. Write these new phrases and verbs on note cards and study them throughout the day. Set aside the words you learn. Work on the remaining words until you know them all.

Reflexive Pronouns and Articles

Examples

Truth doesn't **change** with time.	Pravda **sa nemení** časom.
What do you **think** about God?	Čo **si myslíte** o Bohu?
This plan is **called** the plan of salvation.	Tento plán **sa volá** plán spásy.
The Word of Wisdom teaches us that we should **avoid** harmful substances.	Slovo múdrosti nás učí, že **sa** máme **vyhýbať** škodlivým látkam.

Form

The reflexive pronoun *sa* ("self") and *si* ("to self") are added to verbs for various reasons. Some verbs must always be accompanied by a reflexive pronoun without exception. In this case the reflexive pronoun is simply a part of the verb and does not change the meaning.

Examples:

modliť **sa** *to pray*	snažiť **sa** *to try*	uvedomiť **si** *to realize*	všimnúť **si** *to notice*

Most verbs can exist without a reflexive pronoun. When a reflexive pronoun is added to these verbs, it denotes that the subject is doing the action to himself, herself, or itself. Remember, reflexive pronouns usually take the second position of the sentence (for more on word order see lesson 2). Notice in the following examples how the meaning of the verb changes when a reflexive is added:

	No Reflexive Present	Reflexive Present
vrátiť - to return (something) **vrátiť sa**- to return (self) or to come back	**Vrátime** vám knihy. *We will return (to) you the books.*	**Vrátime sa** k Bohu po smrti. *We will return (ourselves) to God after death.*
učiť - to teach **učiť sa** - to learn or study (to teach oneself)	Chceme vás **učiť** naše posolstvo. *We want to teach you our message.*	Chceme **sa učiť** vaše posolstvo. *We want to learn your message.*
dať - to give, or to put **dať si** - to give (to oneself), to help oneself to something **dať sa** - To give (oneself) to something	**Dáme** vám požehnanie. *We will give (to) you a blessing.*	**Dám si** čas. *I will give (to) myself time.* **Dám sa** pokrstiť. *I will give myself to baptism. (I will be baptized)*

Note: If two reflexive verbs are in the same clause, they will often share the same reflexive article *(ex. Snažím sa modliť.).*

Long Form vs. Short Form

Like other pronouns, reflexive pronouns have a long form and a short form (see lesson 4). In the examples above only the short form has been used, as it is the form that is almost always used to modify a verb. The reflexive pronoun declines like ty, and is used whenever referring back to the subject of the sentence.

Below is the declension of the reflexive personal pronoun. The long form is used after prepositions and for emphasis while the short form is used in all other instances. Notice the location in the table of the short forms we use to modify verbs.

Case	Declination
Genitive	seba
Dative	sebe/si
Accusative	seba/sa
Locative	sebe
Instrumental	sebou

Examples:

Mám **okolo seba** dobrých ľudí. *I have good people around me (myself).*	**Opýtajte sa** ich, ako prišli do kontaktu s cirkvou. *Ask them how they came in contact with the Church.*
Porovnávajte to, čo ste sa naučili **k sebe** samému. *Compare what you've learned to yourself.*	Čo **si myslíte** o tom? *What do you think (to yourself) about that?*
Modlíte sa **za seba** navzájom? *Do you pray for each other?*	**Predstavím sa** o chvíľu. *I'll introduce myself in a moment.*

Activities

A. Fill in the Blank

On a separate sheet of paper, complete the sentences below by adding the appropriate reflexive article/pronoun. Check your answers.

1. Môžete ___ modliť podobne ako Alma.
2. Často ___ neuvedomia, že hľadajú evanjelium.
3. Chcete byť šťastný? Zabudnite na ___.
4. Dávajte ___ pozor na reč vášho tela.
5. Čo by ___ mohlo stať?
6. Pokánie môže v ___ zahŕňať emocionálne procesy.
7. Často ___ podeľte o vaše svedectvo.
8. Vzal na ___ bolesti.
9. Zanechajte niečo po ___.
10. Pád však so ___ priniesol aj fyzickú smrť.
11. Ako študovať efektívne a ako ___ pripraviť na výučbu?
12. Mám trpezlivosť so ___ samým.
13. Pyšní ľudia ___ slávu nechávajú radšej pre ___, ako by ju dali Bohu.
14. Konverzácia s rodákom, ktorý ovláda misijný jazyk, ___ nedá ničím nahradiť.

B. Reflexive or Not?

Fill in the blank in each sentence using either the reflexive or non-reflexive forms of the verbs. Check your answers.

1. Máte ___ (vrátiť) do Cirkvi a obnoviť krstnú zmluvu.
2. Ja ťa im ___ (predstaviť).
3. Čo ___ (dať) jesť? (vy)
4. Ja ___ (učiť) veľa od týchto misionárov.
5. Srdcia ___ (meniť).
6. ___ (dostať) tam o päť minút. (oni)
7. Chceme ho ___ (učiť) o pláne spásy.
8. Kedy mi ___ (vrátiť) moje veci? (vy)
9. ___ (stretnúť) s ním v pondelok zasa? (my)
10. ___ (dostať) niečo v pošte čoskoro! (ty)
11. Reformovať znamená niečo ___ (zmeniť) k lepšiemu.
12. My ho___ (stretnúť) zajtra prvýkrát.

C. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answer against the one listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. Kedy ***modlíte sa** obvykle?
   When do you pray usually?
2. ***Pripravíte** na to, aby ste mohli byť pokrstený?
   Will you prepare to be baptized?
3. Ako ste ***si rozhodli**?
   How have you decided?
4. Budete sa modliť a ***pýtať** Boha?
   Will you pray and ask God?
5. ***Učenie** od dobrého učiteľa je veľmi dôležité.
   Learning from a good teacher is very important.
6. ***Prečítate sa** túto kapitolu?
   Will you read this chapter to yourself?
7. Mohol by si ***sa** ho **predstaviť**?
   Could you introduce him?
8. Čo si ***myslel** o tom, čo sme ťa učili?
   What do you think (to yourself) about what we've taught you?
9. Snažte sa ***sa modliť** úprimne.
   Try to pray sincerely.
10. ***Šťastie** v rodinnom živote ***dá sa** najlepšie dosiahnuť . . .
    Happiness in family life is most likely achieved . . .

D. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key. For any questions that you miss, write at least two sentences that you could use in your teaching today that use the correct form of the word.

1. Sú ochotní vziať na sebe meno Ježiša Krista.
2. Aby sme pri sebe vždy mohli mať Ducha Svätého . . .
3. Zapamätajte to, čo ste si zistili.
4. Všímajte sa detaily.
5. Pripravujete sa učiť niekoho o zmŕtvychvstaní.
6. Noste so seba malý slovník.
7. Uvedomujete si, že ste Božie dieťa?
8. Chceme pripraviť na lekciu.
9. Budeme sa po celý život usilovať o to, aby sme potešili Pána.
10. Budete činiť pokánie a sa modliť za odpustenie hriechov?
11. Budete nasledovať príklad Ježiša Krista tým, že sa dáte pokrstiť?
12. Misionári, ktorí sa snažia denne pripravovať a usilujú sa pravidelne zlepšovať, obdržia vedenie Ducha Svätého.
13. Naše správanie sa v deň sabatu vyjadruje náš záväzok, ako si ctíme a uctievame Boha.
14. Snažte, aby sa ľudia s vami cítili príjemne.

E. Create Sentences

For each of the verbs listed below, write at least one sentence that uses the reflexive form and one that uses the non-reflexive form. Use your dictionary, your companion, or a native speaker to help you write your sentences. Make sure you could use your sentences in a teaching situation and, where possible, in a teaching situation you have today.

Example: poznať

Reflexive: Dobre sa poznáme. *(We know each other well.)*

Non-Reflexive: Poznáte brata Bodilyho? *(Do you know Brother Bodily?)*

1. volať
2. naučiť
3. mať
4. stratiť
5. zjaviť
6. očistiť
7. obrátiť
8. zmeniť
9. stať

F. *Preach My Gospel* Activity

Read the principle "Krst, Naša Prvá Zmluva" on page 63 of *Kážte Moje Evanjelium*. Using reflexive verbs, create a lesson plan that you could use to teach this principle to one of your investigators. Practice teaching your lesson plan to your companion as if he or she were that investigator. Get feedback on your use of reflexives.

G. Scripture Activities

1. Read 1 Nephi 8:22–30. Write down all of the reflexive verbs from these verses. Check your answers. Look up and write down the definition of any words you are unfamiliar with. Then use the words you wrote down together with your own words to describe what happens in these verses to your companion or a member as if he or she were an investigator. Get feedback on your use of reflexives.
2. Read JS-H 1:15–17. Write down all the reflexive verbs and pronouns in these verses. Check your answers. Then change each of the verbs from first person to third person. Use the verbs in the third person to describe Joseph Smith's experience to your companion as if he or she were an investigator.

   Example: ...som sa odobral... → Joseph Smith sa odobral... → Potom, čo sa Joseph Smith odobral na miesto...

H. Language Study Plan Activities

1. Memorize some scriptures you can use in teaching that use reflexive verbs. Practice sharing the scripture as you would with an investigator, focusing on using reflexives correctly and teaching the scripture following the principles for sharing scriptures found in chapter 10 of *Preach My Gospel*.
2. Listen to how natives use reflexive verbs. When they use a reflexive when you would not and vice versa, write it down and find out why they did. Write down the ones you are unsure of and have your companion help you.
3. Think of the activities you have planned for today. Write down sentences using reflexive verbs that you can use in those activities. Set a goal to use the sentences you wrote down today.

Review: Actions and Events

This review will help you see how well you have learned the material in the previous section(s). It will also help you evaluate your ability to apply several different grammar principles you have learned in performing the following function:

Asking About and Describing Actions and Events

- Verbs
- Aspect and Future
- Verbs of Motion and Verb Prefixes
- Irregular Verbs
- Verbal Nouns, Adjectives, and Adverbs
- Reflexive Pronouns and Articles

Activities

A. Error Correction

There are 10 errors in the paragraph below. On a separate sheet of paper, rewrite the paragraph, correcting all of the errors in it. Check your answers.

> Boh je náš milujúc Nebeský Otec. On nám dal vedenie a pomáhanie prostredníctvom žijúci proroka. Tento prorok nás viesie a učí nás o svojom pláne pre rodiny. Posolstvo o znovuzriadení evanjelia Ježiša Krista požehná rodiny. Pomáha manželom a manželkám, rodičom a deťom, keď sa snažia vybudujú pevnejšie vzťahy a duchovnú silu vo svojich rodinách. Viem, že moja rodina mi pomáhala cítiť spolupatričnosť a učiť sa správnym zásadám v láskyplnom prostredí. Kým som vyrasiel, modlil som sa často s mojou rodinou. Spolu sme prečítali písma každý večer. Keď sme mohli, jedoli sme spolu. Domov je tým najlepším miestom na vyučanie, učenie sa a uplatňovanie zásad evanjelia Ježiša Krista.

B. Error Correction

On a separate sheet of paper, rewrite the paragraph below, correcting the 11 errors in it. Check your answers.

> Budete s nami prísť ku zhromaždeniu v nedeľu? Každý sabatný deň ide moja rodina a ja do domu Pána, aby sme Ho uctievali. Prijímame tam večeru Pána, aby sme pripomenuli Ježiša Krista a Jeho uzmierenie. Obnovujeme naše zmluvy a ukazujeme, že sme ochotní činiť pokánie zo svojich hriechov a chýb. Ideme, pretože vieme, že sa tam budeme pocitiť vplyv Ducha Svätého. Nedbajúce na svoju situáciu, viem, že zhromaždenie mi pomáha posilním môj vzťah s Bohom. Myslím, že keď prídete, vidíte pre seba, ako vám dodržanie vašich zmlúv dá silu.

C. Error Correction

This activity will help you see where you need to improve. Each sentence has an error. Write down the corrected sentence or say it to your companion. Check your answers. If you get an answer wrong, the Answers section will refer you to the principle you should study.

1. Žime naveky vo vzkriesenom stave.
2. Opýtajte ich, ako prišli do kontaktu s cirkvou.
3. Môžete ísť do vedúceho a hovoriť s ním.
4. Tam zostanume až do svojho vzkriesenia.
5. Prezríte si záznam o výučbe každého napredujúc záujemcu.
6. Myslíte, že Kniha Mormonova je pravdivá?
7. Čítali ste kapitolu včera?
8. Cieľom štúdia so spoločníkom je budujenie jednoty.
9. Záujemcovia učia veľa od misionárov.
10. Oni vedú, že evanjelium je pravdivé.
11. Pripravte vašich záujemcov na splninie podmienok ku krstu.
12. Viazme na seba meno Ježiša Krista.
13. Kde sa stretnujete?
14. Poznám, že ak dodržiavame toto prikázanie . . .
15. Nebeský Otec bude odpovedávať na ich modlitby.
16. Moroni píša niekoľko slov spôsobom nabádania.
17. Budeme ti pomôcť v utorok.
18. Prečo potrebovám získať osobné zjavenie?
19. Rozvinenie vlastností podobných tým Kristovým pomôže ľudom.
20. Snažíme sa dodržiť jeho prikázania.
21. Duch je nevyhnutný pre vyučanie pravdy.
22. Vedieme, že Kniha Mormonova je pravdivá.
23. Myslím si, že viem Dávida.
24. Dostaš odpovede na vaše modlitby?
25. Misionári slúžiac v pobočkách sú povolaní Bohom.
26. Boh odobrá svoju kňazskú právomoc.
27. Stretávame sa s ním dnes poobede.
28. Pán vás bude vedie k nim alebo ich vedie k vám.

D. Translation

On a separate sheet of paper, translate the following sentences into Slovak. Check your answers.

1. We are going to meet every Monday.
2. I'm going to church this Sunday. Will you come too?
3. I'm trying to pray to God every day.
4. He worries a lot.
5. I will tell him tomorrow.
6. The surprise was unexpected.
7. I am starting to go to church more regularly.
8. We're going to visit the doctor.
9. We buy ice cream often.
10. The smiling (to smile: usmievať sa) man gave us the book.
11. What did you [informal masc.] think?
12. I am becoming a better person.
13. We invite him every week.
14. They are leaving.
15. We will go to the house of the Lord.
16. He's taking the tie with him.
17. The Lord will help us tomorrow. He always helps us.
18. I can't even imagine how that must be.
19. Are you reading the scriptures daily?
20. I know that we have a living prophet on the earth.

E. Companion Activities

1. Pick a grammar principle from this review that you are struggling with and then choose a principle or lesson that you will be teaching soon. Think of sentences where you could use the grammar principle you've chosen when teaching that principle or lesson. For example, you could use both perfective and imperfective tenses to extend commitments and promise blessings, etc. Practice your sentences with your companion and set goals to share them with your investigator(s).
2. Have your companion play the role of a new investigator. Then promise him or her blessings using the present and future tense. Get feedback on your use of tenses.

F. *Missionary Vocabulary and Phrases* Activity

Find sentences in the *Missionary Vocabulary and Phrases* book that can logically be used in any tense (e.g., *Obedience*) and that you can use in an upcoming lesson. Practice changing the tense of the verb of each clause. Practice both perfective and imperfective forms of each verb. Have your companion or a native speaker check your sentences for correctness.

G. Scripture Activities

1. Read Alma 40:9–23. Pay particular attention to how verbs are used in these verses. Write down verbs declinations that are unfamiliar to you. Ask your companion or others to help you understand why each verb is declined the way it is. Then use these verses to practice teaching a native speaker or your companion about what happens when we die. Have them stop and correct you when you make a mistake with verb conjugation.
2. Read Enos 1:1–8 and as you read, write down a list of verbal nouns, adjectives, and adverbs that you find. Then write sentences that you could use to tell this story to an investigator from a third-person point of view, changing the verb conjugations when necessary. Practice teaching the story to your companion or a native speaker and get feedback on how you used verbal nouns, adjectives, and adverbs.

H. Writing Activity

Create a lesson plan about obedience. Write several paragraphs that use the following: the present imperfective tense to teach the general principles of obedience, the future imperfective to tell how God will continually bless those who are obedient, and the future perfective tense to promise an investigator specific blessings for obeying. Throughout your paragraphs use irregular verbs, verbal nouns, adjectives and adverbs, and reflexive pronouns and articles. Have your companion or a native speaker check what you wrote.

Narrating Experiences and Telling Stories

Purpose

This section will help you talk about what happened in the past; for example, what happened to Joseph Smith when he prayed, or what you did to find out the Book of Mormon was true. It will also help you express purpose and intent. The grammar principles in this section are targeted at helping you perform this function. Below are examples of the types of things you will be able to express with the grammar in this section.

- I **made** a covenant with God **so that** I could be clean. (Past Tense, L-form, and Aby)
- **Through** Jesus Christ we can be saved. (Prepositions)
- Joseph Smith was **called** of God. (Passive Voice)

Application

Below is a list of doctrinal points that these grammar principles will help you teach, as well as some common missionary tasks that they will help you perform. This list is not comprehensive; it is meant to help you think about how you can use the grammar in real situations. In parentheses next to each point are some sample questions that you can ask yourself to help you think about how to apply the grammar.

Doctrines from the Lessons

- The Savior's Earthly Ministry (What did Christ do while on the earth?)
- The Great Apostasy (What happened during the Apostasy? What caused it to happen?)
- The Restoration of the Gospel of Jesus Christ (How was Joseph Smith called as a prophet? What did God ask him to do?)
- The Book of Mormon (How did we come to have the Book of Mormon?)
- The Pre-Earth Life (What happened before we came to earth?)
- Creation (How was the world created? How were we created?)
- Agency and the Fall (What did God command Adam and Eve to do? Why did they fall? What happened as a result?)

Tasks from the *Missionary Vocabulary and Phrases* Book

- Follow Up on Commitments (Did they keep the commitment? Why or why not?)
- Share an Experience (What has happened in your life to help you know the truth?)

Past Tense, L-form, and *Aby*

Examples

Satan wanted Adam and Eve **to eat** the forbidden fruit.	Satan chcel, **aby** Adam a Eva **jedli** zakázané ovocie.
Joseph Smith **lived** at a time of great religious excitement.	Joseph Smith **žil** počas doby veľkého náboženského rozruchu.
Heavenly Father has **prepared** a plan for us.	Nebeský Otec **pripravil** pre nás plán.

Explanation

In Slovak the L-form is a form of the verb that ends in L, hence the term L-form. It isn't useful to think of it as having a precise meaning or usage on its own, but it is used as a component in several important grammar principles; it is used in forming **past tense, aby,** and **conditional**. All verbs can be changed into the L-form with a three-step process. The following charts explains the process for L-form:

L-form

To conjugate verbs into the L-form:

1. For most verbs, drop the final ***-ť.***	2. Add ***-l*** to the end of the word.	3. Add -a, -o, or -i for gender and quantity. Gender is added only for L-form in ***ja, ty, on, ona, ono,*** or corresponding persons. L-form in ***my, vy,*** and ***oni/oni*** are always plural. Below are all possible forms.			
hovori**ť**	hovori**l**	**(Ja)**	hovori**l**	**(My)**	hovori**li**
			hovori**la**		
		(Ty)	hovori**l**	**(Vy)**	hovori**li**
			hovori**la**		
		(On)	hovori**l**	**(Oni/Ony)**	hovori**li**
		(Ona)	hovori**la**		
		(Ono)	hovori**lo**		

Note: For verbs ending in *-ieť* the *i* drops with the *-ť* and an *-l* is added (ex. mus**ieť** g mus**el**)

The following chart gives some common verbs and their L-forms.

mať	→	mal	povedať	→	povedal	písať	→	písal	robiť	→	robil
učiť	→	učil	pripraviť	→	pripravil	zostať	→	zostal	dostať	→	dostal
pracovať	→	pracoval	potrebovať	→	potreboval	študovať	→	študoval	priať	→	prial
vidieť	→	videl	chcieť	→	chcel	umyť	→	umyl	počuť	→	počul

L-form of Verbs Ending in -Nuť

Verbs ending in *-núť* will conjugate into L-form as explained above only when the *-núť* ending is preceded by a vowel. When the *-núť* is preceded by a consonant, the *-núť* is dropped and replaced with *-ol.*

***-núť* preceded by vowel**	***-núť* preceded by consonant**
rozvinúť → rozvinul	rozhodnúť → rozhod**o**l
spočinúť → spočinul	sadnúť → sad**o**l

Note: In this latter case, if a vowel is applied for gender or quantity, the *o* of the *-ol* drops (ex. rozhod**núť** → rozhod**ol** → rozhod**li**).

Common Irregular L-forms

Many verbs ending in *-ct́, -st́,* and *-zt́* have irregular L-forms. Almost all irregular L-forms end with *-ol.* The following chart lists some common irregular L-forms. Note how *-zt́* verbs often conjugate to *-zol* and *-ct́* verbs often conjugate to *-kol.*

byť	g	bol	ísť	g	išiel	tiecť	g	tiekol	niesť	g	niesol
vziať	g	vzal	liezť	g	liezol	obliecť	g	obliekol	viesť	g	viedol
môcť	g	mohol	viezť	g	viezol	piecť	g	piekol	rásť	g	rástol

Past Tense, L-form

Note: It may be helpful to review word order in lesson 2 before covering **past tense** and ***aby***.

Formation of the past tense in Slovak requires two parts. One part is the L-form, formed as explained above. The second part is a form of the verb *byť* conjugated according to the person (subject) performing the past tense action. Past tense of all third persons (*on, ona, ono, oni, ony*) is formed without any conjugated *byť*. L-form by itself is, therefore, past tense of the third person.

	som	**sme**	
L-form +	**si**	**ste**	**= Past Tense**
	------	**------**	

The following sentences provide examples of how to use L-form to express past tense:

Boh **poslal** Ježiša Krista do sveta. *God sent Jesus Christ into the world.*	Ježiš **konal** zázraky a **vyučoval** evanjelium. *Jesus performed miracles and taught the gospel.*
Predtým, ako **sme sa narodili, žili sme** s Bohom. *Before we were born, we lived with God.*	Ja **som čítal** Knihu Mormonovu včera. *I read in the Book of Mormon yesterday.*
Ľudia Ho **ukrižovali**. *People crucified Him.*	**Modlili ste sa** za poznanie, že Kniha Mormonova je slovo Božie? *Did you pray for knowledge that the Book of Mormon is the word of God?*

Note: It is very important to include the conjugated form of *byť* for first and second persons. Without including the form of *byť* the sentence will take on a different meaning than intended.

This table summarizes how Slovak verbs are modified in past, present, and future tense.

	Past Tense	**Present Tense**	**Future Tense**
Imperfective *(ned.)*	**L-form verb + conjugated *byť*** **Example:** Čítal si tento týždeň? Did you read this week?	**Conjugated verb** **Example:** **Čítate**? *Are you reading?*	**Future-tense *byť* + Infinitive verb** **Example:** Budete čítať tento týždeň? *Will you read this week?*
Perfective *(dok.)*	**L-form verb + conjugated *byť*** **Example:** **Prečítal si** niečo včera večer? *Did you read something last night?*	***N/A***	**Conjugated verb** **Example:** **Prečítate** niečo dnes večer? *Will you read something tonight?*

For more information on present tense and future tense verbs see lesson 17 and lesson 19.

Aby

Aby can be translated "in order that," "so that," or "in order to." It can be used with many verbs. As with past tense, it is formed using the L-form of the verb and conjugated form of *byť* with *aby*. It conjugates as follows:

aby som *(in order that I...)*	**aby sme** *(in order that we...)*		
aby si *(in order that you...)*	**aby ste** *(in order that you...)*	**+**	**L-form Verb**
aby *(in order that he/she/it...)*	**aby** *(in order that they...)*		

Examples using Aby

Pozvať ostatných, **aby prišli** ku Kristovi. *Invite others to come (so that they come) unto Christ.*	Budeme vedení Duchom, **aby sme učili** pravdu. *We will be lead by the Spirit to teach (so that we teach) the truth.*
Budete sa modliť, **aby ste zistili**, že evanjelium je pravdivé? *Will you pray to find out (so that you will find out) that the gospel is true?*	Boh vytvoril rodinu, **aby bola** zdrojom šťastia. *God created families to be (so that it will be) a source of happiness.*

Using *Aby* with changing persons: Aby is also used when there are two verbs in a sentence being performed by two different subjects.

Pomáhame ľuďom, **aby sa približovali** k Bohu.
We help people to come closer to God.

In this example, the person ***we*** is performing the action of the verb *to help*, but the person ***oni (people)*** is performing the action of the verb *to come closer. Aby* must be used to show that the person is changing from one verb to the next. **Merely conjugating one verb and leaving the other in infinitive form will not communicate the intended change of person.**

Wanting someone else to do something- Similar to the explained change of persons, *aby* is commonly used with the verb *chcieť* (to want) to express that a person wants someone else to do something. *Aby* must be used in this context. The following sentences are examples of *aby* used with *chcieť*:

Boh **chce, aby sme sa vrátili** k Nemu.
God wants us to return to Him.

Satan **chce, aby sme sa poddali** pokušeniu.
Satan wants us to give in to temptation.

Boh **chce, aby sme sa stali** takými, ako je On.
God wants us to become like He is.

Activities

A. Conjugation

Conjugate the following verbs in the past tense in a verb tree on a separate sheet of paper. Check your answers.

1. dostať *(to receive)*
2. dodržiavať *(to keep)*
3. byť *(to be)*
4. mať *(to have)*
5. existovať *(to be (exist))*
6. viesť *(to lead)*
7. môcť *(to be able to)*
8. rozumieť *(to understand)*
9. stretnúť *(to meet)*
10. odpočinúť si *(to rest)*

B. Fill in the Blank

On a separate sheet of paper, write the correct form of the verb in past tense (or with aby) that should go in each blank. Check your answers.

1. (Poznať) (vy) ___ Boha pred týmto životom.
2. Adam a Eva (jesť) ___ zakázané ovocie.
3. Boh chce, aby (my) ___ (vrátiť sa) k nemu.
4. Ježiš Kristus (vykonať) ___ uzmierenie a vzkriesenie.
5. Boh a Ježiš Kristus (oni) ___ (zjaviť sa) Josephovi Smithovi.
6. Kniha Mormonova ___ (byť) preložená Josephom Smithom.
7. Ježiš ___ (povolať) apoštolov počas Jeho života.
8. (Ja) ___ (čítať) Knihu Mormonovu a viem, že je pravdivá.
9. Počas odpadlíctva ľudia (oni) ne___ (mať) kňazskú právamoc.
10. Tí, ktorí (oni) ___ (pokračovať) vo svojich hriechoch v tomto živote, obdžia najnižšie kráľovstvo.
11. Prosíme Ťa, aby (ty) ___ nás ___ (požehnať) s Tvojím Duchom.
12. Boh nám dal túto pozemskú skúsenosť, aby (my) ___ sa ___ (môcť) učiť a rásť.

C. Sentence Conversion

Each of these sentences is in the present tense or future tense. Convert each sentence to the past tense. Check your answers.

Example: Boh má pre nás plán. → Boh mal pre nás plán.

1. Proroci svedčia o Kristovi.
2. Joseph Smith sa modlí za poznanie.
3. Apoštoli sú povolaní Bohom.
4. Ježiš prekoná fyzickú smrť.
5. Mojžiš hovorí s Bohom a dostane prikázanie.
6. Čítam Knihu Mormonovu každé ráno.
7. Študujete o viere v Knihe Mormonovej?
8. Joseph Smith sa učí od anjela Moroniho.
9. Boh ukáže svoju lásku k nám prostredníctvom rodiny.
10. Vidíme Božiu ruku v našich životoch.
11. Pôjdeme na zem a zabudneme na náš predpozemský život.
12. Boh nás požehnáva so všetkým, čo potrebujeme.

D. Translate

On a separate sheet of paper, translate the following sentences into Slovak using the principles you have learned about *past tense,* L-form, and *aby*. Check your answers.

1. God wants us to be happy.
2. We must study and pray in order for us to know the Book of Mormon is true.
3. We came to earth so that we could receive a body and to be tested.
4. Christ atoned for our sins so that we can return to live with God.
5. Joseph Smith prayed to find out which church was true.
6. Will you pray in order to know that what we have taught you is true?
7. In order to be able to teach the gospel, God calls prophets.
8. We invite all people to come unto Christ.
9. You show your faith when you do all that the Lord wants you to do.

E. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answers against the ones listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. Joseph Smith ***bola** mladý muž, keď mal videnie.
   Joseph Smith was a young man when he had a vision.
2. Kristus **je *založil** cirkev počas jeho života na zemi.
   Christ established the Church during His life on earth.
3. Oni ***hovoril** s ním o znovuzriadení evanjelia.
   They spoke with him about the Restoration of the gospel.
4. Kristus trpel, aby ste sa ***môžete** kajať.
   Christ suffered so you could repent.
5. ***Nemohli** napredovať bez slobobnej voľe.
   We couldn't progress without free agency.
6. Boh poslal Krista na zem, aby nás ***spasiť.**
   God sent Christ to earth to save us.
7. Ak si sa v tomto živote ***rozhodnul** poslúchať Boha . . .
   If you have chosen to obey God in this life . . .
8. Ja ***čítal** tú kapitolu o poslušnosti.
   I read the chapter about obedience.
9. Čo musím zmeniť, aby som ***rozviol** túto vlastnosť?
   What must I change to develop this attribute?
10. My ju ***pozvali,** aby ***prišiel** na zhromždenie s nami.
    We invited her to come to church with us.
11. Ako vaše štúdium evanjelia ***ovplyvnil** váš život?
    How has your study of the gospel affected your life?
12. Učte tak, aby ľudia ***sú** činili záväzky.
    Teach so that people make commitments.

F. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key. For any questions that you miss, write at least two sentences that you could use in your teaching today that use the correct form of the word.

1. Chcel sme vás učiť o vzkriesení.
2. Kristus povedal, že máme slúžiť druhým.
3. Kedy si sa dali pokrstiť a stali si sa členom cirkvi?
4. Žili som s Bohom pred týmto životom.
5. Joseph Smith bol povolaný Bohom, aby znovuzriadil evanjelium Ježiša Krista.
6. V Knihe Mormonovej čítame o prorokoch, ktorí napísali o Ježišovi Kristovi.
7. Oni vziali na seba meno Krista.
8. Moroni chce, aby poznali tieto dôležité pravdy.
9. Zlí ľudia neposlucholi apoštolov po smrti Ježiša Krista.
10. Dohodnuli sme sa na stretnutí.

G. Language Study Plan Activities

1. Find a scripture that you could frequently use while teaching that uses the *past tense*. Memorize the scripture and practice using it to teach your companion a principle it contains or illustrates. See if you can think of phrases that use *past tense* in a similar way to your scripture and incorporate them into your teaching.
2. Listen carefully when native speakers talk. Try to anticipate when they will use *past tense* before they actually use it by listening for triggers such as, "Mám príbeh o..." "Predtým som..." etc.
3. Create sentences using the *past tense* and add them to your lesson plans. Go over your lesson plans and correct any errors where past tense should have been used but wasn't or was misused. After making the corrections, have your companion check over your lesson plans.

H. Companion Activities

1. Review your companionship goals and personal goals from the past week. Discuss each goal and whether you achieved your goal. Focus on how you use *past tense* and *L-form.*

   Example:

   Goal – Find four new investigators.

   Sentence – Našli sme štyroch nových záujemcov.

2. With your companion, go over each of your investigators. Discuss together what things need to happen in order for them to come unto Christ and be baptized. To do this, you will need to use *aby* with *l-form*. In many cases, you will need to combine these with present tenses.

   Example: Matúš potrebuje čítať Knihu Mormonovu a modliť sa, aby získal svedectvo o pravdivosti evanjelia.

   Discuss what you can do to help your investigators progress and receive the blessings you talked about.

I. Scripture Activities

1. Read the Úvod in the Book of Mormon. Write out the *past tense* statements that are used. Check your answers.
2. Read Ján 3:14–17 and "Uzmierenie" on page 51 of *Kážte Moje Evanjelium*. Pay particular attention to uses of *past tense, L-form,* and *aby*. Then use these resources to teach your companion why the Savior had to complete the Atonement and why it is important for us to follow His example and be baptized.

J. Learn with a Native

Ask a member to recount his or her conversion story. Focus on the use of the principles taught in this lesson and specifically on the use of *past tense*. As you listen, take note of any phrases you don't understand or are unsure of. After he or she has finished, share your conversion story and ask for feedback. Apply what you learn from this activity into your teaching.

K. Learn with Your District

As a district, discuss some of the successful finding activities you have done in the past week. Talk about what you did in your contacting and tracting. Also, describe what you talked about with the people you met. Listen to experienced Slovak speakers and their use of the principles taught in this lesson. Apply the principles in this lesson when describing your activities.

Prepositions

Examples

What did you read **in** the Book of Mormon?	Čo ste prečítali **v** Knihe Mormonovej?
On the Sabbath day we rest **from** our labors.	**Na** sabatný deň odpočívame **z** našej práce.
Eternal life is to live **with** God.	Večný život znamená žiť **s** Bohom.
Eternal marriage **between** a man and a woman is ordained of God.	Večné manželstvo **medzi** mužom a ženou je ustanovené Bohom.

Explanation

Prepositions are words that help to explain or describe actions, nouns, and relationships. They often answer the questions how, when, where, and which. Nouns following prepositions change case depending on the preposition. Here are the prepositions used in Slovak with their cases and definitions.

Preposition	Definition	Examples
Second Case		
bez	*bez* means **without**	**Bez** apoštolov sa časom náuka zmenila. *Without the apostles, doctrine was changed with time.*
		Nikto nemôže poznať duchovné pravdy **bez** modlitby. *No one can know spiritual truths without prayer.*
blízko	*blízko* means **near**	Rieka je **blízko** nášho mesta. *The river is near our town.*
		Jospeh Smith išiel do lesa **blízko** jeho domu. *Joseph Smith went into the woods near his house.*
do	*do* means **by** (within time), **until** (point in time), **to**, or **into**	Vytrvať až **do** konca. *To endure to the end.*
		Ideme **do** Bratislavy. *We are going to Bratislava.*
mimo	*mimo* means **outside of**	Bývajú **mimo** Bratislavy. *They live outside of Bratislava.*
		Býva **mimo** Košíc. *He lives outside of Košice.*
namiesto	*namiesto* means **instead of** or **in place of**	Jozef ide **namiesto** mňa. *Joseph is going instead of me.*
		Namiesto toho. *Instead of that.*
od	*od* means **from** or **away from**	Vedenie **od** Ducha Svätého. *Guidance from the Holy Ghost.*
		Cieľom evanjelia je, aby boli ľudia očistení **od** svojich hriechov. *The purpose of the gospel is to cleanse people of their sins.*
okolo	*okolo* means: **around, past, approximately,** or **about**	Je **okolo** nás toľko zla. *There is so much evil around us.*
		Máme stretnutie **okolo** druhej hodiny. *We have a meeting at about two o'clock.*

okrem	*okrem* means **except** or **besides**	Nebudeš mať iných bohov **okrem** mňa. *Thou shalt have no other gods before me.*
		Okrem toho sa máme neustále zdokonaľovať. *In addition, we should continually improve.*
počas	*počas* means **during**	**Počas** jeho služby povolal Ježiš apoštolov. *During His ministry, Jesus called Apostles.*
		Kapitoly študujte **počas** celej vašej misie. *Study the chapters throughout your mission.*
podľa	*podľa* means **according to, in accordance, with,** or **by**	Študujte **podľa** témy. *Study by topic.*
		Žijú **podľa** evanjelia. *They live according to the gospel.*
pozdĺž	*pozdĺž* means **along** or **alongside**	Chodíme **pozdĺž** rieky. *We go along the river.*
		Pozdĺž jazera. *Along the lake.*
prostredníctvom	*prostredníctvom* means **through**	Prísť ku Kristovi **prostredníctvom** viery. *Come unto Christ through faith.*
		Môžeme poznať pravdu **prostredníctvom** Ducha. *We can know the truth through the Spirit.*
u	*u* means **at** or **at someone's place**	My sme **u** Kováčovcov. *We are at the Kováčovci's place.*
		Stretneme sa **u** vás? *Are we meeting at your place?*
uprostred	*uprostred* means **in the middle**	**Uprostred** tejto vojny slov . . . *In the midst of this war of words . . .*
		Stojím **uprostred** miestnosti. *I'm standing in the middle of the room.*
vedľa	*vedľa* means **beside** or **next to**	Sedí **vedľa** mňa. *He sits next to me.*
		Joseph Smith videl Ježiša Krista **vedľa** Otca. *Joseph Smith saw Jesus Christ next to the Father.*
z(o)	*z* means **out of** or **from**	**Z** kapitoly 3 sa môžete naučit . . . *From chapter 3 you can learn . . .*
		Ja som **z** Utahu. *I am from Utah.*
za	*za* means **during**	**Za** veľkého odpadlíctva . . . *During the Great Apostasy . . .*
		Za doby Noeho . . . *During the time of Noah . . .*
Third Case		
k(u)	*k* means **to, unto**, or **towards**	Pozvať ostatných, aby prišli **ku** Kristovi. *Invite others to come unto Christ.*
		Ideme **k** Jánovi. *We're going to Jan's.*
kvôli	*kvôli* means **because of**	**Kvôli** tomuto rozhodnutiu boli vyhnaní zo záhrady. *Because of this choice, they were cast from the garden.*
		Všetci potrebujeme božskú milosť **kvôli** hriechu. *Everyone needs God's mercy because of sin.*
napriek	*napriek* means **despite**	**Napriek** tomu, že táto príručka hovorí o zboroch . . . *Despite that, this manual refers to wards . . .*
		Napriek tomu by ste sa nemali dať znechutiť. *Despite that, you should not become discouraged.*

naproti	*naproti* means **across from**	Bývajú **naproti** nám. *They live across from us.*
		Naproti tomu. *Across from that.*
proti	*proti* means **against**	Vzbura **proti** autorite a zavrhnutie prorokov. *Rebellion against authority and rejection of prophets.*
		Nevyslovíš krivé svedectvo **proti** svojmu blížnemu. *Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbor.*
vd'aka	*vd'aka* means **thanks to** or **because of**	**Vd'aka** uzmiereniu Ježiša Krista . . . *Thanks to the Atonement of Jesus Christ . . .*
		Vd'aka znovuzriadeniu rozumieme Božiemu zámeru. *Because of the Restoration, we understand God's plan.*
voči	*voči* means **towards (feeling)**	Majú výhrady **voči** nemu. *They have reservations against him.*
		Aký máte názor **voči** tomu? *What's your opinion towards that?*
Fourth Case		
cez	*cez* means **across** or **through**	Pracujeme **cez** deň. *We work through the day.*
		Išli **cez** ulicu. *They went across the street.*
na	*na* means **for (a purpose)**	Ako mám pripraviť ľudí **na** krst a konfirmáciu? *How do I prepare people for baptism and confirmation?*
		Krst je **na** odpustenie hriechov. *Baptism is for the remission of sins.*
pre	*pre* means **for (someone or something)** or **for the benefit of**	Kážte Moje Evanjelium je **pre** misionárov. *Preach My Gospel is for missionaries.*
		Boh má plán **pre** rodiny. *God has a plan for families.*
za	*za* means **in exchange for** or **on behalf of**	Kristus trpel **za** naše hriechy. *Christ suffered for our sins.*
		Mali by sme mu ďakovať **za** . . . *We should thank him for . . .*
Fourth Case Motion		
medzi	*medzi* means **between** or **among**	Idem **medzi** nich. *I'll go (stand/sit/be) between them.*
		Ideme **medzi** autá. *We're going in-between the cars.*
na	*na* means **to an event, on(to), for (purpose),** or **for (intended time)**	Ideme **na** zhromaždenie. *We are going to sacrament meeting.*
		Kristus prišiel **na** zem. *Christ came to earth.*
nad	*nad* means **over** or **above**	Moje neprávosti siahajú **nad** moju hlavu. *(Žalmy 38:4)* *My iniquities are gone over my head. (Psalms 38:4)*
		Zavesím obraz **nad** posteľ. *I'll hang the picture above the bed.*
pod	*pod* means **under** or **below**	Omrvinka padla **pod** stôl. *A crumb fell under the table.*
		Idem **pod** strom kvôli dažďu. *I am going under the tree because of the rain.*
pred	*pred* means **in front of** or **before**	Položil som mačku **pred** váš dom. *I put the cat in front of your home.*
		Musíme ísť **pred** Boha pri poslednom súde. *We must go before God at the last judgment.*

za	*za* means **behind** or **beyond**	Zmizli, ako bežali **za** dom. *They disappeared as they ran behind the house.*
		Sadnem si **za** vás. *I will sit behind you.*
Sixth Case		
na	*na* means **on** or **at**	Ja som **na** stanici. *I am at the station.*
		Evanjelium Ježiša Krista je zasa **na** zemi. *The gospel of Jesus Christ is on the earth again.*
o	*o* means **about** or **at (time)**	Posolstvo **o** znovuzriadení evanjelia Ježiša Krista. *The message about the Restoration of the gospel of Jesus Christ.*
		Svedectvo **o** evanjeliu je dôležité. *A testimony about the gospel is important.*
po	*po* means **after, along,** or **all over**	**Po** smrti Ježiša Krista . . . *After the death of Jesus Christ . . .*
		Kristus chodil **po** Jeruzaleme. *Christ went all over Jerusalem.*
pri	*pri* means **close, at hand, at, upon, near,** or **next to**	Choďte, dobre činiac a slúžiac ľud'om **pri** každej príležitosti. *Go about doing good and serving people at every opportunity.*
		Učte sa naspamäť písma, ktoré požívate **pri** výučbe. *Memorize scriptures to use in your teaching.*
v(o)	*v* means **in**	Všetky kapitoly **v** príručke *Kážte Moje Evanjelium.* *All of the chapters in Preach My Gospel.*
		Pokrstený **v** Kristovom mene. *Baptized in Christ's name.*
Seventh Case		
medzi	*medzi* means **between** or **amongst**	Zmluva je dohoda **medzi** Bohom a jeho det'mi. *A covenant is an agreement between God and His children.*
		Manželstvo **medzi** mužom a ženou je ustanovené Bohom. *Marriage between a man and a woman is ordained of God.*
nad	*nad* means **above** or **over**	Joseph videl stĺp svetla **nad** svojou hlavou. *Joseph saw a pillar of light above his head.*
		Stojace **nad** ním . . . *Standing above him . . .*
pod	*pod* means **under** or **below**	**Pod** vedením misijného prezidenta. *Under the direction of the mission president.*
		Používajte poznámky **pod** čiarou ako zdroj. *Use the footnotes as a resource.*
pred	*pred* means **in front of, before, before (time),** or **ago**	Budú stáť v posledný deň **pred** Kristom. *They will stand before Christ at the last day.*
		Pred dvoma tisícimi rokov . . . *Two thousand years ago . . .*
s(o)	*s* means **with**	Ako spolupracovať **s** vedúcimi kolu a zboru? *How do I work with stake and ward leaders?*
		Stretnutie **so** záujemcami. *A meeting with investigators.*
za	*za* means **behind** or **beyond**	Stojím **za** vami. *I am standing behind you.*
		Za rohom je námestie. *The town square is around (behind) the corner.*

Note: Many prepositions will decline the nouns they modify into different cases depending on the way they're used. Some examples of these are given in various lessons in this book (see lessons 36–39 on cases for examples).

Prepositions

Every preposition in Slovak has a particular case associated with it. The preposition always precedes the noun it is going to decline and the noun will decline into the case associated with that particular preposition.

Examples:

Zjavuje svoj plán šťastia **pre jednotlivcov** a **rodiny**.
He reveals His plan of happiness for individuals and families.

Dáme sa pokrstiť ponorením **na odpustenie** hriechov.
We are baptized by immersion for the remission (forgiveness) of sins.

Pre, Za, and Na

Pre, Za, and Na all translate as "for" in English. As these three prepositions can easily get mixed up, we've provided additional examples and explanations.

Type	Use	Examples	Translation
Pre	1. Intended for	Boh má **pre** nás plán.	*God has a plan **for** us. (The plan is **intended** for us.)*
	2. Relationship	**Pre** mňa to nie je ľahké.	***For** me it isn't easy.*
	3. Goal-directed	Idem **pre** mlieko.	*I'm going **for** milk. (**Goal** is to get milk.)*
Za	1. Exchange	Ďakujem vám **za** darček.	*Thank you **for** the gift.*
	2. Reward	**Za** svoju prácu dostala cenu.	***For** her work she received the prize.*
	3. Cost	Môžeš si to kúpiť **za** euro.	*You can buy it **for** a euro.*
Na	1. Purpose	Pripravuje sa **na** vyúčbu.	*He's preparing to teach. (For the **purpose** of teaching.)*
	2. Event	Idem **na** zhromaždenie.	*I'm going to church. (Going for an **event** of church.)*

Expressions

Many Slovak expressions involve verbs that use prepositions followed by nouns declined into a different case than normally mandated by the preposition. A Slovak dictionary can be a valuable source for understanding how prepositions are used in these instances. Some examples of these exceptions are given below. See lessons 36–39 on cases for more examples.

Examples:

Od počiatku sveta prejavuje svoju lásku a svoj **záujem o svoje deti**.
From the beginning of the world He has shown His love and His interest in His children.

Veríme v neho, dôverujeme mu a **spoliehame sa na neho**.
We believe in Him, we trust Him and rely on Him.

Expression	Translation	Examples	Translation
spoliehať sa na + (Fourth Case)	*to rely on*	Spoliehame sa na Neho.	*We rely on Him.*
ísť o + (Fourth Case)	*to go about*	V našom posolstve ide o to, ako . . .	*Our message is about how . . .*
mať záujem o + (Fourth Case)	*to have interest about*	Má záujem o vaše posolstvo.	*He's interested in your message.*
modliť sa za + (Fourth Case)	*to pray for*	Modlia sa za silu.	*They pray for strength.*
prosiť o + (Fourth Case)	*to ask for*	Prosíme o pomoc.	*We ask for help.*
žiadame o + (Fourth Case)	*to ask for*	Žiadame o požehnanie.	*We ask for a blessing.*
(any verb) v + (Fourth Case)	*on a certain day*	Stretneme sa v stredu.	*We'll meet on Wednesday.*
veriť v + (Fourth Case)	*to believe in something*	Veríte v Ježiša Krista?	*Do you believe in Jesus Christ?*
(Fourth Case)	*for a time*	Čakal hodinu.	*He waited an hour.*

When describing motion or a change of position **toward** or **relative to** a noun following a seventh case preposition, the noun will frequently be declined into the fourth case accusative. Ask members to help you know when to use which case when describing motion.

Example:

Idem **pod** strom kvôli dažďu.
I am going under the tree because of the rain.

Activities

A. Translation

On a separate sheet of paper, write the correct preposition that would be used with the bolded word. Check your answers.

1. *Preach My Gospel* is **for** the full-time missionaries.
2. Together **with** members, teach new converts.
3. Express your love **toward** the Lord and others.
4. **Without** the Apostles, doctrine was changed.
5. Prepare **for** baptism and confirmation.
6. We can read **about** Christ's visit to America **in** 3 Nephi.
7. The way you view the world **around** you.
8. **Thanks to** the Resurrection of Christ, we can all be resurrected.
9. The Book of Mormon testifies **about** Christ.
10. Invite them to live **according to** Christ's teachings.
11. We all need God's mercy **because of** our sins.
12. Effective study **during** your mission will help you grow.
13. **After** the death of Christ, the Apostles were killed.
14. We must endure **to** the end.
15. What do you learn **from** this story?
16. We will stand at the last day **before** Christ.

B. Za, Pre, and Na

Fill in the blank below with the correct fourth case preposition.

1. Ježiš Kristus ____ nás prekonal túto prekážku fyzickej smrti.
2. Budeme lepšie pripravení ____ život s Nebeským Otcom.
3. Boh nám ____ naše dobro dal prikázania.
4. Evanjelium Ježiša Krista je vzorom ____ život.
5. Keď sa budete pripravovať ____ stretnutia so záujemcami . . .
6. Zjavuje pravdy nevyhnutné ____ spásu.
7. Vždy vyjadrite svoju vďačnosť ____ svoje požehnania.
8. Potom si s ním prejdite svoje plány ____ nasledujúci deň.

C. Fill in the Blank

On a separate sheet of paper, write the preposition that would complete each sentence. Check your answers.

1. Ak sme hodní, môžeme sa vrátiť ___ *(to)* Bohu.
2. Chceme študovať ___ *(about)* Josephovi Smithovi.
3. Desiatok je prikázanie ___ *(from)* Boha.
4. Ideme ___ (to) zhromaždenie.
5. Čo sa stane ___ *(after)* tomto živote?
6. Náš záujemca pracuje ___ *(through)* deň.
7. Prečo som tu ___ *(on)* zemi?
8. Stretneme sa ___ *(at)* vás?
9. Čítame ___ *(in)* Knihe Mormonovej . . .
10. ___ *(After)* smrti Ježiša Krista boli apoštoli zabití.
11. ___ *(before)* naším životom na zemi . . .
12. Keď pracujete ___ *(among)* jeho deťmi.

D. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answer against the one listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. Veríte ***v** Ježišovi Kristovi?
   Do you believe in Jesus Christ?
2. Štúdium ***s** spoločníkom je dôležité.
   Companionship study is important.
3. ***Z** kapitolu tri sa môžete naučiť . . .
   From chapter three you can learn . . .
4. Ideme ***do** zhromaždenie.
   We're going to church.
5. Každý človek ***na** zem je Božím dieťaťom.
   Every person on the earth is a child of God.
6. Pozvať ostatných, aby prišli ***k** Kristovi.
   We don't pray with vain repititions, but from the heart.

E. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key.

1. Stretneme sa s Jánom.
2. Študovať náuky z Knihe Mormonovej.
3. Nebeský Otec poslal Svojho Syna na zemi.
4. Proroci a apoštoli svedčia o Spasiteľovi.
5. Počas život na zemi sme fyzicky oddelení od Boha.
6. Spoliehame sa na milosť Ježiša Krista.
7. Môžeme získať večný život v Božej prítomnosti.
8. Viera nás motivuje k pokánie.
9. Pracujte medzi Jeho deti.
10. Pán nám sľubuje požehnanie ochranou proti zlu.

F. Learn with Your Companion

Speak Slovak with your companion during your nightly planning. Discuss where you will be going and who you will be meeting with the next day. Use the appropriate prepositions in your discussion. Ask your companion for feedback and help.

G. *Preach My Gospel* Activity

In *Preach My Gospel,* read section "Veľke Odpadlíctvo." While you read, look for and discuss the prepositions used with your companion. Make sure you understand how each preposition is used and the context with which it is used. When you finish reading and discussing, teach your companion about the Great Apostasy using similar prepositions to those found in your reading.

H. Learn with a Native Speaker

Meet with a native speaker and practice asking questions about themselves using prepositions (ex. Where are you from? Do you attend church?). Listen to their responses and notice how they use prepositions to answer your questions. Ask them for feedback and have them correct your use of prepositions if needed.

I. Language Study Plan Activities

1. As you read your scriptures, *Kážte Moje Evanjelium* and other materials in Slovak, pay attention to how prepositions are used. Pay attention particular attention to how prepositions are used in expressions.
2. Memorize one of the scriptures from Activity E or choose another scripture that uses prepositions. Be able to teach your scripture using the principles from chapter 10.
3. Listen to how natives use prepositions, especially for set phrases or constructions. Imitate these in your own speech.

Passive Voice

Examples

After the Resurrection of Jesus Christ, the Apostles **were killed.**	Po vzkriesení Ježiša Krista **boli** apoštoli **zabití.**
We **are promised** eternal life as we endure to the end.	**Je** nám **sľúbený** večný život, keď vytrváme do konca.
Tithes and offerings **are considered** sacred and belong to the Lord.	Desiatky a obete **sú považované** za sväté a patria Pánovi.
Members of the Church **are counseled** to obey the law.	Členovia cirkvi **sú nabádaní,** aby poslúchali zákon.

Explanation

Two sentences can be put together differently, but have the same basic meaning.

Example:

Active Voice	Passive Voice
God **called** Joseph. →	Joseph was **called** of God.

Notice how **passive voice** is used to change the emphasis of the sentence. In the first sentence **(active voice)**, the subject (God) performs the action and is emphasized, whereas in the second sentence **(passive voice)** the subject (Joseph) receives the action.

The first sentence would be an appropriate answer to the question: "Who called Joseph to be a prophet?" because it emphasizes God's role. The second sentence would be an appropriate answer to the question: "How was Joseph called?" because it emphasizes Joseph.

Note: The direct object of the active sentence becomes the subject of the passive sentence.

Sentences using passive voice in this way will always use a form of the verb "to be" together with a **passive verbal adjective** (called the **passive participle**). These two elements together make up the passive voice. However, the passive participle is used frequently on its own as an adjective describing a noun. The passive participle is formed in a very similar way to the passive verbal noun from lesson 20.

Passive Sentence Structure

In Slovak, sentences in the passive voice follow the pattern below:

						Optional Phrase
Subject	+	byť	+	passive participle	+	agent *(the doer of the action)*
Joseph		**bol**		**povolaný**		**Bohom.**
Joseph		was		called		God.

Passive Sentence Structure

1. Take the infinitive form. Drop the ending.	2. Add the corresponding ending.
povol**ať**	povol**aný**
milov**ať**	milov**aný**
strat**iť**	strat**ený**
zabud**núť**	zabud**nutý**

All verbs ending in *-ať,* including *-ovať* and *-stať,* become passive participles by dropping the *ať* and adding *-aný*.

All verbs ending in *-iť, -ieť,* or *-ať* become passive participles by dropping the final two or three letters and adding *-ený*.

All verbs ending in *-núť* become passive participles by replacing *-núť* with *-nutý*.

Note: Some verbs, commonly those with short infinitive roots, form a passive particle by dropping the final *ť* and adding *tý*. See the example of *zabiť* below. Some verbs with an irregular stem use that stem for the passive participle. See the example of *nájsť* below.

Other Passive Participles

Inf.	Past P.	Inf.	Past P.	Inf.	Past P.
preložiť	**preložený**	poslať	**poslaný**	odmietnuť	**odmietnutý**
zjaviť	**zjavený**	napísať	**napísaný**	zabudnúť	**zabudnutý**
pripraviť	**pripravený**	vyučovať	**vyučovaný**	poskytnúť	**poskytnutý**
vidieť	**videný**	potrebovať	**potrebovaný**	získať	**získaný**
zabiť	**zabitý**	prekliať	**prekliaty**	nájsť	**nájdený**

Note: The passive participle is an **adjective** and must agree in number and gender with the subject.

Examples:

Budeme výkup**ení** Kristom. ***We** are **redeemed** by Christ.*	**Kvetka** bola pokrsten**á** včera. ***Kvetka** was **baptized** yesterday.*

Passive Participles used as Adjectives and Nouns

Passive participles are commonly used as adjectives and occasionally as nouns. When doing so, the passive particle will always decline as an adjective (see lesson 10, "Adjective-Noun Agreement"). Note that passive particles can follow the noun(s) they describe as shown in the first of the following examples.

Example Sentences	Explanation of Declination
Odmeňuje každého podľa skutkov **vykonaných** v tele. *He rewards everyone according to the works done in the body.*	*Vykonaných* (adj.) declines to match the **masculine, plural** noun (*skutkov*) it describes in gender, case, and number.
Sme povolaní učiť ľudí **o znovuzriadených** pravdách. *We are called to teach people about restored truths.*	*Znovuzriadených* (adj.) declines to match the **feminine, plural** noun (*pravdách*) it describes in gender, case, and number.
Naplánujte stretnutie **s** novo **obrátenými**. *Plan lessons with the newly converted.*	*Obrátenými* (noun) declines as a **masculine, plural** adjective. It is cased according to the **seventh case** preposition s.

Note: Passive participles *are not* the same as active verbal adjectives and passive verbal nouns. See lesson 20, "Verbal Nouns, Adjectives, and Adverbs," for examples.

Activities

A. Translation

Translate the following sentences into Slovak using passive voice structure. Check your answers.

1. The authority was lost.
2. Ordinances are performed.
3. Blessings are promised.
4. The gospel is taught.
5. Covenants are made.
6. Truth is revealed.
7. Doctrine is maintained.
8. Principles are learned.
9. Miracles are performed.
10. The testimonies are written.
11. Lessons are prepared.
12. Power is given.
13. Sins are forgiven.
14. The Church is established.
15. Inspiration is found.

B. Active to Passive

Each of the sentences below is written in the active voice. Change each sentence to the passive voice. Check your answers.

1. Boh umiestnil Adama a Evu v záhrade Eden.
2. Boh povolal prorokov.
3. Kristus vybral dvanásť apoštolov.
4. Joseph znovuzriadil evanjelium Ježiša Krista.
5. Kristus založil svoju cirkev.
6. Farizeji zabili Štefana.
7. Mnohí odmietli učenia Ježiša Krista.
8. Misionári ponúknu službu.
9. Rozvíjame vieru trpezlivosťou.
10. Boh nám dal slobodnú vôľu.
11. Proroci zjavujú Božiu vôľu.
12. Boh nám prikazuje.

C. Passive to Active

The sentences below are written in the passive voice. Change each sentence to the active voice. Where necessary, the agent is given in parentheses. Check your answers.

Example: Písma boli napísané prorokmi. → Proroci napísali písma.

1. Všetci z nás sme stvorení Bohom.
2. Proroci sú inšpirovaní Bohom.
3. Evanjelium bolo rozšírené apoštolmi po smrti Ježiša Krista.
4. Evanjelium Krista bolo vyučované v každej dobe. *(Proroci)*
5. Cirkev bola založená na základe 12 apoštolov. *(Kristus)*
6. Kristus bol poslaný na zem Bohom.
7. Kristus bol ukrižovaný na kríži. *(Farizeji)*
8. Ježiš Kristus bol zabitý zlými vedúcimi.
9. Viera v Ježiša Krista je vyučovaná v Knihe Mormonovej.
10. Boli posilnení prostredníctvom moci Božej.
11. Desať prikázaní boli Mojžišovi zjavené Bohom.
12. Zem bola stvorená Kristom.

D. Fill in the Blank

On a separate sheet of paper, write the correctly declined passive participle that would complete each sentence. Check your answers.

1. Prichádzajú so ___ (zlomiť) srdcom.
2. Ak sa máme stať členmi ___ (znovuzriadiť) Cirkvi...
3. Máme mať vieru v Božieho ___ (vyvoliť) proroka.
4. Precvičovanie postupov ___ (opísať) v príručke.
5. Pozrite na môjho ___ (milovať) Syna.
6. Dajte možnosť novo ___ (obrátiť).
7. Buďte ___ (pripraviť) priniesť obeť v ich prospech.
8. Zoznam otázok ___ (položiť) záujemcami.
9. Vysvetlenie všetkých ___ (poskytnuť) pomôcok.
10. Bol ___ (pozdvihnuť) na kríž.

E. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answer against the one listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. Evanjelium ***boli hlásaní** prorokmi.
   The gospel was preached by prophets.
2. Požehnania môžu byť ***získať** skrze vieru.
   Blessings can be received through faith.
3. Prikázal im, aby nejedli zo ***zakázané** ovocia.
   He commanded them not to eat of the forbidden fruit.
4. Právomoc mu ***bol udelené**.
   The priesthood was conferred to him.
5. Naše hriechy budú ***odpustení,** keď činíme pokánie.
   Our sins will be forgiven when we repent.
6. Apoštoli boli ***vybrení** Ježišom Kristom.
   The Apostles were chosen by Jesus Christ.
7. V chráme sú obrady ***vykonaváť.**
   Ordinances are performed in the temple.
8. Boli sme ***stvoraní** na Boží obraz.
   We were created in the image of God.
9. Cirkev ***bol obnovený** skrze Josepha Smitha.
   The Church was restored through Joseph Smith.
10. Viera vedie k ***oddané** službe.
    Faith leads to devoted service.

F. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key. For any questions that you miss, write at least two sentences that you could use in your teaching today that use the correct form of the word.

1. Je nám prikázaní, aby sme hlásali evanjelium.
2. Písma boli napísali Božími prorokmi.
3. Cirkev bola zorganizovaná zjavením od Boha.
4. Viera je daná ako dar Ducha.
5. Krst je ustanovaný Bohom.
6. Kristus bol odmietnuť svojím ľudom.
7. Toto kráľovstvo je prirovnané k sláve slnka.
8. Duch Svätý bol poslať po smrti Ježiša Krista.
9. Všetci budú súdení podľa svojich skutkov.
10. Kňazská právomoc bol stratená po smrti apoštolov.

G. Companion Activity

Using the passive voice, write down as many sentences as you can describing how tithing is used and what it is used for. Think of an investigator to whom you will be teaching tithing in the near future and have your companion act as that investigator.

H. *Preach My Gospel* Activity

In *Preach My Gospel,* read the section "Veľke odpadlíctvo" on page 34. Write down all passive voice sentence constructions. Check your answers. With your companion, practice converting sentences in this section from active voice to passive voice and vice versa.

Example: Po smrti Ježiša Krista prenasledovali hriešni ľudia apoštolov . . .

Po smrti Ježiša Krista apoštoli boli prenasledovaní hriešnymi ľudmi . . .

I. Scripture Activity

Read ev. Sv. Lukáša 13:10–13. Write down all the passive voice constructions. Check your answers. Then teach your companion the story recounted in those verses, focusing on using passive voice as much as possible.

J. Language Study Plan Activities

1. Have your English and Slovak copies of *Preach My Gospel* side by side. As you read in English, try to predict where the passive voice would be used in Slovak and whether there might be a reflexive verb to use instead. Use your Slovak copy of *Preach My Gospel* to check your answers.
2. Listen carefully for the passive voice. Try to imitate natives' use of the passive voice to make your own speech more natural. You may want to write down verbs and phrases that natives frequently use with the passive voice where you might have used active voice.

Review: Narrating Experiences and Telling Stories

This review will help you see how well you have learned the material in the previous section. It will also help you evaluate your ability to apply several different grammar principles you have learned in performing the following function:

Narrating Experiences and Telling Stories

- Past Tense, L-Form, and Aby
- Prepositions
- Passive Voice

Activities

A. Error Correction

On a separate sheet of paper, rewrite the paragraph below, correcting the 10 errors in it. Check your answers.

> Po smrti Ježiša Krista boli apoštoli a členovia Cirkvi prenasledovaní. Mnohí z nich byli zabití. Bez apoštolov sa časom náuka skazil. Falošné myšlienky boli vyučovaný ako pravda. Náuky o viere v Ježiša Krista, pokání, krste a dare Ducha Svätého boli prekrútili a zabudli. Kňazská právomoc, udelená Kristovým apoštolom, sa nad zemi už nenachádzala. Keď nastali správne podmienky, Boh je vyniesol na svetlo dávne sväté písmo, zrovnateľné s Bibliou, ktoré obsahuje plnosť večného evanjelia Ježiša Krista. Aby mohli zistiť, či je Kniha Mormonova pravdivá, musíme ju čítať, premýšľať nad ňou a musíme sa za ňu modliť. Ja som bol požehnan so znalosťou, že evanjelium Ježiša Krista je pravdivé. Viem, pretože modlil som sa za potvrdenie.

B. Error Correction

On a separate sheet of paper, rewrite the paragraph below, correcting the 11 errors in it. Check your answers.

> Nebeský Otec znovu zasiahol, aby svojim deťom prejavuje svoju lásku. Povolal je za proroka mladého muža, ktorý sa volal Joseph Smith. Joseph Smith je chcel vedieť, ktorá zo všetkých cirkví je tá pravá. Vy sa ste tak cítili predtým? Keď máme také otázky, Boh chce nás byť pokorní. Chce, aby sme ho prosil o odpovede k úprimnej modlitbe. Keď Joseph hľadal pravdu medzi rozličný vierovyznania, obrátil sa na Bibliu pre radu. Dočítal sa: „Ak sa niekomu z vás nedostáva múdrosti, nech si ju prosí od Boha, ktorý prosto a ochotne dáva všetkým, a dostane sa mu jej“ (pozri Jakub 1:5). Vďaka túto pasáž sa Joseph rozhodol, že sa opýta Boha na to, čo by mal robiť. Joseph Smith bol povolané, aby znovuzriadil evanjelium v týchto neskorších dňoch. Prostredníctvom Joseph Smith bola Kniha Mormonova preložená. Môžete sa modliť, aby ste vedieť sami za seba.

C. Error Correction

This activity will help you see where you need to improve. Each sentence has an error. Write down the corrected sentence or say it to your companion. Check your answers. If you get an answer wrong, the Answers section will refer you to the principle you should study.

1. Rozhodnuli sme sa prísť.
2. Ježiš Kristus zomrel, pretože nás spasil.
3. Snažili sa opraviť veci, ktoré boli pozmeniné.
4. Obdržia vedenie z Ducha Svätého.
5. Nebeský Otec poslal svojho miloveného Syna.
6. Mená a adresy pokrstený a konfirmovaný ľudí.
7. Ľudia odmietnuli prorokov za odpadlíctva.
8. Adam a Eva vyučoval svoje deti.
9. Spasiteľ pozýva ľudí, aby sú prišli k Nemu.
10. Na konci sa rozhodola, že nechcela prísť.
11. Čo chcieli od vás? Čo ste im povedali?
12. Modlite sa, aby ste poznať pravdu.
13. Krst je obrad nevyhnutné pre spásu.
14. Aby sme obdržal toto požehnanie . . .
15. My sa ho spýtali, či čítal Knihu Mormonovu.
16. Dáme sa pokrstiť, aby sme moholi žiť s ním.
17. Evanjelium je návod k požehnaného životu.
18. Bol ukrižovaní a Jeho apoštoli boli odmietnutí a zavraždení.
19. Nemali sú plnosť pravdy a kňazskú právomoc.
20. Prostredníctvom viery v Ježiša Krista a Jeho uzmierenie . . .
21. Odpočioli sme si na chvíľu, kým sme čakali.
22. Študovať náuky od misionárskych lekcií.
23. Aby ich ste pripravili na výzvu ku krstu a konfirmácii . . .
24. Hovoríme o podobenstve o stratenom ovci.
25. Vyjadrujeme vďačnosť na svoje požehnania.
26. Dal je sa pokrstiť minulý týždeň.
27. Nebudú naveky zavrhnutý.
28. Prosíte o odpovedi v modlitbe.

D. Translation

On a separate sheet of paper, translate the following sentences into Slovak. Check your answers.

1. The Book of Mormon was translated by Joseph Smith.
2. He offered us a perfect plan.
3. Christ died to save us.
4. Be aware of unplanned opportunities.
5. We could have asked her to pray.
6. What can we do to help her?
7. What do you believe in?
8. He took (gave a ride to) Michal home.
9. Prophets are called to teach us about the plan.
10. Without the gospel we don't have direction from the Spirit.
11. The Church is built on the foundation of Apostles.
12. What do you know about the restored gospel?
13. What can we do for him?
14. They are against us.
15. God wants us to grow.
16. In order to return to God, we must be baptized.
17. The gospel is clearly taught in the Book of Mormon.
18. Our message is about families.
19. Joseph saw Christ next to God in the vision.
20. Are you ready to go?

E. Companion Activities

1. With your companion, go over your planner from the last three days. Describe what you did each day in detail and why. Get feedback on how well you use past tense, L-form, and *aby*. Also discuss whether each activity influenced one of your key indicators. If an activity didn't influence a key indicator, discuss why and decide whether you should continue doing that type of activity.
2. In *Kážte Moje Evanjelium*, read the section "Spasiteľova Pozemská Služba" on page 32. Write down all passive voice sentence constructions. With your companion, practice converting sentences in this section from active voice to passive voice and vice versa.

   Example: ...znovu založil svoju Cirkev na zemi.

   Cirkev Ježiša Krista bola znovu založená.

F. Scripture Activities

1. Read Alma 36:17–20. Pay attention to how these verses use the principles discussed in this chapter. Then practice telling this story to your companion from a third-person point of view as if he or she was one of your investigators. Get feedback from your companion on how well you used past tense, L-form, *aby*, passive voice, and prepositions.
2. Choose one of your favorite scripture stories. Think of an investigator who could benefit from hearing the story. Write down the story in your own words, focusing on using past tense, L-form, and *aby* correctly. Have your companion or a native speaker check your story for correctness. Then practice telling your story to a native speaker or your companion acting in the role of the investigator you chose earlier. Get feedback on how well you used these grammar principles and set goals to share your story with your investigator.
3. Go to the back of the *Missionary Vocabulary and Phrases* book in Appendix B under "Stories from the Scriptures." Choose one of the parables that you would like to be able to teach but currently cannot. First find the vocabulary you will need, and then write down the story, underlining your use of principles from this review. Have a native speaker check the underlined parts of the parable. Then practice teaching the parable to the native speaker and get feedback on how you used these grammar principles.

G. Writing Activities

1. Find five principles from the missionary lessons about which you can share a personal experience. Write down the experiences, underlining each time you use a principle discussed in this review. Have your companion or a native speaker check the words you underlined and give you feedback. Practice sharing your experiences with your companion and set goals to share them with your investigators.
2. Write a paragraph about one of the prophets from the Bible that you can use to illustrate the pattern of apostasy and restoration, focusing on correctly using passive voice. Have your companion or a native speaker check how well you used passive voice. Then practice explaining the pattern of apostasy and restoration as if you were explaining it to a new investigator in the first lesson.

Asking About and Expressing Desire, Need, Preference, Ability, Intention, or Purpose

Purpose

This section will help you talk about what we **need** or **want** to do as well as what we **could, would,** or **should** do. The grammar principles in this section are targeted at helping you perform this function. Below are examples of the types of things you will be able to express with the grammar in this section.

- **I like** teaching about the Book of Mormon. (Expressing Liking)
- **Pray** for help to stop smoking. (Commands)
- **If** you would pray about these things, you would know the truth. (*Keby* and *Ak* (If-Then))
- **Could** we read the scriptures together? **Would** you read at home? (Conditional)

Application

Below is a list of doctrinal points that these grammar principles will help you teach, as well as some common missionary tasks that they will help you perform. This list is not comprehensive; it is meant to help you think about how you can use the grammar in real situations. In parentheses next to each point are some sample questions that you can ask yourself to help you think about how to apply the grammar.

Doctrines from the Lessons

- God Is Our Loving Father in Heaven (What does God want for us?)
- Heavenly Father Reveals His Gospel in Every Dispensation (Why did God call prophets? Why do we need them?)
- Restoration of the Gospel (What did Joseph Smith want to know? What did God ask Joseph Smith to do?)
- The Book of Mormon (What can we learn from the Book of Mormon? For what purpose was it written?)
- Pre-Earth Life (What is God's purpose and plan for us?)
- The Atonement (Why did Christ perform the Atonement? Why do we need it?)
- Repentance (What do we need to do in order to repent?)
- Baptism (Why do we need to be baptized?)
- Obedience (Why does God want us to obey?)
- Pray Often (What should we pray for? How do we express our needs and desires?)
- Study the Scriptures (What are the scriptures for? Why do we need to study them?)
- Priesthood and Auxiliaries (What are the priesthood and the auxiliaries for?)
- Missionary Work (Why should we desire to do missionary work as members?)
- Temple and Family History (Why do we need temples? How can we get involved in Family History work?)

Tasks from the *Missionary Vocabulary and Phrases* Book

- Extend Commitment Invitations (Why does God give us commandments?)
- Give Directions (How do I tell someone how to get somewhere?)
- Obtain Referrals (Why should we share the gospel with friends? How can we begin to talk about the gospel? How do we increase our desire to share the gospel?)
- Offer a Prayer (How do I ask Heavenly Father for the things that I need?)

Rád (To Like)

Examples

We would like to come by to see how it went.	**Radi** by sme prišli a zistili, ako to išlo.
What **do you like** to do?	Čo **radi** robíte?
This hymn **pleases** me.	Táto pieseň **sa mi páči**.
God **delights** in the chastity of His people.	Boh **sa teší** z cudnosti jeho ľudí.

Explanation

In Slovak, "to like something (a noun)" uses a different grammar structure than "to like to do (verb) something." These principles and others are discussed in this lesson.

"To Like Something"

In Slovak, there are two ways to express to like (something). To say that you like something as a result of an early impression or are simply pleased and content with something, use the verb *páčiť sa.* The indirect object is the person or people who like something or to whom something is pleasing (third case). The subject is the person(s) or thing(s) that is/are liked.

Examples:

Ako **sa** vám **páči** Kniha Mormonova?
How do you like the Book of Mormon? (lit. How does the Book of Mormon please itself to you?)

Páči sa mi Banská Bystrica.
I like Banská Bystrica. (lit. Banská Bystrica pleases itself to me)

To express a deeper "like," use the verbal phrase *"mať rád."* This is very sincere and can almost be equated with the English verb "to love." Literally, *mať rád* means "to have gladly." The thing being liked is declined into the accusative case (fourth case).

Examples:

Mám rád svoju rodinu. *I like/love my family.*	Boh nás **má rád**. *God likes/loves us.*

The word *rád* changes slightly depending on the subject of the sentence. When the subject is feminine, shorten the first syllable (*á* to *a*) and add an *a*. When the subject is neuter, shorten the first syllable and add an *o*. When the subject is plural, shorten the first syllable and add an *i*.

Ja mám rád/ rada...	My máme radi...
Ty máš rád/ rada...	Vy máte radi...
On má rád...	Oni majú radi...
Ona má rada...	Ony majú rady
Ono má rado...	

Note: *Milovať* (to love) is regarded as much deeper than its English equivalent and should **only** be used with close family and God.

"To Like to do something"

To express to like to do something, use the correct form of the word *rád* plus a conjugated verb. Unlike expressing "to like something," you do not include the verb *mať*. The examples below use the verb *čítať* (to read).

Rád/ rada čítam	Radi čítame
Rád/ rada čítaš	Radi čítate
On rád číta	Radi čítajú
Ona rada číta	
Ono rado číta	

To negate these sentences, simply add the prefix *ne-* to *rád*.

Examples:

Neradi sa hádame s ľuďmi. *We don't like to argue with people.*	**Ne**rád nás trestá. *He doesn't like to punish us.*

"To Be Glad"

To express "to be glad," use the appropriate conjugated form of the verb *byť*, the appropriate form of the word *rád*, and a dependent clause.

Examples:

Som rád, že s vami môžem hovoriť. *(I) am glad that I can speak to you.*	**Sme radi**, že ste prišli na zhromaždenie. *(We) are glad that you came to sacrament meeting.*

"To Express Preference"

To show preference, replace *rád* with ***radšej***.

Examples:

Radšej hovoríme po slovensky. *(We) prefer speaking Slovak.*	Stretávame sa **radšej** u vás doma. *(We) prefer meeting at your place, at home.*

To ask or express what one likes best, replace *rád* with ***najradšej***.

Examples:

Čo/Koho máte **najradšej**? *What/Who do you like/love the most?*	Čo máš na našom posolstve **najradšej**? *What do you like the most about our message?*

"To Look Forward to, To Enjoy"

Tešiť sa na + Acc fourth case **(to be glad about, look forward to)** is another way to express liking.

Examples:

Pokiaľ činíme pokánie, môžeme **sa tešiť na** posledný súd. *As long as we have repented, we can look forward to final judgement.*	**Tešíme sa na** túto nedeľu! *Looking forward to this Sunday!*

Tešiť sa z(o) + Gen second case **(to enjoy)**

Examples:

Môžete **<u>sa tešiť zo</u>** spoločenstva Ducha Svätého po celý život.
You can enjoy the companionship of the Holy Ghost throughout your life.

Keď nasludejeme proroka, môžeme **<u>sa tešiť z</u>** uistenia, že žijeme v súlade s Božou vôľou.
When (we) follow the prophet, we can enjoy the assurance that we are living in accordance with God's will.

Note: Just as with other reflexives verbs, *sa* can appear several words before *tešiť*. If confused, review word order in lesson 2.

Activities

A. Translation

Translate the following sentences using *rád* and similar words. Check your answers.

1. We like to begin with a prayer.
2. Joseph Smith liked to read the Bible.
3. I love to read the scriptures.
4. What do you (formal) like to do?
5. Do you (formal) like this hymn?
6. Does your (formal) friend (masc.) like to talk about religion?
7. I love learning more about the gospel.
8. I'm glad to be able to speak to you today.
9. I like this scripture a lot.
10. I love to see the temple.
11. Do you (sing. fem. informal) like reading about Christ?
12. We're happy we could come visit you (formal).

B. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answer against the one listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. ***Mám rád** čítať príbehy v písmach.
   I like reading the stories in the scriptures.
2. Váš bratranec má rád ***študovať** náboženstvá?
   Does your cousin like to study religions?
3. ***Páči sa vám** Knihu Mormonovu?
   Do you like the Book of Mormon?
4. ***Teším sa.**
   It's nice to meet you.
5. Rád ***hovoríme** s ľuďmi.
   We like to talk with people.
6. ***Som radi,** že tu môžem byť.
   I'm happy to be here.
7. ***Máš rád** jesť toto jedlo?
   Do you like this food?
8. Piesne ***sa mi páči.**
   I like the hymns.

C. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key. For any questions that you miss, write at least two sentences that you could use in your teaching today that use the correct form.

1. Radi hovoríme s ľuďmi o Kristovi.
2. Ja rád Knihu Mormonovu.
3. Táto kapitola sa mi páči.
4. Máme radi písma.
5. Páčim sa Knihu Mormonovu.
6. Teším sa naše stretnutie.
7. My sa tešíme na zhromaždenie.
8. Mám rád spievať.
9. Radšej sa stretneme o 20:00.
10. Rád sa učím o prorokoch.

D. Writing Activity

Using *rád* and other ways to express **to like**, write as many sentences as you can that you could use in getting to know someone and telling about yourself. Role play situations with your companion in which you use your sentences to get to know an investigator or member better. Get feedback on your grammar.

E. Companion Activity

Using *rád* and other ways to express **to like**, talk with your companion about your investigators. Talk about their interests, what they like to do, etc. Come up with ways to personalize lessons and make them more meaningful for each individual investigator.

F. Scripture Activity

Read 3 Nephi 13:5–6 in English and translate the sentence that uses *rád*. Check your answer. Then practice sharing this scripture with your companion in the role of one of your investigators. Use the scripture to teach him or her about the importance of personal prayer.

G. Learn with a Native Speaker

Visit an investigator who has recently attended church for the first time. Ask the investigator what they liked or didn't like about it. Answer their questions about church meetings and help them feel comfortable. Pay attention to the use of principles taught in this lesson. You can also share what you like or enjoy about going to church.

H. Learn with Your District

Practice teaching a difficult principle during your district meeting. Have the other missionaries give you feedback on what they liked and didn't like about your teaching. Listen to their use of the principles taught in this lesson. Use their feedback to improve your own teaching.

Commands

Examples

We say unto you, **receive** the Holy Ghost.	Hovoríme ti: "**Prijmi** Ducha Svätého."
Go straight.	**Choď** rovno.
I ask Thee to **bless** my companion.	Prosím ťa, **požehnaj** môjho spoločníka.

Explanation

We use commands to tell someone to do or not to do something. You can tell which verbs are being used in English because they are missing a subject word. Commands aren't necessarily bossy or rude, and include common ideas like "Tell me . . ." "Come here," and "Help us . . ."

Commands

Commands with *ty, vy,* and *my* use present conjugations. To form these commands:

1. Infinitive verb		2. Conjugate the verb into third person plural (oni)		3. Drop the final vowel(s)		4. Add the correct ending
prečítať	→	prečítajú	→	prečítaj	→	ty: prečítaj vy: prečítajte my: prečítajme

Examples for *ty:*

Požehnaj našich záujemcov. *Bless our investigators.*	Daj nám inšpiráciu. *Give us inspiration.*

Examples for *vy:*

Prečítajte tento verš. *Read this verse.*	Študujte túto lekciu. *Study this lesson.*

My commands are used to make suggestions (e.g., "Let's . . .").

Examples for *my:*

Pomodlime sa. *Let's pray.*	Pracujme usilovne. *Let's work diligently.*

To make commands negative, add the prefix *ne-* before the verb.

Examples:

Nestrať nádej. *Don't lose hope.*	Nehovorme po anglicky. *Let's not speak English.*

Soft Endings

Whenever the verb stem (what's left after step 3) ends in *a d, t, n,* or *l,* the final consonant is softened (i.e., *ď, ť, ň, ľ*).

Examples:

Vyvoľte si dnes, komu . . . *Choose ye this day, whom . . .*	**Odpusť** nám naše viny . . . *Forgive us our debt . . .*
Prestaň s tým! *Stop (with) that!*	**Neuveď** nás do pokušenia . . . *Lead us not into temptation . . .*

If the last two letters of the verb stem are *-ij* or *-yj*, drop the *j* in order to ease pronunciation.

Examples:

Vypite! *Drink (up)!*	**Umy** si ruky! *Wash your hands!*

Long Imperatives (Command)

Whenever the verb stem (what's left after step 3) ends in an uncomfortable consonant cluster, add an i to make pronunciation easier. The endings will then include an *i* (i.e., *i, ite,* and *ime*). *Núť* verbs will always follow this rule. Some verbs end in consonant clusters that are easy enough to pronounce that the *i* is not added (ex. *odpustiť → odpusť*).

Examples:

Pomodli sa! *Pray!*	Sadnite si. *Sit down.*

Irregular Commands

Below are some of the most common irregulars. Because irregulars do not follow any specific pattern, they must be memorized.

byť	
	buďme
buď	buďte

jesť	
	jedzme
jedz	jedzte

ísť (to go)	
	choďme
choď	choďte

prísť (*to come*)	
	poďme
poď	poďte

povedať	
	povedzme
povedz	povedzte

Activities

A. Fill in the Blank

For each of the following verbs, write out the command form for *ty, vy*, and *my*. Pay attention to the type of ending the verb has, as the endings affect the way a command is created. Check your answers.

Example: hovoriť: hovor, hovorte, hovorme

činiť

pomôcť

zavolať

rozhodnúť sa

B. Conjugation

On a separate sheet of paper, conjugate each verb found below in parentheses. For each of the sentences below, create the command form for the *ty, vy,* and *my* forms. Check your answers in the back of the book.

1. (Zaspievať) pieseň na druhej strane.
2. (Pomôcť) záujemcom, aby rozumeli náukam.
3. (Počúvať) slová a učenia prorokov.
4. (Ísť) ku Kristovi a (prinášať) diela spravodlivosti . . .
5. (Študovať) náuku a zásady evanjelia.
6. (Vybrať) obľúbené verše z písiem.
7. (Prečítať) tento verš a (povedať) nám, čo to znamená.
8. (Prosiť) Boha o silnejšiu vieru.
9. (Hovoriť) s rodinou a ostatnými o evanjeliu.
10. Úprimne (sa pomodliť) k Bohu a (požiadať) o odpustenie.

C. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answers against the ones listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. ***Študovatje** túto kapitolu, prosím.
   Study this chapter, please.
2. ***Hovorte** s ním o zákone desiatku.
   Let's talk to him about the law of tithing.
3. ***Prečítate** tento verš.
   Read this verse.
4. ***Rozhodnujte** sa dnes, komu budete slúžiť.
   Choose today whom you will serve.
5. ***Povedajte** nám o vašej skúsenosti s modlitbou.
   Tell us about your experience with prayer.
6. ***Príďte** ku Kristovi.
   Come unto Christ.

D. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key. For each question that you miss, write at least two sentences that you could use in your teaching today that use the correct form of the word.

1. Buďte pokorný a Boh vás bude viesť.
2. Činite pokánie!
3. Podel sa s nami o svoje svedectvo.
4. Nestarajte sa o svoj život . . .
5. Bud verná a nájdeš odpovede.
6. Zobrajte túto knihu.
7. Volajte k Bohu a proste Ho o odpustenie.
8. Usilovajme sa v práci Pána.

E. Scripture Activities

Read the following scriptures in English. Find the commands in each of them and write them down. Translate those verbs for the formal command. Check your answers.

D&C 45:3–5	Moroni 7:34
John 8:11	D&C 18:10
D&C 6:33-37	D&C 88:63
D&C 33:10–11	Alma 7:15

F. Planning Activity

During nightly planning use commands to make plans for the following day. Use the *my* form of the commands to discuss where you should go, what lessons you should teach specific investigators, and how many people you will contact. Set goals using commands as well.

Example: Poďme na Hornú Ulicu o piatej.

Then, throughout the day, use the command form to give your companion directions to each appointment, take turns telling each other who to talk to or contact, etc.

G. Giving Directions

During tracting, give directions to the meeting house to a new investigator by either speaking the directions or writing them down. Explain to them which buses or trams to take, where to get off, and all other necessary information to arrive at the church. Once they arrive at church, ask them if your directions were clear and effective. Make adjustments to help future investigators find the church.

H. District Meeting Activity

Kážte Moje Evanjelium often uses the command form to tell you, the missionary, how to effectively perform your work. Prepare a lesson on some aspect of missionary work that you could present in a district meeting using the commands from a section of *Kážte Moje Evanjelium*. Some examples include "Študijné Nápady a Návrhy" (22) and "Používajte Písma" (180). Help the members of the district to better apply these skills by writing down on the board the guidelines from *Kážte Moje Evanjelium*. Encourage them to write down the guidelines as well, and help them set goals to apply the principles in their missionary work.

Conditional

Examples

We understand how that **could** be difficult.	Rozumieme tomu, že **by** to **mohlo** byť ťažké.
Would it be alright for us to come by again?	**Mohli by sme** sa vrátiť?
We would like to talk to you about the plan of salvation.	**Chceli by sme** s vami hovoriť o pláne spásy.
Do you have friends who **would** be interested in our message?	Máte kamarátov, ktorí **by mali** záujem o naše posolstvo?

Explanation

The conditional tense is used to:

Say what would happen under certain conditions.	V takejto situácii **by bolo** dôležité, aby sme poznali pravdu. *In a situation like this, it would be important to know the truth.* V tej situácii, ako **by** Boh **odpovedal** na vašu modlitbu? *In that situation, how would God answer your prayer?*
Make polite requests or soften suggestions and statements such as in English: can → could will → would shall → should want → would like	**Chceli by sme** sa s tebou podeliť o písmo. *We would like to share a scripture with you.* **Mohli by sme** čítať s vami niektoré časti z Knihy Mormonovej? *Could we read some parts of the Book of Mormon with you?* Akonáhle obdržíme odpustenie našich hriechov, **mali by sme** sa im každý deň snažiť vyhýbať. *Once we have been forgiven of our sins, we should try every day to remain free from sin.*
Create a hypothetical situation or question using *keby*.	**Keby sme nemali** slobodnú vôľu, **nemohli by sme** napredovať. *If we didn't have agency, we would not be able to progress.* **Keby ste vedeli**, že Joseph Smith bol prorokom, ako **by sa zmenil** váš život? *If you knew Joseph Smith was a prophet, how would your life change?*

Conditional Forms: Regular (Would)

There are three parts to creating a conditional phrase: *L-form verb, by,* and *byť* conjugated. *By* is what creates the conditional. *Byť* is conjugated to match the subject of the sentence (i.e., if the subject were "I" you would use *by som*, or if it was "we" you would use *by sme*, etc.). The L-form verb will also match the subject in number and gender by adding *-a, -i, -o* or nothing (for masculine).

1. Put verb into *L-form*		2. Add *by*		3. Conjugate *byť*	
				som	sme
čítať → číta**l** (a,i,o)	+	by	+	si	ste
				-	-

Examples:

Prečítali by ste túto pasáž, prosím? ***Would you read*** *this passage please?*	**Urobili by ste** pre mňa láskavosť? ***Would you do*** *me a favor?*

If the subject is in the third person singular or plural (i.e., he, she, it, they), then byť is not included in the construction. The subject is reflected only in the L-form ending.

Examples:

Joseph sa rozhodol, že sa opýta Boha na to, čo **by mal** robiť.
*Joseph decided to ask God about what he **should** do.*

Poslúchnuť toto prikázanie **by znamenalo** . . .
*To obey this commandment **would** mean . . .*

If a word or phrase is inserted at the beginning of a conditional sentence, the order of the words can be shifted so that the L-form verb follows *by* and conjugated *byť* instead of preceding them. For more on word order, refer to lesson two of this manual.

Examples:

Za čo **by ste** sa **modlili**?
*What **would you** pray about?*

Ako **by sme svätili** deň sabatu?
*How **would we** keep the Sabbath day holy?*

Would, Could, Should

Verbs put in the conditional all gain the meaning **would** (e.g., **go → would go, know → would know**, etc.). The verbs *môcť, mať,* and *chcieť*, however, gain special meaning in conditional form. When putting *môcť* into the conditional with *by*, it means **could**. When putting *mať* into the conditional with *by*, it means **should**. When using either of these verbs in this sense, they will be followed by an infinitive. *Chcieť* in the conditional with *by* means **would like**, and can be used with an infinitive of another verb or with a noun.

Examples:

Ako **by sme mohli** viac cítiť Ducha Svätého?
How could we feel the Holy Ghost more?

Mali by sme túžiť po tom, aby sme boli hodní prijať zmluvy, ktoré nám Boh ponúka.
We should desire to be worthy to accept covenants which God offers to us.

Chcel by som prečítať obľúbenú pasáž z Knihy Mormonovej.
I would like to read a favorite passage from the Book of Mormon.

Activities

A. Conjugation

Put each verb into L-form in preparation for using it in the conditional. Check your answers.

1. môcť
2. mať
3. chcieť
4. prečítať
5. spýtať sa

B. Fill in the Blank

Fill in the blanks with the appropriate conjugations of *byť* and/or L-form verbs to form conditional sentences. Make sure the ending of the L-form verb matches the subject listed in the sentance or in parenthesis. Check your answers.

Example: (Vy) ____(**Môcť**) by ____ (**byť**) vyučovať o kňazstve.

Mohli by **ste** vyučovať o kňazstve.

1. Adam a Eva by ____ **(nemôcť)** poznať radosť, keby nezažili zármutok a bolesť.
2. (Vy) Keby bol dnes na zemi prorok, na čo by ____ **(byť)** sa ho ____ **(spýtať)**?
3. Podeľte sa s nimi o jednu alebo dve pasáže, ktoré by ____ **(mať)** pre nich význam.
4. (Vy) ____ **(Prečítať)** by ____ **(byť)**, prosím, posledné dva odstavce v úvode knihy?
5. (My) ____ **(Môcť)** by ____**(byť)** vás učiť viac?
6. Ako by vám ____ **(môcť)** táto náuka pomáhať?
7. Joseph sa rozhodol, že sa opýta Boha na to, čo by ____ **(mať)** robiť.
8. Svätí neskorších dní by ____ **(mať)** tento deň oddeliť od svetských činností.
9. (Vy) ____ **(Mať)** by ____**(byť)** túžiť po duchovných daroch.
10. (Vy) ____ **(Chcieť)** by ____ **(byť)** zistiť, či je Kniha Mormonova pravdivá?

C. Tense Changes

Soften the following sentences by changing the verbs into the conditional mode. Some verbs are in command form, whereas others are conjugated normally. Check your answers.

Example: Pomodlite sa. → Pomodlili by ste sa?

1. Prečítajte túto pasáž.
2. Napíšte tu svoje číslo.
3. Čo chcete?
4. Môžete mi pomôcť?
5. Môžeme vás opäť navštíviť?
6. Dajte nám číslo.
7. Čo máme robiť?
8. Čo chcete, aby sme učili?
9. Máme študovať písma každý deň.
10. Povedzte nám niečo o vašej rodine.

D. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answers against the ones listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. Ako ***sme** mohli lepšie členom slúžiť?
   How could we better serve the members?
2. Keby ste boli Joseph Smith, čo ***by** sa Boha spýtali?
   If you were Joseph Smith, what would you ask God?
3. Mali by ste ***čítal** túto knihu.
   You should read this book.
4. Prečo by sme ***mal** čítať písma každý deň?
   Why should we read scriptures every day?
5. Mohli by sme vám dať niečo, o čom ***by** mohli premýšľať?
   Could we give you something to think about?
6. ***Moholi** by ste vlastnými slovami zopakovať to, o čom sme práve hovorili?
   Could you repeat in your own words what we just said?
7. Ako by sme vám ***mohol** pomáhať?
   How could we help you?
8. Kým by ***som** sa chceli stať?
   What would you like to become?

E. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key. For any questions that you miss, write at least two sentences that you could use in your teaching today that use the correct form of the word.

1. Boli sme by radi, keby ste prišli na zhromaždenie.
2. Poznáte niekoho, komu by toto posolstvo pomohol?
3. Koho chceli by ste pozvať na svoj krst?
4. Ako by ste mohli lepšie žiť podľa tohto zákonu?
5. Výzvy by mali byť konkrétne, priame a jasné.
6. Prečítate by ste túto pásaž, prosím?
7. Mohola by som ti položiť otázku?
8. Čo by sme sa mohli z tejto pásaže učiť?
9. Radi by sme vás oslovovali ako bratov a sestry.
10. Mohli by sme začali túto lekciu s modlitbou?
11. Chcel by sme sa podeliť o pásaž z Knihy Mormonovej.
12. Chceli by ste sa s nami opäť stretnúť?

F. What Would You Do If . . .

On a separate sheet of paper, write as many sentences as you can explaining what you would do in each of these situations. Focus on your use of the conditional and have your companion or a native review your sentences after you finish.

Example: Záujemca nevie, ako sa modliť.

Učili by sme ho o modlitbe.

1. Záujemca nie je doma, keď ste mali dohodnuté stretnutie.
2. Záujemca nechce čítať Knihu Mormonovu.
3. Záujemca fajčí.
4. Jeden z vašich záujemcov s dátumom krstu sa bojí vody.
5. Záujemca býva s priateľom či priateľkou.
6. Záujemcova rodina nechce, aby sa dal(a) pokrstiť.
7. Záujemca ťažko rozumie slovensky, keď číta Knihu Mormonovu.
8. Záujemca ti povie po telefóne, že sa nechce s vami stretávať.

G. *Preach My Gospel* Activity

Complete the personal study activity on the top of page 192 of *Preach My Gospel*. Write down what you would do in the situation given and go over your answers with your companion. Together with them, come up with other hypothetical situations and write down how you would respond to each one.

H. Scripture Activities

Read 3 Nephi 11:8–11. This verse talks about the Savior's visit among the Nephites. Write down in Slovak what you would do if you witnessed this scene. How would you feel in His presence? What questions might you ask Him? Focus on your use of the conditional and have your companion check your sentences after you finish.

I. Reading Slovak Scriptures with Natives

Read 2 Nephi 2:11–12 in the Slovak Book of Mormon with a native. Identify the conditional clauses and discuss any questions you have about their construction. Then practice teaching the member the principles in these verses, focusing on correctly using the conditional form.

J. Talk about Investigators

Similar to companion study, bring up concerns that you are having with your investigators and ask the missionaries in your district to say what they would do if they were teaching that investigator. Give every missionary a chance to say at least one concern.

Keby and *Ak* (If-Then)

Examples

We can know that the Book of Mormon is true **if** we pray.	Môžeme vedieť, že Kniha Mormonova je pravdivá, **ak** sa modlíme.
As long as we have repented, we will receive mercy.	**Pokiaľ** sme činili pokánie, obdržíme milosrdenstvo.
If there weren't a Savior, death **would mean** the end.	**Keby** nebolo Spasiteľa, smrť **by znamenala** koniec.
How **would** Peter **react** if we invited him to attend church?	Ako **by reagoval** Peter, **keby** sme ho pozvali na zhromaždenie?

Explanation

In Slovak, there are multiple ways to express **if** including *keby, ak*, and *pokiaľ*. Each of these is used in different situations, as explained below.

Type	Use	Examples
keby	If the then-clause of an if-then statement is **conditional** (could, would, or should), then the if-clause needs to use the word *keby*.	Čo **by** ste urobili, **keby** ste prečítali tento verš? *What would you do if you read this verse?*
ak	If the then-clause of an if-then statement is **not conditional**, but rather a statement, *ak* is used.	**Ak** neposlúchame prorokov, zablúdime v živote. *If we don't listen to the prophets, we will be lost in life.*
pokiaľ	*Pokiaľ* is used the same way as *ak*, but takes on the meaning **as long as.**	**Pokiaľ** kňazstvo nie je na zemi, ľudia nemôžu vykonať spásne obrady. *As long as the priesthood isn't on the earth, people cannot perform saving ordinances.*

Keby

Conditional if-then statements are formed by using *keby* with the L-form of the verb. *Keby* must take the first position in the if-clause. The then-clause must be in the conditional.

Examples:

Keby sme nemali slobodnú vôľu, **nemohli by sme** napredovať.
If we didn't have agency, we would not be able to progress.

Keby ste vedeli, že Joseph Smith je prorok, ako **by sa zmenil** váš život?
If you knew Joseph Smith was a prophet, how would your life change?

Note: In English we have a special form of conditional in the past tense. *If I had known you had already left, I would not have come.* This kind of a complex past tense conditional form does exist in Slovak, however, it has mostly fallen out of use and is unnecessary for you to use or know. You should just use a present conditional form, which will communicate the same past tense idea. ***Keby som vedel, že si už odišiel, neprišiel by som.*** This literally means *If I knew that you already left, I would not come,* but communicates the same past tense concept that we wanted: *If I had known you had already left, I would not have come.*

Ak

Ak is used when the then-clause is simply a statement and not in the conditional.

Examples:

Ak budete študovať písma každý deň, nájdete odpovede na svoje otázky.
If you study the scriptures every day, you will find answers to your questions.

Ak sa spoliehame na uzmierenie Ježiša Krista, môžeme prekonať ťažkosti.
If we rely on the Atonement of Jesus Christ, we can overcome trials.

Pokiaľ

Pokiaľ is similar to *ak*, but it has the additional meaning **as long as**.

Examples:

Pokiaľ sme na zemi, nie sme v Božej fyzickej prítomnosti.
As long as we are on Earth, we are not in God's physical presence.

Pokiaľ sme činili pokánie, obdržíme milosrdenstvo.
As long as we have repented, we will receive mercy.

Whether -*Či*

The Slovak word for **whether**, is *či*. It is also used colloquially to mean **or** or **if**.

Examples:

Rozmýšľajte nad tým, **či** ste činili pokánie zo všetkých svojich hriechov.
Think about whether you have repented of all of your sins.

Čítanie písiem rozvíja našu vieru, **či** schopnosť dodržiavať Pánove prikázania.
Reading scriptures develops our faith, or our ability to keep the Lord's commandments.

Musí sa rozhodnúť, **či** prijme Knihu Mormonovu ako zjavenie od Boha.
He must decide if (whether or not) he will accept the Book of Mormon as revelation from God.

Activities

A. *Keby, Ak, Pokiaľ*, or *Či*

Decide which form of "if" the translated Slovak sentence would use. Check your answers.

1. We will be blessed if we keep the commandments.
2. What will you do if you move to Bratislava?
3. As long as you keep your covenants, the Holy Ghost will be your constant companion.
4. I don't know if he is coming or not.
5. What would happen if those missionaries were exactly obedient?
6. What will you do if someone gives you a cigarette?
7. What could you do if someone were to give you a cigarette?
8. As long as you continue reading in the Book of Mormon, God will answer your prayers.

B. Fill in the Blank

Decide whether the sentence needs *keby* or *ak*. Check your answers.

1. ____ nebolo Spasiteľa Ježiša Krista, smrť by znamenala koniec všetkých nádejí.
2. ____ si po väčšinu času nedáme pozor na tento jemný pocit, Duch nás opustí.
3. Čo by som sa Ježiša Krista spýtal, ____ som mal príležitosť?
4. ____ ste boli na mieste Josepha Smitha a čítali ste takúto pásaž, čo by ste robili?
5. ____ budete vyhľadávať možnosti milovať, slúžiť a učiť, členovia vám budú ochotní pomáhať.
6. ____ poslúchame Boha, on nás požehná.
7. ____ sa odpadlíctvo nestalo, nebolo by nutné znovuzriadenie.
8. ____ budeme denne činiť pokánie, zistíme, že sa náš život mení a zlepšuje.

C. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answer against the one listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. Keby Kristus ***neprišli,** ľudstvo by nemohlo byť spasené.
   If Christ didn't come, mankind could not be saved.
2. Ak sa budeme modliť, Boh ***by** na naše modlitby **odpovedal**.
   If we pray, God will answer our prayers.
3. Pokiaľ ***by ste mali** otázky, spýtajte sa.
   If you have questions, ask them.
4. Keby ste boli na jeho mieste, čo ***robíte**?
   If you were in his place, what would you do?
5. Ak urobíme chybu, ***mali by sme** činiť pokánie.
   If we make a mistake, we should repent.
6. Keby Boh neposlal prorokov, ***nemáme** zjavenie.
   If God didn't send prophets, we wouldn't have revelation.
7. Keby prišli ***ste** na zhromaždenie, poznám člena, ktorý by vám mohol odpovedať na vašu otázku.
   If you came to church, I know a member who could help answer your question.
8. Ak je Kniha Mormonova pravdivá, tak ľudia ***by museli** prijať tvrdenie o znovuzriadení.
   If the Book of Mormon is true, then people must accept our claims about the restoration

D. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key. For any questions that you miss, write at least two sentences that you could use in your teaching today that use the correct form of the word.

1. Pokiaľ sme na zemi, nemáme prístup do Božej fyzickej prítomnosti.
2. Ak sa spoliehame na Ježiša Krista, ak On nám môže pomôcť prekonať naše skúšky, choroby a bolesti.
3. Ako by ste sa cítili, keby ste stáli pred Bohom vediac, že nie ste čistý?
4. Ak sa budeme modliť, Boh na naše modlitby odpvie.
5. Mohli by sme vás sprevádzať na zhromaždenie, pokiaľ ste chceli.
6. Človek môže mať neustále spoločenstvo Ducha Svätého, ak je toho hodný.
7. Ak poslúchame Boha, on nás požehná.
8. Ak vytrváme až do konca, budeme mať život večný.
9. Nehrešili by sme, keby vieme, ako Kristus trpel.
10. Deti nemajú byť pokrstené, pokiaľ nedosiahnu vek zodpovednosti, ktorý je osem rokov.

E. Scripture Activities

1. ***Keby***

   Read Mosiah 15:19. This verse talks about what would happen if there were no redemption. Identify how *keby* is used in the verse in conjunction with the principles taught in this section. Read it in English also and summarize the if-then statement from this verse in your own words using *keby* plus the conditional. Plan to use your summary in lesson as a preface to the plan of salvation, or as part of the Atonement to explain what would have happened if the Savior hadn't atoned for our sins.

2. ***Ak***

   Read Eter 12:27 which speaks about faith and humility. Notice how it uses an if-then statement at the beginning of the verse and again at the end of the verse. Read the scripture in English and translate in your own words the second if-then statement into Slovak, promising your investigator blessings if they will humble themselves and have faith. If you know of a particular weakness or struggle your investigator is facing, use the if-then grammar to promise them that the Savior can help them overcome that particular weakness. Practice with your companion reading the scripture, summarizing it, then applying it to your investigator by promising them blessings.

This activity helps you apply the grammar of *keby* and *ak* statements to developing questions to use during lessons. For the first part, practice asking the questions given and responding how an investigator might respond. Take time to translate and understand the grammar of the sentences if you have difficulty understanding them. For the second part, create six new questions of your own to use in your teaching using *keby* or *ak*.

1. Ak ľudia nebudú mať príležitosť v tomto živote počuť o evanjeliu, budú stratení? Prečo?
2. Keby Kristus neuskutočnil uzmierenie, čo by sa ľudstvu stalo?
3. Keby Joseph Smith nečital a nemodlil sa za to, ktorá cirkev je pravdivá, nedostala by sa mu odpoveď? Prečo?
4. Keby ste stretli žijúceho proroka na ulici dnes, na čo by ste sa ho spýtali?
5. Ak sa dáme pokrstiť a prijmeme dar Ducha Svätého, aké požehnania dostaneme?
6. Keby sme nemali slobodnú vôľu, bolo by to možné napredovať?
7. Keby Nefi nebol poslušný, ako by história Knihy Mormonovej bola iná?

Now with your companion, come up with six additional questions using *keby* or *ak* which deal with important doctrines from the three lessons and which you can use to generate deeper thought and discussion. Practice giving those sentences to each other, one playing the role of a missionary and the other playing that of an investigator. Practice giving responses you might expect to hear from your investigators. Think of scriptures you could base your questions off of.

F. What Would Happen if . . .

Use the six new sentences you came up with in companion practice during a lesson with a member, or in some other teaching experience. Ask for feedback from those you teach on your use of the principles taught in this lesson. Ask them to suggest simpler or more colloquial ways to get across the same idea. Write down what you learn.

G. Promise People Blessings

Encourage your district to complete the grammar activities for this chapter before attempting this exercise. When everyone understands how to create if-then statements, open up to the section "Promise People Blessings" on page 198 of *Preach My Gospel*, and share a short message about the importance of promising blessings when extending commitments. Then proceed to the Personal Study Activity where you will break up into groups or companionships and select a scripture. Each group will identify the commandment and connected blessing and then create an if-then statement. Have each group find another group and practice promising blessings and giving feedback.

Review: Expressing Desire, Need, Preference, etc.

This review will help you see how well you have learned the material in the previous section. It will also help you evaluate your ability to apply several different grammar principles you have learned in performing the following function:

Asking About and Expressing Desire, Need, Preference, Ability, Intention, or Purpose

- *Rád* (To Like)
- Conditional
- Commands
- *Keby* and *Ak* (If-Then)

Activities

A. Error Correction

On a separate sheet of paper, rewrite the paragraph below, correcting the 9 errors in it. Check your answers.

> Boh nás má rádi a pomôže nám uskutočniť správne rozhodnutia. Má rád nám pomáhať a chce, aby sme boli šťastní. Avšak, napriek tomu, že nás miluje, dovolí nám čeliť výzvam. On vie, že by nemohli poznať radosť a rásť bez ťažkostí. Nebeský Otec pripravil pre nás spôsob, ako byť úspešnými v tomto živote a ako sa vrátiť a žiť v jeho prítomnosti. Keby dodržujeme prikázania Ježiša Krista, môžeme sa stať čistými od hriechu. Ak by nebolo Spasiteľa Ježiša Krista, smrť by znamenala koniec všetkých nádejí na ďalší život s Nebeským Otcom. Prečítate tento verš nahlas, prosím. Keď ho prečítate, rozmýšľajte nad týmto: "Čo by to znamenal pre mňa, keby to bol pravdivé?"

B. Error Correction

On a separate sheet of paper, rewrite the paragraph below, correcting the six errors in it. Check your answers.

> Čo by to znamenalo vo vašom živote, ak Kniha Mormonova bola pravdivá? Čo by ste robil inak? Ak sa budete modliť s úprimným srdcom, s naozajstným zámerom a vierou v Krista, Boh vám pomocou Ducha Svätého povie, že Kniha Mormonova je pravdivá. Viem, že Kniha Mormonova je pravdivá. Rád ju čítať denne. Milujem Knihu Mormonovu, pretože je to silný dôkaz znovuzriadenia. Chceme, aby ste mali toto svedectvo aj vy. Keď ju čítate, vždy začnajte s modlitbou. Poprosíte o pomoc, aby ste získali odpoveď za seba.

C. Error Correction

This activity will help you see where you need to improve. Each sentence has an error. Write down the corrected sentence or say it to your companion. Check your answers. If you get an answer wrong, the Answers section will refer you to the principle you should study.

1. Máme radi, že ste čítali.
2. Nestratíte vieru!
3. By som mu povedal . . .
4. Čo by som povedal Moronimu, ak som mal príležitosť?
5. Mohli by sa sme vrátiť?
6. Čo by ste robili, keby ste vedeli na 100%, ak Boh žije?
7. Tešíme sa na, keď príde!
8. Viac radi hovoríme o evanjeliu.
9. Pracujume usilovne a s Duchom.
10. Majú rád svoju rodinu.
11. Poslúchnuť toto prikázanie by znamenal . . .
12. Povedajte, čo máte na mysli.
13. Keby k odpadlíctvu nebolo prišlo . . .
14. Či sme poslušní, žehná nám.
15. Boh nás nie rád trestá.
16. Odložíte prirodzeného človeka.
17. Kedy sme na zemi, nemáme prístup do Božej prítomnosti.
18. Neviem, ak je to pravdivé.
19. Budete pokrstení v mojom mene.
20. Iďte domov a prečítajte tú kapitolu.
21. Čo radi robiť?
22. Neboli sme sem prišli . . .
23. Modlíme sa každý deň!
24. Mali by ste čítal túto knihu.
25. Prestante s tým, prosím.
26. Môžete sa tešiť spoločenstva Ducha Svätého po celý život.
27. Chceli by som vám dať Knihu Mormonovu.
28. Sadnte si.
29. Pomôžete im, aby mali sebadôveru.
30. Ako by moholi prísť na zhromaždenie?

D. Translation

On a separate sheet of paper, translate the following sentences into Slovak. Check your answers.

1. Read (formal) two chapters tonight.
2. I love to see the temple.
3. What would you (formal) say if God was here in this room?
4. Decide what you (formal) want.
5. I'm looking forward to see you (formal) next week.
6. We could visit him tomorrow.
7. Don't tell him that we are coming.
8. I like this chapter a lot.
9. What do you think you (formal) should do?
10. I really like to read these chapters.
11. If I could, I would go.
12. What would they ask God?
13. How could you (formal) help him?
14. Come with us!
15. I like the example of Nephi in these chapters.
16. I would tell him that I like to teach the gospel.

E. Companion Activities

1. Using commands, use the map to the right to give directions for the following situations:
   - You are meeting with the Buckovci family. Give them directions to the church from their house (labeled "Investigator's House" on the map).
   - You meet Brother Václav outside the factory, where he works. Give directions to him to meet you at the café for lunch.
   - You are contacting in the park and you meet Brother Oliš. He invites you to his house, which is right behind the hospital. What directions would he give you?
   - On preparation day you are making plans for what you are going to do. Give your companion directions in order to fulfill the following to-do list:
     - E-mail his or her family at the library
     - Make a withdrawal at the bank
     - Get a haircut
     - Go to the grocery store
2. Using conditional phrases, describe to your companion everything we should do in order to: Receive eternal life
   - Truly repent of our sins
   - Prepare for baptism
   - Gain a testimony of the Book of Mormon
3. In your next weekly planning session, go over each of your investigators and discuss what their needs are. Discuss how you want to meet those needs. Give suggestions using conditional phrases (ex. Mohli by sme ho učiť o . . .). Practice using other words from these lessons including keby, ak, či, rád, radšej, and tešiť sa. Get feedback from your companion.
4. Talk with your companion about the questions and concerns that you have encountered when commiting investigators to live certain commandments (e.g., tithing, chastity, Word of Wisdom, baptism . . .) and how you resolved those doubts. Reenact the conversation with your companion and use If/Would sentences to better understand their doubts (e.g., If you could quit smoking, would you be baptized?). Get feedback on how well you used these grammar principles.
5. Translate and then discuss with your companion the following question: "What would you choose to see if you could see anything from the Book of Mormon?" Focus on correctly using keby and get feedback from your companion.

F. Scripture Activities

1. Note how the command form and the conditional form are used in Alma 37:37–40. Prepare a short lesson plan that you could use to teach someone what they need to do to have faith and be guided by the Holy Ghost (using the Liahona as a metaphor for the Holy Ghost). Practice teaching your lesson to your companion or a native speaker and get feedback on how well you used these grammar principles.
2. Find a scripture that uses commands and that you can use to teach one of your investigators. Rewrite the commands to use the conditional form and practice personalizing the scripture by teaching it to your companion in the role of your investigator. Get feedback on how well you used commands and how well you personalized the scripture.

G. Writing Activities

1. Write a paragraph about what you enjoy doing and what you like/love. Include in your paragraph what things you look forward to, what things you have enjoyed in the past and what you would like to do in the future. Have your companion or a native speaker check what you wrote.

Asking and Answering Questions of Time, Date, and Frequency

Purpose

This section will help you talk about when and how often things happen; for example, when is church and how often do we have it? The grammar principles in this section are targeted at helping you perform this function. Below are examples of the types of things you will be able to express with the grammar in this section.

- The Church was restored **April 6, 1830**. (Time and Date)
- **Before we go**, could we leave you with a prayer? (To, čo and Before, During, and After)
- **How many times a day** do you pray? (How Often)
- **When** we die, our spirit goes to the spirit world. (When)

Application

Below is a list of doctrinal points that these grammar principles will help you teach, as well as some common missionary tasks that they will help you perform. This list is not comprehensive; it is meant to help you think about how you can use the grammar in real situations. In parentheses next to each point are some sample questions that you can ask yourself to help you think about how to apply the grammar.

Doctrines from the Lessons

- The Restoration of the Gospel of Jesus Christ (When was the First Vision? When did Joseph Smith receive the priesthood? When was the Church restored?)
- Pre-Earth Life (Where did we come from?)
- Our Life on Earth (Why are we here?)
- The Spirit World (Where do we go when we die? How long are we there?)
- Kingdoms of Glory (When will we be judged?)
- Baptism and Confirmation (When are my investigators getting baptized?)

Tasks from the *Missionary Vocabulary and Phrases* Book

- Conduct a Meeting (When does each part of the meeting happen?)
- Give Directions (What is the destination close to? What do you pass along the way?)
- Make Appointments (When are they free? Where is the appointment?)
- Plan Daily and Weekly Activities (When and where will each appointment/activity take place?)

Time and Date

Examples

We already have an appointment **at that time.**	**Vtedy** už máme stretnutie.
We'll see you **on Monday at two o'clock.**	Uvidíme sa **v pondelok o druhej.**
The meeting starts **at seven.**	Stretnutie sa začína **o siedmej.**
The conference is **from four to five o'clock.**	Konferencia je **od štvrtej do piatej.**

Explanation

The following table shows how different prepositions are used to describe the time of an event. There are some instances when there are no prepositions used in Slovak but in English you would use *for*, ex. I will be here for a month; we serve for two years.

Slovak	English	Examples	
na + (fourth case)	for (a very specific intended duration; used only in certain situations)	Prezidenta volia občania **na päť rokov.** *Citizens elect the president for the period of five years.*	Bol odsúdený **na dva mesiace.** *He was sentenced for the period of two months.*
za + (fourth case)	in (duration of time, the amount of time it takes)	Urobím to **za hodinu.** *It will take me an hour to make it.*	**Za desať minút** to nestihnem. *I cannot make it in ten minutes (to finish something).*
od + (second case)	from (a certain day/ time)	Je to **od jednej** do druhej. *It's from one to two.*	Je to **od pondelka** do nedele. **It's from Monday to (until) Sunday.**
do + (second case)	by/within (a certain day/time) until (a certain day/ time)	Kontaktujte ich **do 24 hodín.** *Contact them within 24 hours.*	Urobím to **do stredy.** *I'll do it by Wednesday.*
o + (sixth case)	at (a certain time) in (an amount of time)	Príde **o piatej hodine.**/ Čo robíme **o šiestej**? *He'll come at five o'clock./ What will we be doing at six?*	Stretneme sa **o päť minút.** *We'll meet in five minutes.* **O dva dni** sa dozviete výsledok. *You'll know a result in two days.*
v + (fourth case) + (sixth case)	on (a certain day) in (a certain month/ year)	**V roku** 1820 . . . *In the year 1820 . . .*	Uvidíme sa **v utorok**? *Will we see you on Tuesday?*

Asking the Time

Example:

Koľko je hodín?
What time is it?

Telling the Time

Hours

To tell the time on the hour, simply state how many hours there are. Note, however, that whenever you have five or more of something (in this case hours), use the genitive (second case) plural declension of the noun. Thus *hodina* becomes *hodín* and *minúta* becomes *minút*. The conjugation of *byť* is plural (*sú*) only when you have two, three, or four of something.

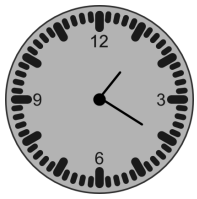
1:00 = **Je** jedna **hodina**.
(Lit. There is one hour)

2:00 = **Sú** dve (tri/štyri) **hodiny**.
(Lit. There are two (three/four) hours)

5:00 = **Je** päť (šesť/atď.) **hodín**.
(Lit. There is five (six/etc.) of hours)

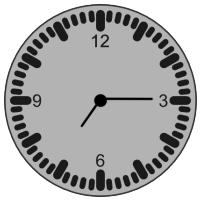
Minutes

To tell exact time give the hours followed by the minutes. Often in Slovak, the words *hodina* and *minúta* are left out.



1:20 = Je jedna hodina, dvadsať minút.

2:40 = Sú dve, štyridsať.



7:15 = Je sedem, pätnásť.

Telling Time on the Half Hour

Colloquially, Slovak has an equivalent to the English expression "half past the hour." However, instead of giving the hour that has past, Slovaks refer to the hour that is coming. So, when it's 2:30, it's halfway to 3:00. To tell time on the half hour, say *Je pol* (it's half) and then use the feminine genitive (second case) of the ordinal number *(ex. druhej, tretej, etc.)*. The word *hodiny* is almost always omitted.

Examples:

Je pol ôsmej (hodiny).
It's 7:30. (Lit. It's half of the eighth (hour).)

Začíname **o pol piatej** (hodiny).
We're starting at 4:30.

Dostali sme sa domov **o pol deviatej**.
We got home at 8:30.

Ordinal numbers declined into feminine singular cases are also used with prepositions including "od," "do," and "o." (See the chart on the previous page for examples.) The exception to this rule is that *jednej* is used instead of *prvej* when referring to the "first" hour. *(ex. Stretnutie je do jednej.)* Below is a list of the cardinal numbers that will be helpful when telling time.

prvý	first	**piaty**	fifth	**deviaty**	ninth
druhý	second	**šiesty**	sixth	**desiaty**	tenth
tretí	third	**siedmy**	seventh	**jedenásty**	eleventh
štvrtý	fourth	**ôsmy**	eighth	**dvanásty**	twelfth

Telling Time on the Quarter Hour

Slovaks also refer to the hour that is coming when telling time on the quarter hour. So, when it's 4:15, it's one quarter of the way to the five. When it's 4:45, it's three quarters of the way to five. To tell time on the quarter hour, say *Je štvrť na . . . or Je trištvrte na,* and then say the number of the next hour in the accusitive (fourth case). Notice this pattern in the examples below.

Examples:

Je **štvrť na osem.**
It's 7:15. (It's a quarter of the way to eight.)

Je **trištvrte na osem**.
It's 7:45. (It's three quarters of the way to eight.)

Stretnutie sa skončí **o štvrť na jednu.**
The meeting will end at 12:15. (The meeting will end at three quarters of the way to one.)

Note: Remember that ordinal numbers are not used when telling time on the quarter hour.

Asking and Telling What Time Something Happens

O koľkej (hodine) . . .?
At what time . . . ?

The answer to this question is formed by using the sixth case feminine ordinal number, as it refers to which hour of the day.

Examples:

Je o druhej.
It's at two. (Lit. It's at the second.)

Je o šiestej.
It's at six. (Lit. It's at the sixth.)

Question	Answer
O koľkej bude stretnutie? *What time is the meeting?*	(Stretnutie) Bude o siedmej. *(The meeting) It's at seven.*
O koľkej bude konferencia? *What time is the conference?*	(Konferencia) Bude o deviatej. *(The conference) It's at nine.*

A.M./P.M.

ráno	in the morning	Konferencia je o deviatej **ráno**. *The conference is at 9:00 in the **morning**.*
dopoludnie/ doobeda	a.m. or late morning	Máme stretnutie o jedenástej **dopoludnia**. *We have a meeting at 11 **a.m**.*
poludnie	at noon	Čo robíme na **poludnie**? *What are we doing at **noon**?*
popoludnie	in or early afternoon	Pracujem väčšinu **popoludní**. *I work most (of) **afternoons**.*
poobede	in the afternoon	Mohli by sme sa stretnúť niekedy **poobede**? *Could we meet sometime in the **afternoon**?*
večer	in the evening	Mávame rodinný domáci **večer** každý pondelok. *We have family home **evening** every Monday.*
v noci	at night (late)	Nemôžeme sa stretnúť **v noci**. *We can't meet **at night**.*

Predvčerom (day before yesterday)	**Včera** (yesterday)	**Dnes** (today)	**Zajtra** (tomorrow)	**Pozajtra** (day after tomorrow)

Note: Adding a day prior to the AM/PM words listed above will indicate a specific time on that day. For example, **"Dnes ráno"** means **"this morning"** and **"zajtra večer"** means **"tomorrow evening."**

Military Time

Military time, or the 24-hour clock is used for official purposes such as bus, train, and plane schedules. It is also used for events (e.g., church, plays, etc.). It is not different from the normally used 12-hour clock in the morning; however, after that, you must add 12 hours to the time. For example:

12-Hour Clock	24-Hour Clock
1:00 p.m.	13:00
2:00 p.m.	14:00
3:00 p.m.	15:00

Here are two ways to read military time:

15:43 = Je pätnásť hodín štyridsať tri minút.

15:43 = Je pätnásť štyridsať tri.

Talking About Dates: Day, Month, and Year

The days of the week and months are as follows:

Monday	Tuesday	Wednesday	Thursday	Friday	Saturday	Sunday
*pondel**o**k*	*utor**o**k*	*streda*	*štvrt**o**k*	*piat**o**k*	*sobota*	*nedeľa*

(Bold letters are omitted when extra vowels are added for declension.)

January	February	March	April	May	June
január	*február*	*mar**e**c*	*apríl*	*máj*	*jún*
July	**August**	**September**	**October**	**November**	**December**
júl	*august*	*septemb**e**r*	*októb**e**r*	*novemb**e**r*	*decemb**e**r*

Note: Except for the month of August, all months decline as a soft masculine noun (ex. *v januári*).

To say that something happens **on** a certain day the preposition "*v*" is used followed by the day in the accusative (fourth case). To say that something happens **in** a certain month, the preposition '*v*' is used followed by the month in the locative (sixth case).

Examples:

Zhromaždenie je **v nedeľu**. *Church is on Sunday.*	Naše stretnutie je **v prvý pondelok v máji**. *The meeting is on is on the first Monday in May.*

To ask about a certain date, use the Slovak word *koľkého*. To answer, use the genitive (second case) masculine form of the ordinal number of the day and the genitive form of the month. *Prvého* is used for the first day of the month.

Question	Answer
Koľkého je dnes? *What date is today?*	Dnes je **prvého marca**. *Today is the first of March.*
Koľkého máš narodeniny? *What day do you have a birthday?*	**Piateho decembra**. *The fifth of December.*
Kedy má narodeniny? *When does he have a birthday?*	**Devätnásteho apríla**. *The 19th of April.*
Koľkého máš čas? *What day will you have time?*	Budem zaneprázdnený od **siedmeho** do **štrnásteho**. *I will be busy from the 7th until the 14th.*

To say the dates 20th through the 31st, use the genitive (second case) masculine form of the ordinal numbers dvadsiaty (20th) and tridsiaty (30th) in combination with other declined ordinal numbers. The word dňa is almost always omitted.

Question	Answer
Kedy máme s ním stretnutie? *When do we have a meeting with him?*	**Dvadsiateho tretieho** (dňa) mája. *The 23rd of May.*
Koľkého máš narodeniny? *What day do you have a birthday?*	**Tridsiateho prvého** augusta. *The 31st of August.*

In Slovak you say the single whole integer for the year.

Examples:

1820	Tisíc osemsto dvadsať *((one) thousand eight hundred twenty)*.
1993	Tisíc deväťsto deväťdesiať tri *((one) thousand nine-hundred ninety-three)*.
2007	Dvetisíc sedem *(two thousand seven)*.

Activities

A. Telling Time

On a separate sheet of paper, write down how you would express each time given using a complete sentence. Include the time of day. Check your answers. You may also do this activity out loud with your companion.

Example: 9:00 a.m. → Je deväť hodín ráno.

1. 8:00 a.m.
2. 3:15 a.m.
3. 3:45 p.m.
4. 5:39 p.m.
5. 10:48 a.m.
6. 1:19 p.m.
7. 12:00 p.m.
8. 2:03 a.m.
9. 4:30 p.m.
10. 1:00 a.m.

B. Translation

Translate the following sentences, focusing on expressing the time correctly. Check your answers.

1. We will come by at 11:00 in the morning.
2. Church is on Sunday at 10:00 in the morning.
3. The baptism is on Saturday at 18:00.
4. The activity is from 18:30 until 20:00.
5. Could we visit you (formal) at 2:30 in the afternoon?
6. We have a meeting at 9:15 on Sunday morning.
7. We have an appointment at 8:00 on Monday in the evening.
8. What time will you (formal) get back on Friday?
9. We'll drive you (formal) there at 9:45 in the morning on Sunday.
10. Why did you (formal) wake up at 3:30 in the night?
11. Today is the 18th of August.
12. Tomorrow is Friday.
13. The Church was organized on April 6, 1830.
14. Next Sunday is March first.
15. Joseph Smith had the First Vision in the year 1820.
16. The meeting will be on Tuesday at 7:30 at night.
17. Today is December 23, 2008.
18. The baptism is on Saturday at 18:00.
19. Do you (formal) mind if we begin at 5:30?
20. What time do you finish working on Saturday?

C. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answer against the one listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. ***Je** dve štyridsať sedem.
   It's 2:47.
2. ***Koľko** je dnes?
   What's the date today?
3. ***Sú** deväť **hodiny** päť **minúty**.
   It's 9:05.
4. Môžeme sa stretnúť v ***piatku**?
   Can we meet on Friday?
5. Vrátime sa domov o ***šest**.
   We return home at six.
6. Je teraz ***pol druhej**.
   It's 2:30.
7. Dá sa pokrstiť ***v dvoch dňoch**.
   He's getting baptized in two days.
8. Dnes je ***jedného** mája.
   Today's the first of May.

D. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key. For any questions that you miss, write at least two sentences that you could use in your teaching today that use the correct form of the word.

1. Budeme tam o trištvrte na ôsmej.
2. Odišiel som devätnásteho apríla dvetisíc dvanásť.
3. O koľkého chcel, aby sme tam boli?
4. Plánovanie sa má konať vo štvrtok alebo v piatok ráno.
5. Pozvete do piatok Pavla, aby sa s nami stretol?
6. Navštívite s nami túto nedeľu o 9:00 ráno zhromaždenie?
7. Vstávame o pol siedmej každé ráno.
8. Včera bolo dvadsateho sedemeho augusta.
9. Obvykle som hladný okolo siedmej.
10. Odoberieme sa do postele o pol dvadsiatej druhej.
11. Ideme asi o pol jeden.
12. Od prvého do šestnásteho februára budem preč.
13. V roku osemnásť dvadsať sa Joseph odobral . . .
14. Koľko je hodíň?
15. Dáte sa pokrstiť tridsať prvého novembra?
16. Budeme tam v streda, dobre?

E. Companion Activities

1. Go over your plans for the week with your companion. For each event you have scheduled, practice telling each other what time the event begins and on what day.
2. Practice scheduling appointments with your companion as if he or she were one of your investigators. Ask what time would be best for the investigator and confirm the appointment after you make it. Get feedback on how well you expressed the time.

F. Language Study Plan Activities

1. Expressions of time vary by country. Listen to how the natives in your mission express the time and imitate them. Write down any phrases they use that you would not have used.
2. Prepare sentences using expressions of time and dates that you can use in your scheduled activities today, such as scheduling further appointments or telling investigators what time events start.

To, Čo and Before, During, and After

Examples

We lived as spirit children of Heavenly Father **before** this life.	**Pred** týmto životom sme žili ako duchovné deti Nebeského Otca.
In 1820, Joseph Smith lived **during** a time of great religious excitement.	V roku 1820 žil Joseph Smith **počas** doby veľkého náboženského rozruchu.
We understood and accepted this plan **before** this life.	Rozumeli sme a prijali sme tento plán **pred** týmto životom.
After we are resurrected, we will be immortal.	**Potom, ako** sme vzkriesení, budeme nesmrteľní.

Explanation

Prepositions require the noun that follows to be declined into a particular case. When prepositions precede words that cannot be cased, a neuter demonstrative pronoun is inserted to take the case of the preposition.

To, Čo

As seen in lesson 24 on prepositions, nouns that follow prepositions must be cased according to the assigned case of the preposition.

Example:

V Knihe Mormonovej nájdeme plnosť evanjelia.
In the Book of Mormon, we find the fullness of the gospel.

In English we often use expressions that combine two clauses such that they overlap. For example, the sentence "We are talking about what we read," contains two implied clauses: "we are talking about it (or what)," and "we read it (or what)." The two clauses are both referring to or sharing the same word (it or what). This is a very similar sentence to those requiring the use of ktorý from lesson 13. It may be helpful to review that lesson, especially the part about sentences using niekto, kto, and similar phrases. In the given example, "We are talking about what we read," the object "what" is being shared by the preposition "about" and the verb "to read." In English this works fine, but in Slovak a word cannot be shared in this way, due to the declension of nouns. The first clause, "We are talking about," needs an object, and the second clause, "we read," needs one too. So in Slovak, we insert the demonstrative pronoun to to "take the case" of the preposition in the first clause, and we insert the pronoun čo to receive the action of the verb "to read." Both the demonstrative pronoun and the following word (čo) must be declined correctly according to the assigned case of the prepositions or verbs involved.

Examples:

Hovoríme **o tom, čo** čítame.
We are talking about (it) what we read.

Sme súdení **podľa toho, ako** sme prežili svoj život.
We are judged according to (it) how we lived our life.

Prirovnajte seba a svojich záujemcov **k tomu, čo** ste čítali.
Compare yourself and your investigators to (that) what you read.

The pattern of *to, čo* should be followed whenever two clauses are being combined but it is inappropriate to use *ktorý*. This produces pairs like *to, kto; to, kde; to, keď; to, kedy; to, prečo; to, ako;* and several others. *To* can be paired with just about anything, depending on the required meaning.

Before, During, and After

This grammar principle is commonly used when describing an event using the prepositions **before, during,** or **after**. When using **nouns**, use the prepositions *pred, za,* or *počas*, and *po*, being careful to decline the noun that follows the preposition.

pred + (seventh case)	**pred** stvorením	before the Creation
za + (second case)	**za** odpadlíctva	during the Apostasy
počas + (second case)	**počas** pomazania	during the anointing
po + (sixth case)	**po** smrti	after death

Note: *Za* and *počas* differ in usage. *Za* is typically used to denote during a time period, whereas *počas* is used to mean during an event or action.

To express before, while, or after followed by an explanation of the time using verbs, use one of the following phrases.

Predtým, ako sme prišli na zem . . .	Before we came to this earth . . .
Zatiaľ čo sme tu na zemi . . .	While we are here on earth . . .
Potom, ako sa Josephovi zjavili Otec a Syn . . .	After the Father and Son appeared to Joseph . . .

Note: *Kým* can also be used to denote while or as long as and can replace the phrase *zatiaľ čo (ex. Kým čítate . . .)*

Activities

A. Determine whether to use *pred* or *predtým, ako*:

1. Before the birth of Christ . . .
2. Before we teach you about Joseph Smith . . .
3. Before the Church was restored . . .
4. Before the Resurrection . . .

B. Determine whether to use *za/počas* or *zatial' čo:*

1. During this life . . .
2. During the Great Apostasy . . .
3. While we live on this earth . . .
4. While you read the Book of Mormon . . .

C. Determine whether to use *po* or *potom, ako*:

1. After we are judged . . .
2. After baptism we receive the Holy Ghost . . .
3. After you read, will you pray?
4. After death, our spirit goes to the spirit world.

D. Translation

Translate the following paragraph using the grammar principles discussed in this lesson. Check your answers.

Before we went to lunch, we taught Rado. We taught about prayer and about how we can communicate with God. We then asked him, "According to what we've taught, what do you understand about prayer?" He gave us a good explanation about what prayer is. He was grateful for what we taught him. We are grateful for him.

E. Translation

Translate the following sentences using the correct form of before, during, or after. Check your answers.

1. After church we will visit Sister Háčková.
2. During the Apostasy, people still looked for the truth.
3. Before I came on a mission I went to school.
4. We will be resurrected before the Final Judgment.
5. You need to live the law of chastity before you are baptized.
6. After baptism we will continue meeting with you.
7. While we are here on earth we must show faith.
8. Will you read this chapter before our next visit?
9. We receive grace after we do everything in our power.
10. After Christ's death, the Apostles led the church.

F. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answer against the one listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. ***Pred** Boh stvoril zem . . .
   Before God created the earth . . .
2. Alma sa obrátil ***po** počul slová Abinadiho.
   Alma was converted after he heard the words of Abinadi.
3. Dnes chceme hovoriť ***o ako** sa môžeme modliť.
   Today we want to talk about how we can pray.
4. ***Predtým** vaším krstom budete mať pohovor.
   Before your baptism you will have an interview.
5. ***Potom ako** modlitbe, Joseph Smith vedel, čo má urobiť.
   After that prayer, Joseph Smith knew what he must do.
6. Budete konať ***podľa, čo** ste sa naučili.
   You will act according to what you've learned.
7. ***Predtým** učíme o krste, hovorme o pokání.
   Before we teach about baptism, let's talk about repentance.
8. Obdržíte vedenie ***o to,** kam ísť a čo robiť.
   You will obtain direction about where to go and what to do.

G. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key. For any questions that you miss, write at least two sentences that you could use in your teaching today that use the correct form of the word.

1. Pred naším stretnutím prečítajte túto kapitolu.
2. Potom apoštoli zomreli, ľudia pozmenili zásady evanjelia.
3. Cvičte sa v tom, ako budete učiť tieto pasáže.
4. Musíme ju pripravovať na pohovor predtým, ako krstom.
5. Rodinné vzťahy môžu byť zachované aj po smrti.
6. Mali ste nejaký duchovný zážitok, zatiaľ čo čítania?
7. Počas obradu pokrčíte vaše kolená.
8. Sila svedectva nezáleží od, aký silný je váš hlas.

H. Writing Activity

Using the phrases and words you've learned in this lesson, write down your own personal conversion story. Have your companion or a native speaker check your sentences. Incorporate your sentences into a testimony that you can share with your investigators in an upcoming lesson.

I. Companion Activity

With your companion, go over your plans for the upcoming day. Discuss where you will go after certain activities like your morning studies, and what you will do before other activities, such as lunch or other meetings. Focus on your use of the words and phrases that translate to before, during, and after.

J. Language Study Plan Activities

1. The use of before, during, and after is often more difficult compared to English. Listen carefully to how natives use these phrases or words and imitate their use. Make notes of what you discover for future study and practice.
2. Prepare as many sentences as you can, using both nouns and expressions that follow prepositions. Practice your sentences with your companion and set goals to use them during your daily activities.

When

Examples

When we serve others, we are serving God.	**Keď** slúžime druhým, slúžime Bohu.
When can we meet again this week?	**Kedy** sa môžeme zasa stretnút tento týždeň?
When could we come and teach your family?	**Kedy** by sme mohli prísť a učiť vašu rodinu?
The restored gospel blesses and helps families **as** they strive to develop stronger relationships in their families.	Znovuzriadené evanjelium požehnáva a pomáha rodinám, **keď** sa snažia vybudovať pevnejšie vzťahy vo svojich rodinách.

Explanation

There are three different ways of expressing **when** in Slovak: kedy, keď, and až.

Kedy

Kedy is used to to express **when** in questions, both direct and indirect. It is also used in referring to a specific time or date identified in the previous clause.

Examples:

Kedy budete mať čas, aby sme sa zastavili?
When will you have time so we can stop by?

Nikto nevie, **kedy** príde Ježiš Kristus druhýkrát.
Nobody knows when Jesus Christ will come a second time.

Pomôžte im určiť deň, **kedy pozvú** svojich priateľov.
Help them identify a day when they will invite their friends.

Note: Kedy can also be used to express ever, as shown in the following examples.

Examples:

Čaká na vás oveľa viac šťastia, ako ste **kedy** mohli zažiť.
There awaits you more happiness than you have ever experienced.

Táto práca je najdôležitejšia práca, ktorú **kedy** budete robiť.
This work is the most important work you will ever do.

Keď

Keď is used to express when or as in statements. In the future it can also take on the meaning of if and when.

Examples:

Keď Kristus zomrel na kríži, jeho duch sa oddelil od jeho tela.
When Christ died on the cross, His spirit became separated from His body.

Nebeský Otec nám prejavuje milosrdenstvo, **keď** nám odpúšťa naše hriechy.
Heavenly Father shows us mercy when He forgives us of our sins.

Note: The term *aj keď* takes on the meaning of **even though.**

Example:

Aj keď bol pokúšaný, Kristus sa nikdy pokušeniu nepoddal.
Even though He was tempted, Christ never gave in to temptation.

Až

The phrase *až kým* is used to express something that happens until a future time or event in statements. Note, however, that the verb is negated following a statement when this meaning is intended.

Examples:

Nemohol obdržať dar Ducha Svätého, **až kým nebol** pokrstený.
He could not recieve the gift of the Holy Ghost until he was baptized

Učte sa zostávajúce slová, **až kým** ich **nebudete** všetky vedieť.
Learn the remaining words until you (will) know them all.

Note: Až by itself can have the meaning "but not until."

Dám sa pokrstiť, až budem vedieť, že Kniha Mormonova je pravdivá.

I will get baptized when (but not until) I know that the Book of Mormon is true.

-kol'vek and *Hoci-*

-koľvek and hoci are both used to denote "**any**" as shown in the following examples. They can be used with any words denoting questions (kto, čo, aký, kde, kedy, and ako). Remember to declinate kto, čo, and aký when using -koľvek and hoci.

Examples:

Modliť sa môžeme **kedykoľvek** a v každej situácii.
We can pray at any time and in every situation.

Odoláme **akejkoľvek** túžbe dopúšťať sa hriechu.
We resist any (kind of) desire to give into sin.

Niektorí budú zápasiť s tým, ako prijať **hocičo** iné okrem Biblie.
Some will struggle to accept anything but the Bible.

Activities

A. Fill in the Blank

On a separate sheet of paper, write down the correct form of when to fill in each blank. Check your answers.

1. Naplánujte si, ____ sa ich opýtate o ich čítaní.
2. Môžete sa modliť podobne ako Alma, ____ prosil o pomoc.
3. ____ budete čítať tieto príbehy, hľadajte v nich zásady.
4. ____ ste naposledy prišli na zhromaždenie?
5. ____ príde Syn človeka... posadí sa vtedy na trón . . .
6. Pán vás požehná, ____ budete učiť svet.
7. ____ je to neuveriteľné, ľudia odmietli dokonca aj Ježiša.
8. ____ by sme sa mohli zastaviť?
9. Teraz je tá chvíľa v pláne Pána, aby sme rozniesli evanjelium ďalej, ako ho ____ predtým bolo možné rozniesť . . .
10. Povzbudzujte ich, ____ budete s nimi.
11. Nesmrteľnosť je stav, ____ žijeme naveky.
12. Členovia môžu platiť desiatok a obete ____.
13. Vyzvite záujemcov, aby sa podelili o skúsenosti, ____ im Kniha Mormonova pomohla.
14. ____ urobíte všetko, čo je vo vašich silách, stále môžete prežívať sklamania.

B. Translation

Translate the following sentences using the correct form of when. Check your answers.

1. We need to have faith when we're finding investigators.
2. I'll pray for my companion when he's teaching.
3. When will be the next zone conference?
4. When you know this is true, will you be baptized?
5. When did you last meet with missionaries?
6. When are you returning to Slovakia?
7. I will pray until I receive an answer.
8. Help investigators during the time they are being taught.
9. Teach when you find and find when you teach.
10. When did you start to believe in God?
11. The Spirit strengthened me when I prayed sincerely.
12. You'll find peace when you come to church on Sunday.
13. We must avoid pornography in any form.
14. Be confident that the Spirit will testify to anyone you teach.

C. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answer against the one listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. ***Keď** sa môžeme stretnúť zasa?
   When can we meet again?
2. ***Kedy** nastali správne podmienky, Joseph bol povolaný.
   When the conditions were right, Joseph was called.
3. Rozhodnite sa, ***keď** ich opäť navštívite.
   Decide when you will visit them again.
4. Pracujem efektívne, aj ***kedy** nie som pod tlakom.
   I work effectively even when I'm not under stress.
5. Je deň, ***keď** budete mať voľný čas?
   Ist there a day, when you will have free time?
6. Počas výučby sa snažte rozoznať, ***keď** nerozumejú.
   While teaching, try to recognize when they don't understand.
7. Podeľte sa so skúsenosťami, ***keď** ste boli požehnaní.
   Share experiences when you were blessed.
8. Je to tá najdôležitejšia cesta, pre ktorú sa ***keď** záujemca rozhodne.
   It is the most important path an investigator ever chooses.

D. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key. For any questions that you miss, write at least two sentences that you could use in your teaching today that use the correct form of the word.

1. Keď Boh opäť zjaví svoj plán, to sa volá dispenzácia.
2. Až sa modlíme, môžeme poznať pravdu.
3. Joseph Smith videl Boha a Ježiša Krista, kedy sa modlil.
4. Kedy pôjdeme na výmeny s ďalšími misionármi?
5. Ježiš Kristus trpel za všetkých, ktorí kedy žili a budú žiť.
6. Ste úspešní, kedy ste poslušní.
7. Máme hlbšiu túžbu pomáhať ostatným, keď sme pokorní.
8. Vyhľadajte príležitosti, keď ste boli vedení Duchom.
9. Keď sme pokrstení, môžeme mať dar Ducha Svätého.
10. Aj keď bol Kristus pokúšaný, nikdy sa pokušeniu nepoddal.
11. Neukázal sa im, až kým v neho mali vieru.
12. Ako ste sa cítili, kedy sme hovorili o jeho uzmierení?
13. Keď sa modlíte s vierou, budete cítiť Boží vplyv.
14. Až ste boli konfirmovaný?

E. Writing Activity

1. Using the different forms of when, write down as many sentences as you can describing what the Lord has done for you. Have your companion or a native speaker check your sentences. Incorporate your sentences into a testimony that you can share with your investigators in an upcoming lesson.
2. Make some long-term goals about what you will have accomplished by the end of your mission *(ex. Keď skončím misiu, budem môcť hovoriť plynulo po slovensky.)* Have your companion or a native speaker check your sentences for correctness.

F. Companion Activity

1. With your companion, think of the highlights from the previous day. Using the different forms of kedy, ask and answer questions about what led up to each event. Share with each other the vision you have for today and discuss what each event will lead to. You may say things like the following: “Keď ideme na námestie, budeme hovoriť so všetkými na ceste.”
2. Prepare questions using kedy that you can use to get to know your companion better. Ask about when he or she first came to feel that the Church was true, when he or she decided to go on a mission and other questions you come up with. Take turns asking and answering these questions with your companion and get feedback on your use of kedy.

G. Scripture Activities

Read Alma. 33:4–10 and identify how the Slovak word keď is used. Sit down with a member and take turns reading these verses aloud, switching after every verse. After you finish reading a verse, form a question using kedy based on that verse that you can use to help your investigator better understand the doctrine and apply it to his or her own life. For example after reading v. 4 you might ask: “Mali ste niekedy skúsenosť, kedy ste sa modlili za svojich nepriateľov?” Pay attention to the way the member forms questions using kedy. Ask for feedback, and use the questions you create in an upcoming lesson.

H. Language Study Plan Activities

1. The phrases you learned in this section are all used slightly differently in Slovak compared to English. Listen carefully to how natives use them and imitate that use. Make notes of what you discover for future study and practice.
2. Prepare as many sentences as you can, using kedy, keď, až, and aj keď, that you can use in your scheduled activities. Practice your sentences with your companion and set goals to use them during those activities.

How Often

Examples

We can pray at **any time** and in any place.	Môžeme sa modliť **kedykoľvek** a kdekoľvek.
In being baptized, we promise to **always** remember Him.	Pri krste sľúbime, že na neho **vždy** budeme pamätať.
We would like to meet with you **two times a week.**	Chceli by sme sa stretávať s vami **dvakrát za týždeň.**
A position in the Church is **often** called a calling.	Pozícia v cirkvi sa **často** volá povolanie.

Explanation

Examples:

Ako často . . . ? *How often . . . ?*	**Koľkokrát za . . . ?** *How many times a . . . ?*

The following sentences illustrate how Slovak uses two expressions to convey **how often** an event takes place.

Examples:

Máme zhromaždenie **raz za** týždeň. *We have sacrament once a week.*	Máme generálnu konferenciu **dvakrát za** rok. *We have general conference two times a year.*

Raz za

In Slovak the word raz means once. It is combined with za to express once when explaining how often something occurs. Sometimes the preposition do (+ second case) is used instead.

Raz za + (fourth case)

Examples:

raz za hodinu	→	once an hour
raz za rok	→	once a year
raz za týždeň	→	once a week

Note: Another common phrase in Slovak is “ešte raz” meaning once more or one more time.

-krát za

If something occurs more than once in a given time period, use the Slovak suffix -krát. It is combined with the number of times something occurs and is then followed by za. The following phrases are common uses of -krát za:

Examples:

dvakrát za rok *two times a year*	**trikrát za** deň *three times a day*	**mnohokrát za** mesiac. *many times a month*

Note: Krát can also be combined with just the **number of times** (without za) to express how many times something occurs.

The adverbs in this table can also be used to describe the frequency of an event (see lesson 15 for more on adverbs).

často (often)	málokedy (rarely)
stále (continuously)	občas (occasionally)
vždy (always)	pravidelne (regularly)
obvykle (usually)	sem-tam (here and there)

Každý

Každý is used to express "every" and declines as a hard adjective as shown in the following examples:

Examples:

Okrskové stretnutia sa majú konať **každý** týždeň. *District meetings should occur every week.*
Boh v **každej** dobe, i v tej našej, zjavuje svoj plán šťastia. *God reveals His plan of happiness in every age, including our own.*
Za **každý** hriech musí byť zaplatené, buď nami alebo Kristom. *Every sin must be paid for, either by us or Christ.*

Note: The phrase "zakaždým" can be used to denote **every time.**

Activities

A. Translation

Translate the following phrases on a separate sheet of paper. Check your answers.

1. Once a week
2. Three times a month
3. Twice a transfer
4. Every other (second) day
5. Every time
6. Twice
7. How many times a year?
8. Every morning on every Wednesday
9. Once a day for twenty days.
10. I read the scriptures regularly.
11. How often do you pray?
12. Sometimes he goes to church.

B. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answer against the one listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. Raz za ***hodina** preberám svoje ciele.
   Once an hour I review my goals.
2. Plánujeme ***každý** sobotu.
   We plan every Saturday.
3. ***Jedenkrát** za dva mesiace.
   Once every two months.
4. Za ***každýkrát** to robí.
   He does that every time.

C. Companion Activity

Ask and answer the following questions with your companion. Answer with complete sentences.

Example: Ako často sa modlíte? Modlím sa sedem alebo osemkrát za deň.

1. Ako často mávate okrskové stretnutia?
2. Koľko lekcií by sme mohli učiť za týždeň?
3. Ako často idete na nákup?
4. Koľkokrát za rok preberáte svoje ciele?
5. Koľko hodín spíte každý deň?
6. Ako často chodí (meno záujemcu) na zhromaždenie?
7. Ako často svedčíme na našich stretnutiach?
8. Koľkokrát za týždeň čítate v písmach?

D. *Preach My Gospel* Activity

Read "Vyhľadávanie prostredníctvom vášho vlastného úsilia" on page 167 of *Kážte Moje Evanjelium*. Ask yourself and your companion how often you have done each of the listed finding activities. Discuss how often you should be doing each of the activities and make plans to do so in order to add new investigators to your teaching pool.

E. Language Study Plan Activities

1. Prepare a list of questions to get to know the daily life of a member better. Ask them how many times a day or week they do certain activities. As they answer your questions pay particular attention to what expressions they use to describe how often they do these activities. Discuss questions you have about this grammar principle with the native.
2. Write down five sentences using phrases from this lesson that you can use in an upcoming teaching situation. Have your companion or a native check your sentences.

Review: Time, Date, and Frequency

This review will help you see how well you have learned the material in the previous sections. It will also help you evaluate your ability to apply several different grammar principles you have learned in performing the following function:

Asking and Answering Questions of Time, Date, and Frequency

- Time and Date
- When
- To, čo and Before, During, and After
- How Often

Activities

A. Error Correction

On a separate sheet of paper, rewrite the paragraph below, correcting the nine errors in it. Check your answers.

> Spýtali sme sa jej, či by sme mohli prísť na pol druhej poobede. Súhlasila, tak sme sa neskôr zastavili. Nebola doma, tak sme jej zavolali. Povedala, že mešká. Čakali sme pre 10 minút, potom prišla s koláčmi. Sadli sme si s ňou v jej dome. Predtým sme začali vyučovať, ona nám povedala: "Deň pred včerom som vás videla na námesti. Aj keď len čítam Bibliu párkrát za každý rok, chcela som vedieť viac, kedy som počula o Knihe Mormonovej." Začali sme jej vysvetľovať o tom, ako sme získali Knihu Mormonovu. Potom našej lekcii bola velmi šťastná. Chcela vedieť, keď by sme sa mohli vrátiť.

B. Error Correction

On a separate sheet of paper, rewrite the paragraph below, correcting the seven errors in it. Check your answers.

> Koľkokrát za deň sa modlíte? Keď sa najčastejšie modlíte každý deň? Boh má pre nás plán a chce, aby sme s ním hovorili často. Misionári sa často modlia, sedem alebo osem ráz za deň. Vedia, že potrebujú pomoc od Boha. Modlia sa pred jedia, a pred sa odoberú do postele. Modlia sa pred lekciami. Modlia sa, keď niekto potrebuje pomoc. Môžu sa modliť, kedy potrebujú pomoc s jazykom alebo vyučovaním. V roku osemnásť dvadsať sa Joseph Smith rozhodol, že sa opýta Boha na to, čo by mal robiť. Vďaka tej modlitbe, evanjelium bolo neskôr znovuzriadené v šiesteho apríla v roku tisíc osemsto tridsať. Modlitba je mocný dar, ktorý nám dal Boh.

C. Error Correction

This activity will help you see where you need to improve. Each sentence has an error. Write down the corrected sentence or say it to your companion. Check your answers. If you get an answer wrong, the "Answers" section will refer you to the principle you should study.

1. Naše stretnutie je v každom druhom utorku v decembri.
2. Koľko máš narodeniny?
3. Odoláme akýkoľvek túžbe dopúšťať sa hriechu.
4. Kedy slúžime druhým, slúžime Bohu.
5. Musíme kráčať podľa viery a nie podľa toho, vidíme.
6. Začíname od pol tretej (hodiny).
7. Premýšľajte o časoch, keď ste získali skúsenosti.
8. Kedy sme ju učili, cítila Ducha Svätého.
9. Je jedna hodina, sú dvadsať minút.
10. Podľa čo sme ťa učili . . .
11. Jedenkrát za týždeň chodím na zhromaždenie.
12. Kráľ Lamoni sa obrátil po počul slová Ammona.
13. Máme generálnu konferenciu dvakrát v roku.
14. Konferencia je o deviatej v ráno.
15. Za každé hriech musí byť zaplatené.
16. V devätnásteho apríla mám narodeniny.
17. Hovoríme o čo čítame.
18. Modlím sa mnoho krátov za mesiac.
19. Potom, ako krst prejavujeme vieru dodržiavaním svojich zmlúv.
20. Je tri hodiny.
21. V priebehu tejto alebo ktorej koľvek ďalšej lekcie . . .
22. Stretnutie skončí o štvrte na jednu.
23. Pokračujte, aj kedy ste unavení.
24. Príde o trištvrť na osem.
25. Viac ako kedy predtým rozmýšľa o tom, či Boh existuje.
26. Sú deväť hodín, päť minút.
27. Je to buď v auguste alebo v apríle.
28. Až kým máte právomoc od Boha, nemôžete učiť.
29. Je dve, štyridsať.
30. Sú trištvrte na osem.

D. Translation

On a separate sheet of paper, translate the following sentences into Slovakian. Check your answers.

1. How often do you go to church?
2. I read for a half hour.
3. We'll have an interview at 6:30 p.m. on Saturday.
4. Do you have time tomorrow at 10:00 a.m. in the morning?
5. We're going to talk about how God blesses us.
6. Before we start, could we pray?
7. It's two o'clock. When can you come?
8. Can we come at 7:30?
9. It was 4:45 when she came.
10. Before the prayer, we asked . . .
11. We have a meeting on the fourth of July.
12. After we die, we go to the spirit world.
13. It's 5:30 right now.
14. I was baptized six years ago.
15. Could we meet on the twenty second of this month?
16. Think about (lit. Ponder upon) why we have temples.
17. We were with God before this life.
18. When he testified, I felt the Spirit.
19. During an apostasy, there are no prophets.
20. I pray twice a day.
21. Until you learn the principles of the gospel . . .
22. Before we came to earth . . .

E. Companion Activities

1. Come up with a list of at least 10 events that you have scheduled for the next few weeks and to which you could invite an investigator (e.g., a branch activity, a baptism, a fireside, church meetings, a family home evening, English class, etc.) with a date, time, and location for each. Then have your companion play the role of an investigator and practice inviting him or her to that event. Focus on expressing the time and date correctly. Get feedback on how well you used these principles.

1. In your area book, find the Teaching Record for one of your progressing investigators. For each entry under "Comments about Teaching Visits," tell your companion how long ago the lesson was and what you talked about. Focus on correctly expressing the time and date as well as the principles in the lesson "To, čo and Before, During and After" (ex. Hovorili sme o tom, ako....) Have your companion correct you as you go. Then discuss the investigator's progress and needs with your companion based on the comments on his or her Teaching Record.

2. Listed below are several important events in Church history as well as a list of dates. Match each event with its date and tell your companion when the event occurred in a complete sentence. Have your companion check your answers in the "Answers" section as you say each sentence.

1. Cirkev bola zorganizovaná	a. May 15, 1829
2. Áronove kňazstvo bolo znovuzriadené	b. December 23, 1805
3. Joseph Smith obdržal dosky	c. Spring of 1820
4. Joseph Smith sa narodil	d. June 27, 1844
5. Prvé videnie	e. April 6, 1830
6. Kniha Mormonova bola vytlačená	f. July 24, 1847
7. Vražda Josepha Smitha	g. March 26, 1830
8. Pionieri prišli do Utahu	h. September 22, 1827

3. With your companion, take turns extending invitations to act by using the command form. (ex. "Čítajte Knihu Mormonovu"). Check with your companion to ensure that you are correctly using the command form.

F. Scripture Activity

Find a story in the scriptures that you will teach to one of your investigators. Practice sharing the scripture with your companion playing the role of that investigator. Make sure to use *keď* and *kedy* correctly. (Ex. *Keď sa toto stalo..."*)

Asking and Answering Questions of Quantity, Number, and Sequence

Purpose

This section is to help you talk about quantity and number; for example, **how many** kingdoms of glory there are and if **many** or **few** people go to each. The grammar principles in this section are targeted at helping you perform this function. Below are examples of the types of things you will be able to express with the grammar in this function.

- There are **three** kingdoms of glory. (Numbers)
- There are **many** people who have not heard of the Restoration. (Quantity and Genitive)

Application

Below is a list of doctrinal points that these grammar principles will help you teach, as well as some common missionary tasks that they will help you perform. This list is not comprehensive; it is meant to help you think about how you can use the grammar in real situations. In parentheses next to each point are some sample questions that you can ask yourself to help you think about how to apply the grammar.

Doctrines from the Lessons

- The Savior's Earthly Ministry (How many Apostles did Jesus Christ call?)
- The Great Apostasy (Why do many people reject the gospel?)
- Kingdoms of Glory (How many different degrees of glory are there? What happens to those who go to each degree of glory?)
- We Can Be Cleansed from Sin (What are the first steps to becoming clean?)

Quantity and Genitive

Examples

The Fall was **part of** Heavenly Father's plan of happiness.	Pád bol **časť** plánu šťastia Nebeského Otca.
The ten commandments are still valid today.	**Desať prikázaní** ešte platí i dnes.
Death is **a part of** the plan of salvation.	Smrť je **časť** plánu spásy.
How many children do you have?	**Koľko** máte detí?

Explanation

Whenever reference is made to quantity (a lot of, some of, a little of, part of), then the genitive case is used to express the "of." There are many quantity words which function with the genitive including the following: *koľko, mnoho, veľa, niekoľko,* and *málo*. Additionally, the numbers five and up have the same grammatical effect as these quantity words.

Examples:

Koľko záujemcov chceme mať na zhromaždení? *How many investigators do we want to have at sacrament meeting?*
Veľa ľudí premýšľa: „Odkiaľ sme prišli?" *Many people wonder, "Where did we come from?"*
Ježiš Kristus povolal **dvanásť apoštolov.** *Jesus Christ called twelve Apostles.*

Gender and Number of Quantity Words

All quantity words are considered singular, neuter nouns. Mistakes are often made with regards to past and present tense verb conjugation and in adjective agreement when this principle is not understood. For example:

Incorrect		Correct
Koľko ľudí **prišli** na zhromaždenie? *How many people came to sacrament meeting?*	→	Koľko ľudí **prišlo** na zhromaždenie? *How many people came to sacrament meeting*
Je smutné, že veľa ľudí **odmietli** toto evanjelium. *Sadly, many people rejected this gospel.*	→	Je smutné, že veľa ľudí **odmietlo** toto evanjelium. *Sadly, many people rejected this gospel.*
Sú veľa ľudí na námestí teraz? *Is there a lot of people on the namestie right now?*	→	**Je** veľa ludí na námestí teraz? *Is there a lot of people on the namestie right now?*
Veľa misionárov **sú usilovní.** *A lot of missionaries are diligent.*	→	Veľa misionárov **je usilovných.** *A lot of missionaries are diligent.*

Note: When a preposition precedes a quantity word, the noun will assume the case of that preposition (ex. v mnoho prípadoch . . .) Often Slovaks will use an adjective in place of the quantity word in this situation (ex. v mnohých prípadoch). Both forms are correct.

Mnoho vs. *Mnohí*

While mnoho and other quantity words are treated as a singular, neuter noun, mnohí (many) functions as an adjective meaning the noun it modifies will remain normal plural, instead of going to genitive plural (becoming neuter singular). The verb associated with the subject of mnohí will conjugate into the normal plural form. For example:

Examples:

Mnohí ľudia v dnešnom svete nemajú žiadnu predstavu o Bohu.
Many people in today's world don't have any notion about God.

Mnohí duchovní však tvrdili, že mali to pravé evanjelium.
Many ministers claimed to have the true gospel.

Mnohí z

Use the phrase *mnohí z* (or *mnohé z* for feminine or neuter) to say many of. The preposition *z* is genitive and puts the following word(s) into second case just like mnoho.

Examples:

Reformátori hľadali väčšie duchovné svetlo a **mnohí z nich** hovorili o znovuzriadení pravdy.
The reformers sought greater spiritual light and many of them spoke about a restoration of truth.

V rodine ľudia zažívajú **mnohé z najväčších životných radostí a trápení.**
Within the family, people experience many of life's greatest joys and sorrows.

Note: Unlike *mnoho*, verbs used in conjunction with the phrase *mnohí z* do not conjugate in the singular as is the case with the other quantity words like *koľko, mnoho, veľa,* etc. They conjugate into the third person plural just like *mnohí*.

Genitive Plural

To form the genitive plural of feminine and neuter nouns that end in a, o, or e (not ie or ia), the general rule is to drop the vowel and lengthen (in some way) something in the last syllable of the word, usually a vowel, if present. Many feminine and neuter nouns, however, end in an uncomfortable consonant cluster when the vowels are dropped. The consonant cluster at the end of the word is broken up by inserting an -ie- between the consonants when the root syllable is short, or inserting a short -o- when the root syllable is long.

1. Drop the vowel.	2. Identify consonant cluster	3. Add -ie-, -o-, or -e-
modlitb<u>a</u> otázk<u>a</u>	modlit<u>b</u>- otá<u>zk</u>-	modlit<u>ie</u>b otáz<u>o</u>k

Note: Other common genitive forms include: jedál (meals), nebies (heavens), látok (substances)

Examples:

"Problém väčšiny **našich modlitieb** je, že znejú akoby sme zdvihli telefón a objednali si potraviny . . ."
"The trouble with (lit. "The problem of . . .") most of our prayers, is that we give them as if we're picking up the telephone and ordering groceries . . ."

Evanjelium Ježiša Krista nám pomáha odpovedať na všetky druhy **otázok**.
The gospel of Jesus Christ helps us answer all kinds of questions.

"Otvorím . . . okná **nebies** a vylejem... na vás až nadbytok požehnania . . . " (Malachiáš 3:10).
"I will . . . open you the windows of heaven (lit. "of the heavens) and pour you out a blessing . . ." (Malachi 3:10).

Note: There are many exceptions to this rule not listed here. Use your resources (your companion, members, Slovaks, grammar books, etc.) to learn less regular genitive plural forms.

Activities

A. Verb Agreement

Conjugate the verb in brackets into the correct tense to match the genitive plural noun or adjective of quantity. The tense of the verb will be designated at the start of the sentence. Check your answers.

1. Past: Niekoľko z týchto ľudí [byť] pokrstených.
2. Present: Koľko záujemcov [prísť]?
3. Present: Mnohí [túžiť] po duchovných veciach.
4. Past: Aj keď mnoho dobrých ľudí [veriť] v Krista, nemali plnosť pravdy a kňazskú právomoc.
5. Present: Niekoľko ľudí [mať] ten istý názor ako vy.
6. Present: Mnohí [premýšľať]: "Odkiaľ sme prišli?"
7. Past: Od tej doby veľa ľudí úprimne [veriť] vo falošné kréda a náuky.
8. Future: Veľa ľudí ne[byť] veriť všetkému, čo ich budete učiť.

B. Fill in the Blank

Fill in the appropriate genitive plural ending in the space provided, for the word given in brackets. Check your answers.

1. Mnoho [ľudia] _____ sa cíti tak ako vy.
2. Kvôli slobodnej vôli existuje veľa [voľby] _____.
3. Náš záujemca má veľa [potreby] _____.
4. Koľko [bratia] _____ máte?
5. Aj keď máme veľa [hriechy] _____, Kristus zaplatil trest za všetky naše hriechy.
6. Nevadí nám koľko [otázky] _____ máte.
7. Mnoho [cirkvi] _____ verilo vo falošné náuky.
8. Kristus vykonal mnoho [zázraky] _____.
9. Poslušnosť prináša mnoho [požehnania] _____.
10. Robte veľa dobrých [veci] ____ podľa svojej slobodnej vôle.

C. Fill in the Blank

Decide which form of many (mnoho, mnohí, mnohí z) goes in the blank. Use the context of the sentence to decide which of the three translations is most appropriate. Check your answers.

1. Proroci učili evanjelium a _____ nich boli zabití.
   Prophets taught the gospel, and many of them were killed.
2. _____ ľudia dnes nemajú žiadnu predstavu o Bohu.
   Many people today don't have any notion about God.
3. _____ nás sa usilujú o dokonalosť bez pomoci Krista.
   Many of us strive for perfection without the help of Christ.
4. Spasiteľ učil evanjelium a vykonal _____ zázrakov.
   The Savior taught the gospel and performed many miracles.
5. _____ týchto ľudí nepoznajú pravdu len preto, že nevedia, kde ju nájdu.
   Many of these people don't know the truth only because they don't know where to find it.
6. Biblická história zaznamenala _____ prípadov, keď Boh hovoril s prorokmi.
   Biblical history contains many examples of when God spoke with prophets.
7. _____ záujemcovia ťažko rozumejú Biblii.
   Many investigators have a hard time understanding the Bible.
8. Kňazstvo prináša ____ duchovných a časných požehnaní.
   The priesthood brings many spiritual and temporal blessings.
9. Poslušnosť nám prináša _____ požehnaní.
   Obedience brings us many blessings.
10. _____ záujemcovia, ktorých učíte, boli pripravení Pánom.
    Many of the investigators you teach were prepared by the Lord.

D. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answer against the one listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. Koľko ***sú** nás tam?
   How many of us are there?
2. ***Sú** nás päť.
   There are five of us.
3. Veľa ľudí ***prídu.**
   A lot of people are coming.
4. ***Mnohí** nás neradi chodíme na zhromaždenie skoro ráno.
   Many of us don't like going to church early in the morning.
5. ***Mnohí** Židov odmietli Krista a jeho evanjelium.
   Many of the Jews rejected Christ and His gospel.
6. O mnoho ***roky** neskôr sa mu zjavil ďalší nebeský posol.
   Many years later, another heavenly messenger appeared to him.
7. Päť záujemcov ***prišli** na zhromaždenie.
   Five investigators came to sacrament meeting.
8. ***Mnoho** duchovní však tvrdili, že mali to pravé evanjelium.
   Many ministers claimed to have the true gospel.
9. Úprimné pokánie prináša hneď niekoľko ***následky.**
   Sincere repentance immediately brings several consequences.
10. Mám šesť ***súrodenci.**
    I have six siblings.

E. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key. For any questions that you miss, write at least two sentences that you could use in your teaching today that use the correct form of the word.

1. Veľa svetských hlasov sa domáha vašej pozornosti.
2. Veľa misionári má problémy s tým, ako efektívne študovať.
3. Po mnohých stáročiach znovuzriadil Boh evanjelium.
4. Uvedomovali si, že mnohé náuky a obrady boli stratené.
5. Koľko ľudia príde na zhromaždenie?
6. Mnohí nich svedčili o tom, že príde Spasiteľ.
7. Málo ľudí prišlo na zhromaždenie.
8. Mnohí z reformátorov boli zabití kvôli ich viere.
9. Veľa misionári slúži v pobočkách na Slovnesku.
10. Mnoho farizejov chceli Krista zabiť.
11. John Calvin napísal veľa komentárov k Biblii.
12. Veľa ľudí má ohľadom Mormonov falošné informácie.
13. Toto odpadlíctvo viedlo nakoniec k vzniku mnohých cirkví.
14. V mnoho prípadov vás títo ľudia povedú k iným.

F. Scripture Activity: Christ's Visit to the Americas

In 3 Nephi 27:33, Christ is about to return to heaven after His last visit to the Nephites. In speaking to the Disciples whom He called, He repeats part of His Sermon on the Mount using the words "few" and "many." Take note of how they are used in the context of the scripture and how the phrases "few there be" and "many there be" are translated into Slovak. Think about what kinds of common questions investigators might have that this scripture could answer and then take time to memorize it for future use in contacts or lessons.

G. Weekly Planning with *Kol'ko*

When reviewing the previous week and planning quantities for the next week, practice asking questions using *koľko*, and then respond using *veľa, niekoľko, málo,* or numbers five and above to practice the genitive plural. For example, the companion in charge of planning that week could ask "Koľko záujemcov prišlo na zhromaždenie minulý týždeň?" to which the other companion would reply using *veľa, niekoľko*, or *málo*. Then when planning the next week the first companion would ask the same questions and after discussing each category, the other companion would verbalize their goal emphasizing the use of numbers five and above to invoke the genitive plural ending. Proceed in this Q&A format until all categories have been satisfied and the words záujemca (masc.), odporúčanie (neut.), and diskusia or lekcia (fem.) have been correctly declined into the genitive plural. Reinforce this concept by applying it to your night-time planning sessions when all three of those words can be used again.

H. Practicing Genitive Plural

Learn the genitive plural for 10 new words, five of which must be -a or -o endings. Review the words with your companion and make a goal during companion study to incorporate these words into your daily activities. Practice speaking with your companion, incorporating the words into sentences and using them in conjunction with the appropriate quantity words (e.g., mnoho, veľa, málo, etc.). Have your companion give you feedback.

I. Help with Genitive Plural

Since genitive plural in the feminine and neuter genders can be difficult to find or guess correctly, choose two or three difficult words from those genders and write down what you think their genitive plural form is. Later, ask a native speaker for language help and try out your words in a sentence with a quantity word. Approaching natives with specific language questions can be a great way to start a conversation during finding activities.

J. Numbers and Genitive Plural

If you find that your district is struggling with the proper usage of genitive plural after numbers five and above, plan a district meeting activity in which you could do something similar to the following. Choose a scenario that involves discussion of quantities of five and over, such as how many minutes the missionaries spend on an average teaching lesson, how much time they spend in the shower, etc. If you choose a time-centered activity, select specific words like sekunda, minúta, or hodina to be declined into the genitive plural and used with numbers five and up. Try to do an activity which uses both feminine and neuter examples to strengthen your missionaries' practice of these special forms.

Declension of Numbers

Examples

Adam was the **first** prophet.	Adam bol **prvý** prorok.
The ten commandments are still valid today.	**Desať prikázaní** platí i dnes.
I have **two brothers** and **two sisters.**	Mám **dvoch bratov** a **dve sestry.**

Explanation

Slovak has different number sets used for different purposes. Cardinal numbers describe quantity while ordinal numbers describe rank or position. Numbered items like trams, buses, and hotel rooms also use a special set of numbers.

Examples:

Mám **troch bratov** a jednu sestru.
I have three brothers and one sister.

Záväzky nevyhnutné ku krstu sú uvedené **v** prvých **štyroch** lekciách.
Commitments essential for baptism are listed in the first four lessons.

One

The number one (jeden, jedno, jedna) declines like the demonstrative pronoun (ten, to, tá). Declensions are given below.

Case	Masculine	Neuter	Feminine	Examples (feminine only)
1	jeden	jedno	jedna	Je **jedna** hodina. *It is one o'clock.*
2	jedného	jedného	jednej	Učte z **jednej** z lekcií. *Teach from one of the lessons.*
3	jednému	jednému	jednej	Pomáhame **jednej** starej žene. *We're helping one old woman.*
4	jedného (animate) jeden (inanimate)	jedno	jednu	Vyberte si **jednu** vec, ktorú chcete zlepšiť. *Choose one thing that you want to improve.*
6	jednom	jednom	jednej	Pripravte posolstvo o **jednej** z lekcií. *Prepare a message about one of the lessons.*
7	jedným	jedným	jednou	**Jednou** z vašich povinností je . . . *One of your responsibilities is . . .*

Two, Three, Four, and Five

Declensions of the numbers two through five are given in the table below.

Case	Two	Three	Four	Five	Examples
1	dvaja (M-ani) dva (M-ina) dve (N, F)	traja (M-ani) tri (M-ina, N, F)	štyria (M-ani) štyri (M-ani, N, F)	piati (M-ani) päť (M-ani, N, F)	**Dvaja** misionári z Knihy Mormonovej . . . *Two missionaries from the Book of Mormon . . .*
2	dvoch	troch	štyroch	piatich	Svedectvo **troch** svedkov . . . *The testimony the three witnesses . . .*
3	dvom	trom	štyrom	piatim	Dali sme **dvom** ženám vizitky. *We gave two woman contact cards.*
4	dvoch (M-ani) dva (M-ina) dve (N, F)	troch (M-ani) tri (M-ina, N, F)	štyroch (M) štyri (M-ani, N, F)	*piatich (M-ani) päť (M-ina, N, F)	Zavolal na **dvoch** rybárov. *He called on two fishermen.*
6	dvoch	troch	štyroch	piatich	V **dvoch** alebo v **troch** vetách . . . *In two or three sentences . . .*
7	dvomi/dvoma	tromi/troma	štyrmi	piatimi	Pred **dvomi** dňami . . . *Two days ago . . .*

*The masculine animate form can use either piatich or päť. For example, *päť mužov* and *piatich mužov* are both correct. Numbers above five decline according to the same pattern as the number five.

Examples:

Ježiš Kristus povolal **dvanástich** apoštolov.
Jesus Christ called twelve apostles.

Prečítali ste svedectvá **troch** a **ôsmich** svedkov?
Did you read the testimonies of the three and eight witnesses?

Compound numerals (numbers with two or more parts such as twenty-two, forty-five, etc.) decline each part separately. Note, however, that the numbers 100, 200, . . . 900, 1000, 2000, etc. do not decline. In addition, numbers that end in -jeden (21, 31, 101, etc.) do not decline.

Examples:

Spýtajte sa jedného z týchto **dvadsaťjeden** misionárov.
Ask one of these twenty-one missionaries.

Joseph Smith mal prvé videnie pred **sto deväťdesiatimi dvomi** rokmi.
Joseph Smith had the first vision one hundred and ninety-two years ago.

Note: *Tisíc* (one thousand) can decline like päť.

Numbers five or more can also function like quantity words (see lesson 35). In this case, do not decline the number and use the plural genitive form of the plural noun following it.

Examples:

Povolal **dvanásť** mužov za svojich apoštolov.
He called twelve men to be His Apostles.

"Či ich nebolo očistených všetkých **desať**?" - ev. Lukáša 17:17
"Were there not ten cleansed?" - Luke 17:17

Ordinal Numbers

Ordinal numbers are commonly used to describe rank or position and tell both time and date (see lesson 30). They do not describe quantity as do cardinal numbers. This chart shows common ordinal numbers.

prvý	first	**piaty**	fifth	**deviaty**	ninth	**dvadsiaty**	twentieth
druhý	second	**šiesty**	sixth	**desiaty**	tenth	**dvadsiaty prvý**	twenty-first
tretí	third	**siedmy**	seventh	**jedenásty**	eleventh	**dvadsiaty druhý**	twenty-second
štvrtý	fourth	**ôsmy**	eighth	**dvanásty**	twelfth	**tridsiaty**	thirtieth

Ordinal numbers are adjectives, so they decline to match the noun they modify.

Examples:

Kážte **prvé** zásady evanjelia.
Preach the first principles of the gospel.

Druhou zásadou evanjelia je pokánie.
The second principle of the gospel is repentance.

Numbered Items

Numbered items refer to objects with a number associated with them. For example the “number one” bus or room “number twenty.” Below is a list of numbers used to denote such items.

jednotka	1	**päťka**	5	**deviatka**	9	**dvadsiatka**	20
dvojka	2	**šestka**	6	**desiatka**	10	**dvadsať jednotka**	21
trojka	3	**sedmička**	7	**jedenástka**	11	**dvadsať dvojka**	22
štvorka	4	**osmička**	8	**dvanástka**	12	**tridsiatka**	30

Numbered items are feminine nouns, and decline as such.

Chodíme **štrnástkou** do mesta často.
We take the number fourteen into town often.

Bývame **na dvanástke.**
We live in number twelve.

Activities

A. Fill in the Blank

On a separate sheet of paper, write the cardinal number for each sentence in its correct form so that it agrees with the noun it describes. Check your answers after you finish. You may also do this activity out loud with your companion.

1. Viac ako _____ myšlienka. (one)
2. Vždy si budem pamätať _____ mladých mužov. (two)
3. Výučba _____ prikázania v samostatnej lekcii. (one)
4. Peter, Jakub a Ján boli _____ z pôvodných apoštolov. (three)
5. V nasledujúcich _____ dňoch . . . (five)
6. Rozdeľte misionárov do _____ skupín. (four)
7. Vyhýbajte sa tomu, že sa budete sústreďovať len na _____ alebo _____ spôsoby. (one) (two)
8. Prvé predsedníctvo a Kvórum _____ apoštolov... (twelve)
9. Po krste sú noví členovia opäť vyučovaní prvým _____ lekciám. (four)
10. "_____ najväčších tajomstiev misionárskej práce je práca!" (one of)
11. V každej z hlavných zásad určite _____ alebo _____ pasáže z písiem. (one) (two)
12. Pred _____ _____ rokmi sám Ježiš Kristus vyučoval svoje evanjelium. (two) (thousand)
13. "Kto z vás je taký človek, ktorý má _____ oviec a keď stratí _____ z nich, nezanechá tých _____ na púšti a nejde za tou stratenou?" - ev. Lukáša 15:4 (one hundred) (one) (ninety-nine)
14. "Hovorím vám, že tak bude radosť v nebi nad _____ hriešnikom, ktorí činí pokánie väčšia, ako nad _____ spravodlivými, ktorí nepotrebujú pokánie." - ev. Lukáša 15:7 (one)(ninety-nine)

B. Fill in the Blank

On a separate sheet of paper, write the ordinal number for each sentence in its correct form so that it agrees with the noun it describes. Check your answers after you finish. You may also do this activity out loud with your companion.

1. Posolstvo _____ predsedníctva . . . (first)
2. Ste na _____ stretnutí so záujemcom . . . (sixth)
3. Duch Svätý je _____ členom Božstva. (third)
4. Na _____ stranu napíšte vaše svedectvo. (second)
5. Svätenie _____ dňa je pre nás dôležité. (seventh)
6. Stretnutie je od _____ (hodiny) do _____ (hodiny). (eighth) (nineth)
7. _____ momenty so záujemcami sú veľmi dôležité. (first)
8. Dnes je _____ _____ (deň) mája. (twenty-fourth)
9. Predstavíme členov našim záujemcom na _____ alebo _____ návšteve. (second) (third)
10. "Krst vodou je iba polovica krstu a je nanič bez _____ polovice." (second)

C. Translation

Translate the following sentences, focusing on your use of ordinal numbers, cardinal numbers, and numbered items. Check your answers.

1. Teach the first four lessons before baptism.
2. Let's take the number two (tram) today.
3. At the beginning of your first visit, be friendly.
4. Read one of the first four gospels.
5. On the third day His Spirit and His body reunited eternally.
6. The second principle of the gospel is repentance.
7. They live in number 63.
8. We could take either number 18 or number 24.
9. Tomorrow is the tenth of October.
10. Today we will give out 10 brochures.
11. Discuss one of your new investigators.
12. Take number seven towards the city center.

D. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answer against the one listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. Mám ***tri** bratov.
   I have three brothers.
2. Duch Svätý je ***tromi** členom Božstva.
   The Holy Ghost is the third member of the Godhead.
3. Chceli by sme rozdať ***piaty** kníh dnes.
   We'd like to give out five books today.
4. Ja som tretí zo ***štyri** synov v mojej rodine.
   I am the third of four sons in my family.
5. Keď svetlo spočinulo na ňom, uvidel ***dvoch** bytosti.
   When the light rested upon him, he saw two beings.
6. Vstúpili sme do ***trojkej** smerom na východ.
   We got into the number three (tram) headed east.
7. Sme teraz na ***štyrom** stretnutí so záujemcom . . .
   We are now on the fourth meeting with an investigator . . .
8. Je to ***jeden** z najdôležitejších rozhodnutí vášho života.
   It's one of the most important decisions of your life.

E. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key.

1. Mám šiestich bratov.
2. Som s piatimi ďalšími misionármi teraz.
3. Bývame na druhom poschodí na jedenástkej.
4. Jeden z jeho úloh je vyučovať a svedčiť o pravde.
5. Prvou zásadou evanjelia je viera.
6. Pôjdeme do Bratislavy dvadsať ôsmeho (dňa).
7. Jednou z vašich povinností je spoločne so zborovými misionármi učiť znova prvé štyri lekcie a tiež piatu lekciu.
8. Čítajme zo štvrtý knihy Mojžišovej.
9. Riadime sa prvými zásadami a obradmi evanjelia.
10. Dostaneme sa tam trinástkou.
11. Včera sme učili štyri žien.
12. V stom druhom oddiele . . .
13. Jeho narodeniny sú vo štvrtok, dvadsiateho prvého marca.
14. Táto lekcia je tridsiata šiesta lekcia.

F. Scripture Activity: Joseph Smith's First Vision

Read the account of the First Vision given by Joseph Smith in Joseph Smith Životopis 1:16–17 (or in Kážte Moje Evanjelium, 36). Identify the numbers used in this passage and the nouns they match. Identify the gender and case of each number. Check your answers.

G. Scripture Activity: The Parable of The Talents

Read the parable of the talents in Matúš 25: 14–30. Identify the numbers used in this passage and the nouns they match. Identify the gender and case of each number. Check your answers.

H. Language Study Plan Activities

1. Have your companion help you identify times when you make mistakes dealing with numbers (i.e., during prayers, contacting situations, teaching appointments, etc.). Work on correcting these mistakes by saying the numbers you commonly get wrong in five different sentences each. Have your companion remind you when you miss one today.
2. Prepare a list of your own sentences using numbers that you would like to use when you teach and give it to a native speaker. Ask them to correct any errors and then talk about the errors together.

I. Practice Number Declinations

Together with you companion, talk about investigators you have taught in the past. Take turns asking questions about quantity and order. For example you might ask "In which lesson did you invite her to be baptized?" or "How many pages did he or she read a day from the Book of Mormon?" Focus on casing numbers correctly (number, gender, and case) with the nouns they modify and get feedback from your companion.

Example: Vyzvali sme ju, aby sa dala pokrstiť na našom **druhom** stretnutí.

J. Practicing Ordinal Numbers

Discuss with your companion upcoming events on the calendar paying specific attention to properly declining ordinal numbers. For further practice discuss the expected time durations of each activity. For more practice on ordinal numbers, see lesson 30, "Time and Date."

Example: Jedenásteho marca máme zónovú konferenciu. Naš vlak odíde o **siedmej** ráno.

K. Practice Number Declinations

With your district, practice talking about your new investigators as you would during a ward council meeting. Tell what you know about their children, friends, job, hobbies, etc., casing numbers correctly (number, gender, and case). Get feedback from each other.

Example: V ich rodine je **päť** detí a majú **dvoch psov.** Presťahovali sa do Košíc **dvadsiateho druhého** tohto mesiaca.

Review: Quantity, Number, and Sequence

This review will help you see how well you have learned the material in the previous sections. It will also help you evaluate your ability to apply several different grammar principles you have learned in performing the following function:

Asking and Answering Questions of Quantity, Number, and Sequence

- Quantity and Genitive
- Declension of Numbers

Activities

A. Error Correction

On a separate sheet of paper, rewrite the paragraph below, correcting the nine errors in it. Check your answers.

> Včera sme išli domov električkou (číslo sedem). Hovoril som s dve ľuďmi na ceste. Jedný človek, s ktorým som hovoril, sa volal Peter a mal osemnásť rokov. Druhý človek bol starší a bol zvedavý na to, prečo sme na Slovensku. Vysvetlil som, že sme zástupcovia žijúceho proroka na zemi dnes. Dozvedel som sa, že býva blízko nás a že má dvoch deti. Spolu sme prestúpili na dvejka. Kým sme sa rozprávali, všimol som si, že mal záujem o Knihu Mormonovu v mojej ruke. Potom, ako som vysvetlil, čo to je a ako sme ju dostali, dal som mu jeden. Mal veľa otázky, tak sme sa dohodli na ďalšom stretnutí. Spýtal som sa ho predtým, ako sme rozlúčili: "Koľko kapitolov prečítate dnes večer?" Sľúbil, že prečíta prvé dve kapitoly ten večer. Veľmi sa teším, že s ním budem dnes hovoriť. Hovoril som s mnohými ľudí predtým, ale nikdy som nehovoril s nikým takým, ako bol on.

B. Error Correction

On a separate sheet of paper, rewrite the paragraph below, correcting the four errors in it. Check your answers.

> Veľa ľudí nevedia o tom, čo robil Ježiš Kristus. Mnoho z nich by tiež povedali, že nevedia nič o Bohu, keby ste sa ich spýtali. Všetci sú deti Božie, naši bratia a sestry. Veľa z týchto ľudia hľadá zmysel života. Veľa sa obávajú o svoje rodiny. Naše posolstvo o uzmierení môže pomáhať týmto ľuďom.

C. Error Correction

This activity will help you see where you need to improve. Each sentence has an error. Write down the corrected sentence or say it to your companion. Check your answers. If you get an answer wrong, the "Answers" section will refer you to the principle you should study.

1. Toto je naše štvrtý stretnutie dnes.
2. Koľko ľudí prišli na zhromaždenie?
3. Ja som osem desať štvrtý misionár na Slovensku.
4. Pomáhame jeden staršiemu mužovi.
5. Vďaka veľa ľudí . . .
6. Kážte jedné zásady evanjelia.
7. Bývame na číslom jedenásť.
8. Pôjdeme tam s koľký ľuďmi?
9. V dvojkoch alebo v trojkoch vetách . . .
10. Tretí dňa sa jeho duch a jeho telo navždy spojili.
11. Posolstvo prvé predsedníctva . . .
12. Obvykle chodíme dvadsiatkou trojkou domov.
13. Pred dvom dňami . . .
14. Máme pár týždni, aby sme sa pripravili.
15. Druhá zásadou evanjelia je pokánie.
16. Jeden z trich svedkov hovoril . . .
17. Máte niekoľko minúty?
18. Ste na ôsemom stretnutí so záujemcom . . .
19. Rozprávali sme sa s päť ľuďmi na ulici.
20. S niekoľko ľuďmi musíme byť opatrní.
21. Mnoho chcú vedieť, prečo sme tu.
22. Veľa ľudí sa nás spýtali . . .

D. Translation

On a separate sheet of paper, translate the following sentences into Slovak. Check your answers.

1. Many are called but few are chosen.
2. We help a lot of people.
3. I know a few good scriptures.
4. On the fifth of this month, we are going home.
5. He chose six of the twelve missionaries.
6. There were many witnesses, but only three witnesses saw an angel.
7. This message is about a lot of people.
8. Are you taking (going by) number 3 or number 8?
9. We are near the three buildings.
10. We can find the answer to many of these questions.

E. Companion Activities

1. Turn to "Review: Expressing Desire, Need, Preference, etc." in this manual and look at the picture of the city. Pretend there is a bus or tram system that connects different parts of the city. Take turns with your companion explaining which tram or bus you would take to get to the locations outlined in that activity. If you are familiar with your own city, talk about which buses, trams, or trains you would take to get to various locations in your own city. Focus on correctly using numbers and get feedback from your companion.
2. Practice using sentences with quantity words relating to the activities of your day. (ex. Dnes máme zopár lekcií.) Additionally, practice using numbers five and above as quantity words, conjugating the noun that follows into the genitive second case. With your companion, identify and make a list of genitive plural mutations which you are unsure about. Ask members for help.

F. Scripture Activities

1. Choose one of your favorite scriptures that uses quantity words or numbers. Write down how you would explain it in your own words, focusing on correct declension. Have your companion or a native speaker check your explanation for correctness. Then practice explaining the scripture to a native speaker or your companion in the role of one of your investigators. Get feedback on how well you used these grammar principles and set goals to share your scripture with your investigator.

Asking and Answering Questions Using Cases

Purpose

This section will help you identify and correctly decline nouns depending on their context and usage. The grammar principles in this section are targeted at helping you perform this function. Below are examples of the types of things you will be able to express with the grammar in this section.

- God has a body of flesh and bone. (Genitive 2nd Case)
- We are helping others come unto Christ. (Dative 3rd Case)
- The gospel of Jesus Christ teaches the truth. (Accusative 4th Case)
- How have you seen this in your life? (Locative 6th Case)
- We work with God in this great labor. (Instrumental 7th Case)

Application

Below is a list of doctrinal points that these grammar principles will help you teach, as well as some common missionary tasks that they will help you perform. This list is not comprehensive; it is meant to help you think about how you can use the grammar in real situations. In parentheses next to each point are some sample questions that you can ask yourself to help you think about how to apply the grammar.

Doctrines from the Lessons

- The Great Apostasy (Why was there a Great Apostasy?)
- The Restoration of the Gospel of Jesus Christ (What would have happened without the Restoration? List the doctrines that were restored by Joseph Smith.)
- The Book of Mormon (What are the most important principles taught in the Book of Mormon?)
- Agency and the Fall (What would have happened if Eve hadn't partaken of the fruit?)
- Atonement (Where would we be without the Atonement? Why did Christ suffer for us?)
- Resurrection, Judgment, Immortality (What will happen when we are judged?)
- Through Christ We Can Be Cleansed from Sin (We can't be cleansed from our sins unless _____.)
- Faith (What do we believe when we have faith?)
- Repentance (What will happen if we don't repent?)

Tasks from the *Missionary Vocabulary and Phrases* Book

- Extend Commitment Invitations (What blessings will they receive after they have kept their commitment?)
- Use the Scriptures (How would the scripture apply to the life of the investigator?)

Genitive Case (2nd Case)

Examples

Happy families are founded upon the teachings **of Christ.**	Šťastné rodiny sú založené na učeniach **Krista**.
God is the source **of all truth.**	Boh je zdroj **všetkej pravdy.**
From this passage, what can we learn about faith?	**Z tejto pasáže,** čo sa môžeme učiť o viere?
Scriptures are written records **of God's commandments.**	Písma sú písané záznamy **Božích prikázaní.**

Explanation

Slovak nouns, pronouns (personal, possessive, and demonstrative), and adjectives decline into one of six different cases depending on how they are used in a sentence. The genitive case (2nd case) is used in a variety of situations as shown below:

	When to use the Genitive 2nd Case	Lesson In this Book	Examples
1	When telling the date.	Lesson 30	Dnes je **prvého marca.** *Today is the first of March.*
2	Nouns, pronouns, and adjectives following quantity words like koľko, mnoho, veľa, niekoľko, and málo.	Lesson 34	**Veľa ľudí** premýšľa: „Odkiaľ sme prišli?" *Many people wonder, "Where did we come from?"*
3	Nouns, pronouns, and adjectives following numbers five and up.	Lesson 34	Povolal **dvanásť mužov** za svojich apoštolov. *He called twelve men to be His Apostles.*
4	To express the english preposition "of."	This Lesson	Máme posolstvo **veľkej dôležitosti.** *We have a message of great importance.*
5	Nouns, pronouns, and adjectives following certain verbs and certain prepositions.	This Lesson, Lesson 24	Budeme odmenení **podľa našich skutkov.** *We will be rewarded according to our acts.*

Genitive Declinations

The following chart gives the patterns of nouns in their nominative, genitive singular, and genitive plural forms.

	Masc. Animate		Masc. Inanimate		Neuter			Feminine			
Nominative	pán	hrdina	dub	stroj	mesto	srdce	prikázanie	žena	ulica	dlaň	kosť
Gen. Sing.	pána	hrdinu	duba	stroja	mesta	srdca	prikázania	ženy	ulice	dlane	kosti
Gen. Plural	pánov	hrdinov	dubov	strojov	miest	sŕdc	prikázaní	žien	ulíc	dlaní	kostí

Note: For help on recognizing what declination pattern a noun follows see lesson 8, "Gender." For genitive forms of personal pronouns see lesson 4, "Personal Pronouns." For genitive forms of adjectives see lesson 10, "Adjective-Noun Agreement."

Expressing "of"

There is no Slovak word for the English preposition of. Instead, all nouns, pronouns, and adjectives that would normally complete a prepositional phrase beginning with of are declined into the genitive case. For example, the phrase "a message of great importance" would be translated into Slovak by simply dropping of and casing "great importance" (both adjective and noun) into the genitive case.

Examples:

Máme posolstvo **veľkej dôležitosti.** *We have a message of great importance.*	My sme misionári **z Cirkvi Ježiša Krista Svätých Neskorších Dní**. *We are missionaries of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.*

Genitive Prepositions

Every preposition in Slovak has a particular case associated with it. A few examples of common genitive prepositions are given below. Bold words are declined into the genitive case because of the underlined prepositions.

Examples:

Boh nás odmeňuje **podľa** našich skutkov a našich túžob.
God rewards us according to our works and our desires.

Spasenie znamená byť spasený **od** fyzickej a duchovnej smrti.
Salvation means to be saved from physical and spiritual death.

Bez zjavenia a kňazskej právomoci ľudia záviseli na ľudskej múdrosti, ktorou vykladali písma.
Without revelation and priesthood authority, people depended on human wisdom to interpret scriptures.

Note: For a more comprehensive list of genitive (2nd case) prepositions and examples, see lesson 24, "Prepositions."

Genitive Verbs

The direct object (that which receives the action) of most verbs is declined into the accusative fourth case. However, the object of some verbs decline into other cases. Here are some examples of common verbs whose objects decline into the genitive case.

Genitive Verbs	Translation	Examples	Translation
báť sa + (2nd Case)	*to be afraid of, to fear*	Nebudeme sa báť protivenstva.	*We will not fear adversity.*
pýtať sa / spýtať sa + (2nd case)	*to ask*	Spýtať sa Boha v modlitbe	*To ask God in prayer*
zúčastniť sa + (2nd case)	*to take part in*	Zúčastniť sa zhromaždenia	*To take part in church*
vzdať sa + (2nd case)	*to give up something*	Vzdať sa fajčenia	*To give up smoking*
zbavovať sa / zbaviť sa + (2nd case)	*to get rid of something*	Zbaviť sa hanby	*To get rid of shame*
tešiť sa z + (2nd case)	*to enjoy something*	Tešiť sa z jeho spoločenstva	*To enjoy his company*
týkať sa / týkajúce sa + (2nd case)	*to concern, regarding*	Obavy týkajúce sa závislosti	*Concerns regarding addictions*
dotýkať sa / dotknúť sa + (2nd case)	*to touch, to affect*	Duch sa dotkne srdca.	*The Spirit will touch the heart.*

Activities

A. Identify Genitive

Identify which words in the following sentences will be declined into the genitive case when translated. You may have to check the chart in lesson 24 to identify genitive prepositions.

1. The message of the Restoration of the gospel of Jesus Christ blesses families.
2. I saw a pillar of light exactly over my head.
3. From the beginning of the world, He has followed a pattern of love and concern.
4. What is the nature of God the Father and Jesus Christ?
5. Without revelation through a prophet, people fall into spiritual darkness.
6. During the apostasy, the Church of Christ was not on the earth.
7. They need to experience the joy of redemption by receiving forgiveness of their sins and enjoying the gift of the Holy Ghost.
8. Like prophets in earlier dispensations, Joseph Smith was called as the prophet of this last dispensation.

B. Fill in the Blank

Fill in the blank with the appropriate genitive form of the nouns, pronouns, and adjectives given in parenthesis. For genitive forms of personal pronouns see lesson 4, "Personal Pronouns." For genitive forms of adjectives see lesson 10, "Adjective-Noun Agreement."

1. My sme súčasť jeho _____ (rodina).
2. Učenie sa s pomocou _____(Duch) _____(Svätý).
3. Prostredníctvom _____ (naša) _____ (viera) môžeme . . .
4. Pomáha nám meniť túžby _____ (naše) _____ (srdce).
5. Svedčite o pravdivosti _____ (toto) _____ (posolstvo).
6. Naša viera rastie počúvaním _____ (slovo) _____ (Boží).
7. Je mnoho _____ (preklad) _____ (Biblia).
8. Ktoré z _____ (táto) _____ (spoločnosť) sú správne?
9. Hriech je neposlušnosť _____ (Boží) _____ (prikázania).
10. Všetci ľudia majú dar _____ (slobodný)_____ (vôľa).
11. Smrťou _____ (apoštoli) boli zo _____ (zem) odňaté kľúče _____ (kňazstvo).
12. Vykúpenie prichádza prostredníctvom _____ (Svätý) _____ (Mesiáš).
13. Máme učiť podľa _____ (potreby) _____ (záujemca) a podľa _____ (to), k čomu vás nabáda Duch.
14. Moc _____ (Duch) _____ (Svätý) je stredobodom _____ (obrátenie).
15. Musel zomrieť, aby sa každý z _____ (my) mohol tešiť z _____ (nesmrteľnosť) a _____ (večný) _____ (život).
16. Preto zjavuje pravdy nevyhnutné pre spásu prostredníctvom _____ (proroci) a _____ (apoštoli).
17. Ducha obdržíte prostredníctvom _____ (modlitba) a _____ (viera).
18. Takéto konanie _____ (osobný) _____ (rozhodnutia) je jedným zo zdrojov rastu.
19. Misionári a prezidenti _____ (misie) sa musia prispôsobiť miestnym podmienkam.
20. Niektoré pasáže z _____ (písma) sú jasné a nepotrebujú nijaké vysvetlenie.

C. Translation

Translate the following sentences focusing on correctly using the second case. Literal translations have been provided in parenthesis.

1. Will you take part in sacrament meeting (the gathering of the supper of the Lord) with us this Sunday?
2. Repentance prepares us for the ordinances of baptism and confirmation.
3. We should ask her about what she is afraid of.
4. No person can enter into the kingdom of God without baptism.
5. You can enjoy the presence of the Holy Spirit.
6. Jesus did not eliminate (get rid of) our personal responsibility.
7. The Book of Mormon is a source of great strength.
8. Ponder (about) its message concerning Jesus Christ.
9. Now our family enjoys peace and happiness.
10. One of the greatest secrets of missionary work is work!

D. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answer against the one listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. Zúčastníme sa ***Boží plán** tým, že obdržíme telo.
   We participate in God's plan by obtaining a body.
2. Bez zjavenia a ***kňazská právomoc** bola pravda stratená.
   Without revelation and priesthood authority, the truth was lost.
3. Pravdy týkajuce sa ***zásady** a obrady evanjelia . . .
   Truths regarding the principles and ordincances of the gospel . . .
4. Pokánie pomôže ľuďom zbaviť sa ***hanbu a pocity** viny.
   Repentance helps people get rid of shame and feelings of guilt.
5. Moc Ducha ***Svätý** je stredobodom obrátenia.
   The power of the Holy Ghost is central to conversion.
6. Boh sa teší z ***cudnosť** a nenávidí sexuálny hriech.
   God delights in chastity and hates sexual sin.
7. Plán ***náš Nebeský Otca** sa nazýva plán šťastia.
   The plan of our Heavenly Father is called the plan of happiness.
8. Slovo múdrosti hovorí, že sa máme vzdať ***tieto** látok.
   The Word of Wisdom says that we we should give up these substances.

E. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key. For any questions that you miss, write at least two sentences that you could use in your teaching today that use the correct form of the word.

1. Jedným z najdôležitejší prejavov lásky Boha je . . .
2. Keď nechcú vytrvať do konca, vzďaľujú sa od Bohu.
3. Kristus prišiel, aby uzmieril hriechy celého ľudstva.
4. Smrťou apoštolov boli zo zemi odňaté kľúče kňazstva.
5. Nie sme zodpovední za pád Adama a Evy.
6. Budeme odmenení podľa naš skutkov a naš túžob.
7. Ona sa bojí možnosť stratiť blízkych priateľov.
8. Čo sa týka svedectva tejto mladej ženy . . .
9. Čo ste sa naučili z toto príkladu o vašej vlastnej práci?
10. Joseph Smith preložil obsah týchto zlatých dosiek.
11. Spýtame sa ju dnes večer, či sa môže zúčastniť zhromaždenia.
12. Ak učíme prostredníctvom Ducha, Duch sa dotkne sŕdc ľudí.

F. Language Study Plan Activities

1. Using the scriptures and chapter 3 of *Preach My Gospel*, find 5–10 genitive forms of nouns, adjectives, or pronouns that you don't know very well that you could use in your teaching today and memorize them. Practice using them correctly in teaching situations.
2. As you go about your daily activities, keep a list in the back of your planner of difficult plural feminine and plural neuter noun mutations (words like modlitieb and sŕdc). Memorize these forms in conjunction with a second case preposition or verb (ex. Prostredníctvom vašich modlitieb . . . , Dotknúť sa sŕdc ľudí . . . , etc).
3. Prepare a list of your own sentences using genitive forms of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns that you would like to use when you teach and give it to a native speaker. Ask them to correct any errors and then talk about the errors together.

H. Review and Practice Using the Genitive

1. Review how to tell the date in lesson 30. Then go over your plans and your goals for the upcoming month with your companion. For each event you have scheduled, practice telling each other what time the event begins and on what day.
2. Review how the genitive is used in conjunction with quantity words and numbers five and up in lesson 34. Practice using these forms by describing persons, places, and things in the images in *Preach My Gospel*. For example you might say something like the following when looking at the picture of Lehi's dream on page two: "Je veľa nespravodlivých ľudí v budove."
3. In Slovak, the genitive form is often used to denote possession (in place of the apostrophe s ('s) used in English). Practice using sentances denoting possession with your companion. For example you might say things like: "Syn sestry Kováčovej je veľmi poslušný."
4. Practice teaching your companion about the role of the Holy Ghost in conversion. Use genitive second case verbs like dotknúť sa, báť sa, tešiť sa z, zúčastniť sa, spýtať sa, etc. Also use genitive second case prepositions like those in lesson 24. Get feedback and practice.

I. Learn with a Native Speaker

Choose something you struggle describing (a part of a lesson, an experience you would like to share, etc.). Ask native speakers to show you how they might describe it. Pay close attention to and write down expressions they use that use the genitive form. Use what you learned from them to share it yourself.

Dative Case (3rd Case)

Examples

Thanks to this testimony, I can live happily.	**Vďaka tomuto svedectvu môžem šťastne žiť.**
I'm grateful **to Heavenly Father** for this knowledge.	Som vďačný **Nebeskému Otcovi** za toto poznanie.
Will you pray **to God** about the truthfulness of the Book of Mormon?	Pomodlíte sa **k Bohu** o pravdivosti Knihy Mormonovej?
How could you **help** them feel the Spirit?	Ako by ste **im** pomohli, aby cítili Ducha?

Explanation

Slovak nouns, pronouns (personal, possessive, and demonstrative), and adjectives decline into one of six different cases depending on how they are used in a sentence. The dative case (3rd case) is used to denote the indirect object in a sentence. Nouns, pronouns, and adjectives following dative third case prepositions and verbs are also put into the dative case.

Dative Declinations

The following charts give the patterns of nouns in their nominative, dative singular, and dative plural forms.

	Masc. Animate		**Masc. Inanimate**		**Neuter**		
Nominative	pán	hrdina	dub	stroj	mesto	srdce	prikázanie
Dative Singular	pánovi	hrdinovi	dubu	stroju	mestu	srdcu	prikázaniu
Dative Plural	pánom	hrdinom	dubom	strojom	mestám	srdciam	prikázaniam

	Feminine			
Nominative	žena	ulica	dlaň	kosť
Dative Singular	žene	ulici	dlani	kosti
Dative Plural	ženám	uliciam	dlaniam	kostiam

Note: For help on recognizing what declension pattern a noun follows see lesson 8, "Gender." For dative forms of personal pronouns see lesson 4, "Personal Pronouns." For dative forms of adjectives see lesson 10, "Adjective-Noun Agreement."

The Indirect Object

The indirect object is the person (or thing) to/towards whom or for whom the action is being performed. If the direct object is heading somewhere specific, it's the person or thing the direct object is heading toward. For example in the sentence "He threw me the ball," the personal pronoun "me" will be put into third case because the ball is being thrown towards me. A helpful question to ask yourself when distinguishing between direct and indirect objects is: "Is this object being 'verbed' or is something being verbed to/towards this object?" If the object falls into the latter category, it should be declined into the dative third case. Here is another example:

Subject (1st Case)	**Verb**	**Ind. Object** (3rd Case)	**Dir. Object** (4th Case)
Boh	dal	Adamovi	kňazstvo.
God	*gave*	*(to) Adam*	*the priesthood.*

We will deal with the fourth case accusative in the next lesson. Here are some more examples of when to use the dative case to denote the indirect object.

Examples:

Máme zostať verní **Božím prikázaniam** po celý život.
We should stay faithful to God's commandments throughout our whole life.

Kristus **nám** dal príklad tým, že sa sám dal pokrstiť.
Christ gave (to) us the example by being baptized Himself.

Dative Prepositions

Every preposition in Slovak has a particular case associated with it. The preposition always directly precedes the noun it is going to decline and the noun will always decline into the case associated with that particular preposition. Dative prepositions include *k(u), kvôli, napriek, naproti, oproti, proti, vďaka,* and *voči*. In the following examples, **bold** words are declined into the dative case because of the underlined prepositions. For more examples of dative (3rd case) prepositions, see lesson 24, "Prepositions."

Examples:

Všetci potrebujeme božskú milosť kvôli **Adamovmu pádu.**
We all need God's grace because of Adam's fall.

Vďaka **tejto pasáži** sa Joseph rozhodol, že sa opýta Boha v modlitbe.
Thanks to this passage, Joseph decided to ask God in prayer.

Dative Verbs

The direct object (that which receives the action) of most verbs is declined into the accusative fourth case. However, the object of some verbs decline into other cases. Here are some examples of common verbs whose objects decline into the dative case.

Note: Some of these verbs typically use both an indirect object (in the dative case) and a direct object (in the accusative case), as demonstrated above with the verb dať.

Dative Verbs	Translation	Examples	Translation
brániť / zabrániť + (3rd case)	*to prevent*	Čo vám bráni v tom, že...	*What's preventing you from...*
čeliť + (3rd case)	*to face*	Čeliť problémom	*To face problems*
ďakovať / poďakovať + (3rd case)	*to thank*	Ďakujeme vám.	*(We) Thank you.*
dávať / dať + (3rd case)	*to give*	Dáva človeku svedectvo.	*It gives a person a testimony.*
gratulovať / pogratulovať + (3rd case)	*to congratulate*	On nám gratuloval.	*He congratulated us.*
odolávať / odolať + (3rd case)	*to resist*	Odolávať pokušeniu	*To resist temptation*
patriť + (3rd case)	*to belong to*	Patria Pánovi.	*They belong to the Lord.*
poddávať sa / poddať sa + (3rd case)	*to give into*	Poddať sa pokušeniu	*To give into temptation*
pomáhať / pomôcť + (3rd case)	*to help*	Pomáhať ľuďom, aby prišli k nemu	*To help people to come to Him*
prispôsobiť (sa) + (3rd case)	*to adapt to*	Prispôsobte učenie potrebám	*Adapt teaching to needs*
rozumieť / porozumieť + (3rd case)	*to understand*	Rozumieť starostiam	*To understand worries*
slúžiť / poslúžiť + (3rd case)	*to serve*	Slúžime druhým.	*We are serving others.*
sľubovať / sľúbiť + (3rd case)	*to promise*	Sľúbte ľuďom požehnania.	*Promise people blessings.*
ubližovať / ublížiť + (3rd case)	*to hurt*	Ublížiť iným	*To hurt others*
vadiť + (3rd case)	*to bother, to hinder*	Nevadí mi to.	*It doesn't bother me.*
veriť / uveriť + (3rd case)	*to believe something*	Veríte tomu?	*Do you believe that?*
volať / zavolať + (3rd case)	*to call to*	Zavolám mu teraz.	*I'm calling him now.*

Dative Verbs	Translation	Examples	Translation
vyhovovať / vyhovieť + (3rd case)	*to work for, to suit*	Čo vám vyhovuje?	*What works for you?*
vyhýbať sa / vyhnúť sa + (3rd case)	*to avoid*	Vyhýbať sa škodlivým látkam	*To avoid harmful substances*
dôverovať + (3rd case)	*to trust*	Dôverovať Bohu vo všetkom	*To trust God in everything*

Note: There are many more dative verbs than those listed here. Other common verbs include *podrobiť sa, zjaviť, povedať, ukázať, venovať* etc. Ask others for help on recognizing and using dative verbs.

Activities

A. Identify Dative

Identify which words in the following sentences will be declined into the genitive case when translated. You may have to check the chart in lesson 24 to identify dative prepositions.

1. We will help others by giving our time and talents to the Lord.
2. Give serious thought to your attitude and to the words you use.
3. Does it work for you if we call you on Thursday? Or would Friday be better?
4. We all need God's grace because of the fall of Adam and because of our own weakness.
5. It's been promised to us that God will give us strength to avoid alcohol.
6. Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbor.
7. When we obey the commandments, we show our love to God and to His Son.

B. Fill in the Blank

Fill in the blank with the appropriate dative form of the nouns, pronouns, and adjectives given in parenthesis. For dative forms of personal pronouns see lesson 4, "Personal Pronouns." For dative forms of adjectives see lesson 10, "Adjective-Noun Agreement."

1. Vaše povolanie _____ (vy) dáva právomoc.
2. Môžeme preukazovať našu lásku k _____ (on) . . .
3. Musí mať túžbu, aby slúžil _____ (Boh) a musí byť vysvätený k _____ (táto) _____ (moc).
4. Čo môžete urobiť, aby ste _____ (oni) pomohli porozumieť _____ (táto) _____ (otázka)?
5. Porozumeli sme _____ (tento) _____ (plán).
6. Napriek _____(to), že_____(my) niekedy nerozumiete . . .
7. Ďakujeme _____ (ty) za to, že si _____ (my) poslal prorokov.
8. Písma otvárajú okná _____ (zjavenie).
9. Zahŕňa vzburu proti _____ (autorita) a zavrhnutie prorokov.
10. Vďaka _____ (tento) _____ (nesebecký) _____ (čin) . . .
11. Buďte odvážni a milujúci, keď pomáhate _____ (ľudia) porozumieť _____ (to), čo musia robiť, keď činia pokánie.
12. Duch Svätý _____ (vy) otvorí vašu myseľ a srdce _____ (väčší) _____ (svetlo), _____ (poznanie) a _____ (pokoj).
13. Misionári sľúbia _____ (iný) _____ (ľudia) požehnania.
14. Boli ste privedení k _____ (táto) _____ (osoba).
15. Pán prikázal _____ (svoj) _____ (nasledovníci), aby kázali evanjelium _____ (celý) _____ (svet).
16. Svedectvo, ktoré prichádza k _____ (úprimný) _____ (záujemca) pred krstom . . .
17. Evanjelium je návod k _____ (šťastný) _____ (život).
18. Je _____ (ja) to ľúto. Ako _____ (vy) pomôžem?
19. Pomáhajte _____ (tieto) _____ (ľudia) porozumieť _____ (posvätný) _____ (podstata) krstu a konfirmácie.
20. Je dôležité, aby ste vyjadrili náležitú úctu ich _____ (náboženský) _____ (názory) a _____ (tradície).
21. Duch je vždy k _____ (dispozícia), aby vás viedol.
22. Dajte prednosť _____ (pasáže) z Knihy Mormonovej.
23. Nemôžete nútiť Ducha k _____ (odpoveď).
24. Pomôže vám čeliť _____ (problémy) a _____ (ťažkosti).
25. Misionári a prezidenti misie sa musia prispôsobiť _____ (miestny) _____ (podmienky).
26. Duch môže pomôcť _____ (mladý) _____ (ľudia) vyhnúť sa _____ (tieto) _____ (obrovský) _____ (pokušenia).

C. Translation

Translate the following sentences focusing on correctly using the third case. The words in parenthesis are hints to aid in translation.

1. You will express love to the Lord, your family, other missionaries, and people (who) you serve.
2. The Holy Ghost helps people understand important truths of the gospel and helps them avoid temptation.
3. Thanks to the Restoration we understand God's plan for families.
4. The Light of Christ gives life and light to all things.
5. We thank Him for our blessings and ask Him (about it) to help us know if the message of the Book of Mormon is true.
6. Help your investigators understand the Book of Mormon and (that) what they read in it.
7. He was without sin and was completely obedient to His Father. Though He was tempted, He never gave in to temptation.
8. Faith in Jesus Christ leads to action. It leads to sincere and lasting repentance.
9. When you are patient, you hold up under pressure (resist pressure) and are able to face adversity calmly and hopefully.
10. Do you believe in the Bible? Those who believe God's word are blessed.

D. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answer against the one listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. Je mi ľúto, že ***vy** je tak zima.
   I'm sorry that you are so cold.
2. Evanjelium pomáha ***manželov** a **manželky**.
   The gospel helps husbands and wives.
3. Boh ***nás** sľubuje určité požehnania.
   God promises us certain blessings.
4. Boh zjavil evanjelium ***Adama** a dal mu kňazstvo.
   God revealed the gospel to Adam and gave him the priesthood.
5. Boh povoláva prorokov, ***ktorý** udeľuje kňazstvo.
   God calls prophets to whom He gives the priesthood.
6. Kristus nám sľubuje, že ***nás** odpustí naše hriechy, ak . . .
   Christ promises us that He will forgive us of our sins if . . .
7. Vracajte sa späť k ***váš** študijnému denníku často.
   Return back to your study journal often.
8. Ježiš povedal ***Josepha**, aby sa nepripojil ku žiadnej z cirkví.
   Jesus told Joseph not to join any of the churches.

E. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key. For any questions that you miss, write at least two sentences that you could use in your teaching today that use the correct form of the word.

1. Dáva nám silu čeliť životné výzvy.
2. Učia nás našim kňazským povinnostiam.
3. Nemohol uveriť vlastným očiam.
4. Výzva ku krstu a konfirmácie má byť konkrétna.
5. Aby sme zabránili tieto zdravotným problémom...
6. Oceníme vaše pripomienky a návrhy k tejto príručke.
7. Vďaka tejto pasáži sa rozhodol, že sa opýta Boha.
8. Toto kráľovstvo sa prirovnáva ku sláve alebo žiare slnka.
9. Môžu byť odpustené hriechy uzmierením Ježiša Krista.
10. Slúžte ostatným a pomôžte ich získať evanjelium.
11. Viera vedie k pokániu, poslušnosti a oddanej službe.
12. Pán nám sľubuje požehnanie, silu a ochranu proti zle.

F. Language Study Plan Activities

1. Using the scriptures and chapter 3 of *Preach My Gospel*, find 5–10 dative forms of nouns, adjectives, or pronouns that you don't know very well that you could use in your teaching today and memorize them. Practice using them correctly in teaching situations.
2. Prepare sentences to use in your scheduled activities that use third case nouns, adjectives, and pronouns. Ask your companion and natives to correct your sentences and give you feedback. Look for opportunities to use these sentences throughout the day.
3. Often natives will use third case in phrases that do not directly translate into English (some examples were given in the exercises above). Carefully listen to native speakers as you talk with them in your daily activities. When you hear a phrase expressed differently from the way you would say it, write it down and practice it.

G. *Preach My Gospel* Activities

1. Read "Pomáhajte ostatným, aby prijali záväzky: Dvere, ktoré vedú k viere a pokániu" on page 8 of *Kážte Moje Evanjelium* and make a list of all the dative forms of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives. Check your answers. Review with your companion why each of these words was put into the dative third case. Repeat this exercise for other principles in *Kážte Moje Evanjelium*.
2. Read the Náš život na zemi on page 50 of *Kážte Moje Evanjelium*. Identify dative forms of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives and discuss with your companion why the genitive form is used in each instance. Then practice teaching your companion this principle focusing on your use of the dative. Get feedback and practice.
3. Read Kráľovstvá slávy on page 53 of *Kážte Moje Evanjelium*. Note how the phrase "prirovnávať sa k(u)" is used. Practice using this phrase to describe other allegories you find in the scriptures. For example, to describe how the seed in Alma 32 can be compared to faith, you might say: "Semienko sa prirovnáva k viere."
4. Describe to your companion what is occurring in the picture below. Who is being given what? What is the importance of this event and how it will help those to who come after? How can we use what is being given to help others resist temptation and understand the gospel? Focus on correctly using the dative case.
5. Look up an article in the *Liahona* or in general conference articles translated into Slovak that is on a topic that you will be teaching today (for example, faith). Identify 5–10 uses of the dative form (i.e., expressing "of," verbs, prepositions, dates, quantity words, numbers five and up, etc.). Check with your companion to make sure you understand when and why to use the dative case and set a goal to use it correctly in your teaching appointment today.

H. Scripture Activity: Matúš 24: 24:1–3

Read Christ's prophecy in Matúš 24: 24:1–3 (or in *Kážte Moje Evanjelium*, 36). Identify the third case pronouns used in this passage and why they are used. Practice using these pronouns by describing this story to your companion.

I. Work With a Native

Choose something you struggle describing (a part of a lesson, an experience you would like to share, etc.). Ask native speakers to show you how they might describe it. Pay close attention to and write down expressions they use that use the dative form. Use what you learned from them to share it yourself.

Accusative Case (4th Case)

Examples

God has a **body** of flesh and bone that is perfect.	Boh má **telo** z mäsa a kostí, ktoré je dokonalé.
Through **Jesus Christ,** we can overcome **physical death**.	Skrze **Ježiša Krista** môžeme prekonať **fyzickú smrť.**
We must show **that** we accept **Him**.	Musíme ukázať **to**, že **ho** prijímame.
A living prophet directs **the Church** today.	Žijúci prorok riadi **cirkev** aj dnes.

Explanation

Slovak nouns, pronouns (personal, possessive, and demonstrative), and adjectives decline into one of six different cases depending on how they are used in a sentence. The accusative case (4rth case) is used to denote the **direct object** in a sentence. Nouns, pronouns, and adjectives following accusative fourth case **prepositions** are also put into the accusative case. Finally, a number of Slovak **expressions** use fourth case including prepositions used in the context of motion.

Accusative Declinations

The following charts give the patterns of nouns in their nominative, accusative singular, and accusative plural forms.

	Masc. Animate		Masc. Inanimate		Neuter		
Nominative	pán	hrdina	dub	stroj	mesto	srdce	prikázanie
Accusative Singular	pána	hrdinu	dub	stroj	mesto	srdce	prikázanie
Accusative Plural	pánov	hrdinov	duby	stroje	mestá	srdcia	prikázania

	Feminine			
Nominative	žena	ulica	dlaň	kosť
Accusative Singular	ženu	ulicu	dlaň	kosť
Accusative Plural	ženy	ulice	dlane	kosti

Note: For help on recognizing what declination pattern a noun follows see lesson 8, "Gender." For accusative forms of personal pronouns see lesson 4, "Personal Pronouns." For accusative forms of adjectives see lesson 10, "Adjective-Noun Agreement."

The Direct Object

The direct object is the direct receiver of the action of the verb, or what is "being verbed." For example in the sentence “God gave us a plan,” the direct object is the “plan” as it is being given. The direct object in English will be declined into the accusative case in Slovak. Here is another example:

Subject (1st Case)	Verb	Ind. Object (3rd Case)	Dir. Object (4th Case)
Boh	zjavil	prorokom	evanjelium.
God	*revealed*	*to prophets*	*the gospel.*

The question “is this object being verbed?” will help you identify the objects to be declined into fourth case. Here are some more examples of when to use the accusative case to denote the direct object.

Examples:

Nebeský Otec poslal **svojho Syna** na zem, aby uzmieril **hriechy** celého ľudstva.
Heavenly Father sent His Son to earth to atone for the sins of all mankind.

Cieľom evanjelia je očistiť **ľudí** od svojich hriechov, aby mohli obdržať **milosrdenstvo**.
The purpose of the gospel is to cleanse people of their sins so they can receive mercy.

Po smrti Ježiša Krista hriešni ľudia prenasledovali **apoštolov** a **členov** Cirkvi.
After the death of Jesus Christ, wicked people persecuted the Aposltes and members of the Church.

Note: The state of being verb, *byť* , will not decline the noun after it into the accusative case. Here is a simple example:

Subject (1st Case)	Form of byť	Adjective and Noun (1st Case)
Boh	je	milujúci Otec.
God	*is*	*a loving Father.*

Note: Almost all Slovak verbs naturally decline the objects they act upon into fourth case accusative. Thus creating a list of fourth case verbs would be rather impractical. For exceptions to this rule, consult the lessons covering other cases in this manual.

Prepositions

Every preposition in Slovak has a particular case associated with it. The preposition always directly preceeds the noun it is going to decline and the noun will always decline into the case associated with that particular preposition. Accusative prepositions include *pre, na, za, cez,* and *skrze*. For more examples see lesson 24, "Prepositions."

Examples:

Zjavuje svoj plán šťastia pre **jednotlivcov** a **rodiny**.
He reveals his plan of happiness for individuals and families.

Dáme sa pokrstiť ponorením na **odpustenie** hriechov.
We are baptized by immersion for the remission (forgiveness) of sins.

When describing motion or a change of position to the location denoted by a seventh case preposition, the object of the preposition will frequently be declined into the fourth case accusative. Ask members to help you know when to use which case when describing motion.

Example:

Išiel som pod **strom** kvôli dažďu.
I went under the tree because of the rain.

4th Case Accusative Expressions

Expression	Translation	Examples	Translation
ísť o + (4th Case)	*to go about*	V našom posolstve ide o to, ako . . .	*Our message is about how . . .*
mať záujem o + (4th Case)	*to have interest about*	Má záujem o vaše posolstvo.	*He's interested in your message.*
spoliehať sa na + (4th Case)	*to rely on*	Spoliehame sa na neho.	*We rely on Him.*
prosiť o + (4th Case)	*to ask for*	Prosíme o pomoc.	*We ask for help.*
žiadame o + (4th Case)	*to ask for*	Žiadame o požehnanie.	*We ask for a blessing.*
modliť sa za + (4th Case)	*to pray for*	Modlia sa za silu.	*They pray for strength.*
v + (4th Case)	*on a certain day*	Stretneme sa v stredu.	*We'll meet on Wednesday.*
veriť v + (4th Case)	*to believe in something*	Veríte v Ježiša Krista?	*Do you believe in Jesus Christ?*
(4th Case)	*for a time*	Čakal hodinu.	*He waited an hour.*

Activities

A. Identify Accusative and Translate

Each sentence has a word or words that should be in accusative. Identify the words and underline them. Then translate the sentence into Slovak focusing on correctly using the accusative case. The words in parenthesis are hints to aid you in translation. Check your answers.

1. I learn (that) what is important for me when I study the scriptures.
2. We need to develop Christlike attributes (attributes similar to Christ's).
3. We can find truth through (use skrze) the Holy Ghost.
4. Reading from the Book of Mormon strengthens my testimony.
5. Today we have living prophets and apostles.
6. She has two young children.
7. We have a new assignment for Elder Carrier.
8. Jesus Christ paid the price for our sins.
9. We need to prepare Dušan for a baptismal invitation (challenge to baptism).
10. I know that the Lord will answer your prayers.

B. Accusative Singular and Plural

On a separate sheet of paper, write the translation for each word and then the accusative form of the word in both singular and plural. Check your answers.

1. Meeting	2. Kingdom	3. Habit	4. Challenge
5. Testimony	6. Sacrament meeting	7. Church	8. Principle
9. Missionary	10. Member	11. Thought	12. Promise
13. Investigator	14. Book	15. Referral	16. Street
17. Prophet	18. Scripture	19. Doubt	20. Week
21. Commitment	22. Concern	23. Desire	24. Comfort
25. Hand	26. Law	27. Rule	28. Test
29. Choice	30. Hardship	31. Sacrifice	32. Feeling
33. Belief/Faith	34. Branch	35. Ward	36. Doctrine
37. Miracle	38. Mistake	39. Light	40. God

C. Fill in the Blank

Write the correct form of the fourth case personal pronoun in parentheses for each sentence on a separate sheet of paper or do the activity out loud with your companion. See lesson 4, "Personal Pronouns," for help. Check your answers.

1. Ježiš Kristus zomrel za ____(my). Dal nám ____ (proroci), aby sme vedeli, čo máme robiť.
2. Skrze ____(on) nám môžu byť odpustené ____ (náš) ____ (hriechy).
3. Ja som to robil pre____(ona). Ona potrebovala ____ (pomoc) a ____ (útecha).
4. Satan chcel spasiť ____(všetci) bez toho, že by mali ____ (slobodná) ____ (vôľa).
5. Boh pozná ____(každý) z nás osobne.
6. My sme ____(oni) videli na zhromaždení. On nám povedal, že číta ____ (písma).
7. Prorok Boží ____(ja) povolal za ____ (misionár). Som vďačný za ____ (toto) ____ (povolanie).
8. Chceme ____(vy) učiť o evanjeliu Ježiša Krista.

D. Identify the Accusatives

The following passage comes from the talk "Pomôžte im na ich ceste domov" by President Henry B. Eyring (Generálna konferencia, Apríl 2010). Identify and write each accusative word on a separate sheet of paper. Check your answers after you finish. Bratia a sestry, náš Nebeský Otec chce a potrebuje našu pomoc, aby sme priviedli jeho duchovné deti späť domov k Nemu. Hovorím dnes o mladých ľuďoch, ktorí už sú v jeho pravej Cirkvi, a tak začínajú na úzkej a priamej ceste, aby sa vrátili do svojho nebeského domova. On chce, aby už na začiatku mali duchovné posilnenie, aby zostali na onej ceste. A potrebuje našu pomoc, aby sme ich rýchlo dostali späť na cestu skôr, ako začnú pochybovať . . .

> Najlepšou radou, ktorú máme dať mladým ľuďom je, že jedine tak prídu späť k Nebeskému Otcovi, ak budú vedení a napravovaní Duchom Božím. Takže, ak sme múdri, povzbuďme ich, pochváľme a vyzdvihnime všetko čo pozýva spoločenstvo Ducha Svätého. Keď sa s nami delia o to, čo robia a ako sa cítia, my sami musíme byť hodní Ducha. Potom budú v našej chvále a v našich úsmevoch cítiť potvrdenie od Boha. A ak cítime potrebu dať radu k náprave, oni v tom budú cítiť našu lásku a lásku k Bohu, nie pokarhanie a odmietnutie, ktoré môže dovoliť, aby ich v budúcnosti viedol Satan.
>
> To, čo od nás potrebujú najviac je príkladom toho, čo musia činiť. Musíme sa modliť za dary Ducha. Musíme študovať v písmach a v slovách žijúcich prorokov. Musíme si vytvoriť plány, ktoré nie sú iba želaniami, ale záväzkami. A potom potrebujeme dodržiavať naše sľuby Pánovi. A potrebujeme pozdvihnúť druhých tým, že sa s nimi podelíme o požehnania z uzmierenia, ktoré prišli do našich životov.
>
> A potrebujeme stvárňovať vo svojich vlastných životoch stabilitu a vytrvalú vieru, ktorú Pán od nich očakáva. Ak tak učiníme, pomôžeme im, aby cítili uistenie od Ducha, že keď vytrvajú, budú počuť slová milujúceho Spasiteľa a Nebeského Otca: „Správne, dobrý a verný sluha, nad málom si bol verný, nad mnohým ťa ustanovím; vojdi v radosť svojho pána!" A my, ktorí im pomáhame na onej ceste, budeme počúvať oné slová s radosťou.
>
> tak učiníme, pomôžeme im, aby cítili uistenie od Ducha, že keď vytrvajú, budú počuť slová milujúceho Spasiteľa a Nebeského Otca: „Správne, dobrý a verný sluha, nad málom si bol verný, nad mnohým ťa ustanovím; vojdi v radosť svojho pána!" A my, ktorí im pomáhame na onej ceste, budeme počúvať oné slová s radosťou.

E. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answer against the one listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. Ja som ***vás** poslal list.
   I sent you a letter.
2. Ten záujemca, ***ktorý** sme učili včera.
   That investigator, who we taught yesterday.
3. Podporujem prezidenta Nelson ako ***prorok.**
   I support President Nelson as the prophet.
4. Hľadám ***niekto**, kto mi môže pomôcť.
   I am looking for someone who can help me.
5. Sestra Vaňková prečítala ***celý** Kniha Mormonova.
   Sister Vaňková read the whole Book of Mormon.
6. Učili sme ***lekciou** o zákone cudnosti.
   We taught a lesson about the law of chasity.
7. Boh posiela ***prorokach**, pretože ***náš** miluje.
   God sends prophets because He loves us.
8. Stretli sme jeho ***milého manželka.**
   We met his kind wife.

F. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key. For any questions that you miss, write at least two sentences that you could use in your teaching today that use the correct form of the word.

1. Keď sa modlíme, môžeme pochopiť Božiu vôľu.
2. Ježiš Kristus nám dal svoje života ako obeť.
3. Naši záujemcovia majú vieru v Ježiša Krista.
4. Môžeme počúvať príhovora od staršieho Bednára.
5. V chráme môžeme cítiť Ducha Svätého.
6. Čo môžeme robiť pre Marek, aby rozumel?
7. Môžete čítať túto brožúrku.
8. Máš svoj lístok?
9. Môj spoločník mi dal útechu.
10. Kniha Mormonova obsahuje plnosťu evanjelia.
11. Ježiš Kristus sa obetoval za váš.
12. Vieme, že Pán vás posilní.
13. Chcete spoznať Boh?
14. Môžete pripraviť rozličné situácií a cvičiť vyučovanie.

G. *Preach My Gospel* Activities

Read out loud with your companion "Úspešný misionár" on page 10 of *Kážte Moje Evanjelium*. Point out to your companion all the accusative forms of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives. Check your answers.

H. Practice Using Accusative Case

1. Choose 1–3 subjects related to what you will be teaching your investigators, such as “repentance,” “baptism,” etc. Think of 5–10 sentences that you could use to teach each of those subjects. Make sure that every sentence involves the accusative case and write them down. You may need to use a dictionary to help you. Practice teaching these topics using the accusative case to your companion.
2. Practice teaching your companion a lesson that you already have planned for the day. Have your companion pay special attention to your use of accusative case and write down your mistakes. Make a plan to improve your use of accusative case.
3. Write down 5–10 sentences that each use a noun, pronoun, and adjective in the accusative case, in the singular. Have your companion check your sentences and then rewrite the same sentences in the plural. Again, have your companion check your sentences and discuss any mistakes.

I. Language Study Plan Activities

1. Using the scriptures and chapter 3 of *Kážte Moje Evanjelium*, find 5–10 accusative declinations you don’t know that you could use in your teaching today and memorize them. Practice using them correctly in teaching situations.
2. Read through several scriptures that you will be using during your teaching appointments over the next couple of days. Focus special attention on the accusative forms. Identify and memorize declinations you are not familiar with.
3. Prepare a list of phrases using accusative declinations that you would like to use when you teach and give it to a native speaker. Ask them to correct any errors and then talk about the errors together.

J. Study by Topic

Look up an article in the *Liahona* that is on a topic that you will be teaching today (for example, faith). Identify 5–10 accusatives from the article that are used in teaching this topic. Notice how they are used and set a goal to use them in your teaching appointment today.

Locative and Instrumental Cases (6th and 7th Cases)

Examples

Do you have any questions about **this ordinance**?	Máte nejaké otázky o **tomto obrade**?
In **these verses** we learn about **repentance**.	V **týchto veršoch** sa učíme o **pokání**.
We will call you the day before **our meeting.**	Zavoláme vám deň pred naším stretnutím.
Baptism **by water** is a **symbol** of the Resurrection of the Savior.	Krst **vodou** je **symbolom** vzriesenia Spasiteľa.

Explanation

Slovak nouns, pronouns (personal, possessive, and demonstrative), and adjectives decline into one of six different cases depending on how they are used in a sentence. The locative case (6th case) is used **only** after locative sixth case prepositions. The instrumental case (7th case) is used to express "through," "by," or "by the means of." Nouns, pronouns, and adjectives following instrumental seventh case prepositions and verbs are also put into the instrumental case. Finally, the instrumental seventh case may be used for emphasis.

Locative (6th Case) Declensions and Prepositions

The following charts give the patterns of nouns in their nominative, locative singular, and locative plural forms.

	Masc. Animate		Masc. Inanimate		Neuter		
Nominative	pán	hrdina	dub	stroj	mesto	srdce	prikázanie
Locative Singular	pánovi	hrdinovi	dube	stroji	meste	srdci	prikázaní
Locative Plural	pánoch	hrdinoch	duboch	strojoch	mestách	srdciach	prikázaniach

	Feminine			
Nominative	žena	ulica	dlaň	kosť
Locative Singular	žene	ulici	dlani	kosti
Locative Plural	ženách	uliciach	dlaniach	kostiach

Note: For help on recognizing what declension pattern a noun follows see lesson 8, "Gender." For locative forms of personal pronouns see lesson 4, "Personal Pronouns." For locative forms of adjectives see lesson 10, "Adjective-Noun Agreement."

Slovak nouns, pronouns (personal, possessive, and demonstrative), and adjectives only decline into the locative case when following the locative prepositions: *na, o, po, pri,* and *v(o)*. Remember that the preposition must directly precede the noun it is going to decline. In the following examples, **bold** words are declined into the locative case because of the underlined prepositions. For more examples of locative (6th case) prepositions, see lesson 24, "Prepositions."

Examples:

Posolstvo o **znovuzriadení** evanjelia Ježiša Krista požehnáva rodiny.
The message about the Restoration of the gospel of Jesus Christ blesses families.

Čo je dôležité pre vás vo **vašom živote**?
What is important for you in your life?

Po **smrti** náš duch odíde do duchovného sveta.
After death our spirit goes to the spirit world.

Instrumental (7th Case) Declensions

The following charts give the patterns of nouns in their nominative, instrumental singular, and instrumental plural forms.

	Masc. Animate		Masc. Inanimate		Neuter		
Nominative	pán	hrdina	dub	stroj	mesto	srdce	prikázanie
Instrumental Singular	pánom	hrdinom	dubom	strojom	mestom	srdcom	prikázaním
Instrumental Plural	pánmi	hrdinami	dubmi	strojmi	mestami	srdcami	prikázaniami

	Feminine			
Nominative	žena	ulica	dlaň	kosť
Instrumental Singular	ženou	ulicou	dlaňou	kosťou
Instrumental Plural	ženami	ulicami	dlaňami	kosťami

Note: For help on recognizing what declension pattern a noun follows see lesson 8, "Gender." For instrumental forms of personal pronouns see lesson 4, "Personal Pronouns." For instrumental forms of adjectives see lesson 10, "Adjective-Noun Agreement."

"Through," "By," or "By the means of . . ."

The primary function of the instrumental seventh case is to designate the means by which an action is performed. For example in the sentence "I'm going by bus to Bratislava," the noun *bus* would be declined into seventh case. To find the words that should be declined into the instrumental case, first find the action and then ask, "By what means was the action performed?" Here is another example:

Subject (1st Case)	Verb	Dir. Object (4th Case)	Means (7th Case)
Joseph Smith	preložil	Knihu Mormonovu	mocou Božou.
Joseph Smith	*translated*	*The Book of Mormon*	*by God's power.*

Here are some more common examples of when to use the instrumental case to denote the means by which an action is performed:

Examples:

Vaše štúdium evanjelia je najefektívnejšie, keď ste vyučovaný **Duchom Svätým.**
You study of the gospel is most effective when you are taught by the Holy Spirit.

Môžu mať túto otázku zodpovedanú **čítaním** a **modlitbou** o Knihe Mormonovej.
They can have this question answered by reading and praying about the Book of Mormon.

Instrumental Prepositions

Every preposition in Slovak has a particular case associated with it. The preposition always directly precedes the noun it is going to decline and the noun will always decline into the case associated with that particular preposition. Instrumental prepositions include *medzi, nad, pod, pred, s(o),* and *za*. In the following examples, **bold** words are declined into the instrumental case because of the underlined prepositions. For more examples of how instrumental (7th case) prepositions are used, see lesson 24, "Prepositions."

Examples:

Zmluva je záväzná a posvätná dohoda medzi **Bohom** a **človekom**.
A covenant is a binding and solemn agreement between God and man.

Keď študujete usilovne s **modlitbou** a **čistým úmyslom**, Duch Svätý osvieti vašu myseľ.
As you study diligently, with prayer and pure intent, the Holy Ghost will enlighten your mind.

Note: When describing motion or a change of position **to the location** denoted by a seventh case preposition, the object of the preposition will frequently be declined into the fourth case accusative. See lesson 38, "Accusative (4th Case)," for more details.

Instrumental Verbs

The direct object (that which receives the action) of most verbs is declined into the accusative fourth case. However, the object of some verbs decline into other cases. Here are some examples of common verbs whose objects decline into the instrumental case.

Dative Verbs	Translation	Examples	Translation
riadiť sa + (7th case)	to live by	riadiť sa prikázaniami	To live by the commandments
stávať sa / stať sa + (7th case)	to become	staneme sa čistými	We will become clean
trpieť + (7th case)	to suffer from	trpieť chorobou	To suffer from sickness
zaoberať sa + (7th case)	to be occupied with	zaoberať sa dôležitými vecami	To be occupied with important things

Emphasis

Usually, in Slovak, the verb *byť* uses only the nominative (1st) case, both for the subject and for the object. However, sometimes the object of a sentence using *byť* is declined into the instrumental (7th) case. Usually this happens when you could replace the verb *byť* with the verb *stať sa*, which uses the instrumental case. For example, if the sentence is "Sarah wants to be a doctor," the word "doctor" should be in the seventh case, since Sarah isn't inherently a doctor, but wants to become one. Professions are often placed in seventh case anyway, since they are not inherent qualities. The seventh case can also be used to emphasize the object of the sentence, when the object is not inherent in the subject. For example, see the sentence below, in which God is being described as a father, a quality that is not inherent in the word "God," but that the speaker wishes to emphasize. Again, only words that are the object of the verb *byť* can be declined into seventh case in this way.

Examples:

Boh je **Otcom** našich duchov.
God is the Father of our spirits.

Jediným Božím zámerom—jeho **dielom** a jeho **slávou**—je umožniť každému z nás . . .
God's whole purpose—His work and His glory—is to enable each of us . . .

Activities

A. Locative and Instrumental Singular and Plural

On a separate sheet of paper, write the translation for each word and then the locative and instrumental forms of the word in both in singular and plural. Check your answers.

1. Foundation
2. Passage (of scripture)
3. Missionary
4. Light
5. Temple
6. Mashine
7. Hope
8. Grace
9. Bishop
10. Message
11. Way (method)
12. Information
13. Prompting
14. Book
15. End
16. Opportunity

B. Fill in the Blank

Fill in the blank with the appropriate dative form of the nouns, pronouns, and adjectives given in parenthesis. For dative forms of personal pronouns see lesson 4, "Personal Pronouns." For dative forms of adjectives see lesson 10, "Adjective-Noun Agreement."

1. Mali ste pred ____ (misia) skúsenosti so ____ (služba).
2. Po ____ (vzkriesenie), človek sa stane ____ (nesmrteľný).
3. Čo viete o ____ (Pánova) ____ (práca)?
4. Pán nás učí, aby sme sa modlili so ____ (svoje) ____ (rodiny).
5. Adam sa dozvedel o ____ (správny) ____ (vzťah) ľudstva s ____ (Boh) ____ (Otec).
6. Náš Nebeský Otec odpovie prostredníctvom pocitov v ich ____ (srdcia) a v ich ____ (mysli).
7. Adam a Eva sa stali ____(naš) ____ (prvý) ____ (rodičia) na ____ (zem).
8. ____ (Svoj) ____ (uzmierenie) naplnil Ježiš Kristus zámer svojho Otca.
9. Pod ____ (vedenie) Otca stvoril Ježiš Kristus zem.
10. Ideme ____ (auto) alebo ____ (električka)?
11. Diskutujte o ____ (vzťahy) medzi ____ (jednotlivý) ____ (vlastnosti) v ____ (tento) ____ (verš).
12. Hoci budú naše telá vo ____ (večnosť) oslávené, v ____ (tento) ____ (život) trpia ____ (bolesti).
13. Pracovali sme deň za ____ (deň).
14. Určite si vlastnosť v ____ (táto) ____ (kapitola).
15. Behanie na ____ (miesto) a chodenie sú tiež ____ (dobré) ____ (cvičenie).
16. 16. Potrebujeme rovnováhu medzi ____ (práca), ____ (štúdia), ____ (oddych) a ____ (zábava).
17. 17. Oni túžia po ____ (patriarchálne) ____ (požehnanie).
18. 18. Chceme s vami hovoriť o ____ (naše) ____ (pocity) o ____ (cirkev).

C. Translate and Emphasize

Translate the following sentences into Slovak focusing on correctly using both locative and instrumental cases. Emphasize the **bold** words by casing them into the instrumental seventh case. The words in parenthesis are hints to aid you in translation.

1. In the scriptures, God's plan is called the **plan** of happiness.
2. When they live **by the commandments**, they show their love for (to) God.
3. The Fall was a **part** of God's plan.
4. The Savior gave His Apostles authority before His **death** and **resurrection**.
5. We must be baptized by **water** and by the **Spirit**.
6. The gift of the Holy Ghost is **one** of the most precious gifts of God in **this life**.
7. We can endure to the end by the constant **exercise** (of) faith, (**making**) repentance, and (the) **following** (of) the Spirit.
8. Bishops are **judges** in the Church.
9. **This record** is the Book of Mormon: Another Testimony of (about) Jesus Christ.
10. They are **God's children, our brothers** and **sisters**, and they need (that) what we have.

D. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answer against the one listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. Čítal Knihu Mormonovu na ***postele** pri ***počítače**.
   He read the Book of Mormon on the bed next to the computer.
2. Chceli by sme vás učiť o ***evanjelií** Ježiša Krista.
   The gospel helps husbands and wives.
3. Dovoľte mi, aby som sa s vami podelil o ***tomto zážitku.**
   Let me share this experience with you.
4. V tomto ***verše**, Nefi hovorí o tom, ako môžeme . . .
   In this verse, Nephi is speaking about how we can . . .
5. S jeho pomocou sa môžeme stať ***taký**, ako je On.
   With His help, we can become as He is.
6. V tejto ***pasáže**, Nefi prorokuje o misionárskej ***práce.**
   In this passage, Nephi is prophesying about missionary work.
7. Mnoho záujemcov už má vieru v **Ježišovi Kristovi**.
   Many investigators already have faith in Jesus Christ.
8. Máme sa spýtať, či vie o ***ako** bola cirkev znovuzriadená.
   We should ask if he knows about how the Church was restored.

E. Error Correction

Each sentence is either correct or has one error. Write down or say the correct form of the sentence to your companion and check your answers with those in the answer key. For any questions that you miss, write at least two sentences that you could use in your teaching today that use the correct form of the word.

1. Môžete svedčiť o posolstve o znovuzriadení v dve alebo v tri vetách.
2. V každej situácii—pri vyhľadávaní, pri učení záujemcov, pri práci s členmi—sa pýtajte na odporúčania.
3. Nikdy nevieme, kto je za dverami, keď klopeme.
4. Aké je spojenie medzi záväzkami a obrátenom?
5. Spôsob pohovoru pred krstom je spôsobom stanoveným Cirkev.
6. V duchovnom svete je evanjelium kázané tým, ktorí sa neriadili evanjelium.
7. Úzko spolupracujte s vedúcimi zboru.
8. Pravým kresťanstvom je láska v akcii.
9. Skončili sme lekciu po malej diskusie o modlitbe.
10. Po konfirmácii pokračujte v používaní záznamu o výučbe.

F. Language Study Plan Activities

1. Using the scriptures and chapter 3 of *Preach My Gospel*, find 5–10 dative forms of nouns, adjectives, or pronouns that you don't know very well that you could use in your teaching today and memorize them. Practice using them correctly in teaching situations.
2. Prepare sentences to use in your scheduled activities that use third case nouns, adjectives, and pronouns. Ask your companion and natives to correct your sentences and give you feedback. Look for opportunities to use these sentences throughout the day.
3. Often natives will use third case in phrases that do not directly translate into English (some examples were given in the exercises above). Carefully listen to native speakers as you talk with them in your daily activities. When you hear a phrase expressed differently from the way you would say it, write it down and practice it.

G. *Preach My Gospel* Activities

1. Read *"Kniha Mormonova" Ďalšie svedectvo o Ježišovi Kristovi"* on page 38 of *Kážte moje evanjelium* and make a list of all the locative/instrumental forms of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives. Check your answers. Review with your companion why each of these words was put into the locative/instrumental case. Repeat this exercise for other principles in *Kážte moje evanjelium.*
2. Read the *"Nebeský Otec zjavuje Svoje evanjelium v každej dispenzácii"* on page 32 of *Kážte moje evanjelium*. Identify locative/instrumental forms of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives and discuss with your companion why the locative/instrumental form is used in each instance. Then practice teaching your companion this principle focusing on your use of the dative. Get feedback and practice again.

H. Scripture Activity: Lukáš 13:10–17

Read the healing of a woman in Lukáš 13:10–17 (or in *Kážte moje evanjelium*, 36). Identify the locative/instrumental nouns used in this passage and why they are used. Practice using these nouns by describing this story to your companion.

I. Work With a Native

Choose something you struggle describing (a part of a lesson, an experience you would like to share, etc.). Ask native speakers to show you how they might describe it. Pay close attention to and write down expressions they use that use the locative/instrumental form. Use what you learned from them to share it yourself.

Uncommon Noun Declensions

Examples

You can help **people** gain a correct **knowledge** about **God**.	Môžete **ľuďom** pomôcť tak, že získajú správnu **znalosť o Bohu.**
Moroni testifies of the **Savior** and of the **power** of His **Atonement**.	Moroni svedči o **Spasiteľovi** a o **moci** Jeho **uzmierenia**.
Sadly, a lot of **people** have rejected this **gospel**.	Je smutné, že veľa **ľudí** odmietalo toto **evanjelium.**
The authority given to **man** to act in the name of **Christ**.	Právomoc daná **človeku**, aby konal v mene **Krista**.

Explanation

Many nouns follow casing patterns slightly different than those presented in this book. Some of these patterns are given below. Use your resources (i.e., your companion, members, and natives) for help when unsure of a declension pattern.

Declension

The following charts give the normal patterns of Slovak declension.

	Singular										
Cases	**Masc. Animate**		**Masc. Inanimate**		**Neuter**			**Feminine**			
1	pán	hrdina	dub	stroj	mesto	srdce	prikázanie	žena	ulica	dlaň	kosť
2	pána	hrdinu	duba	stroja	mesta	srdca	prikázania	ženy	ulice	dlane	kosti
3	pánovi	hrdinovi	dubu	stroju	mestu	srdcu	prikázaniu	žene	ulici	dlani	kosti
4	pána	hrdinu	dub	stroj	mesto	srdce	prikázanie	ženu	ulicu	dlaň	kosť
6	pánovi	hrdinovi	dube	stroji	meste	srdci	prikázaní	žene	ulici	dlani	kosti
7	pánom	hrdinom	dubom	strojom	mestom	srdcom	prikázaním	ženou	ulicou	dlaňou	kosťou

	Plural										
Cases	**Masc. Animate**		**Masc. Inanimate**		**Neuter**			**Feminine**			
1	páni	hrdinovia	duby	stroje	mestá	srdcia	prikázania	ženy	ulice	dlane	kosti
2	pánov	hrdinov	dubov	strojov	miest	sŕdc	prikázaní	žien	ulíc	dlaní	kostí
3	pánom	hrdinom	dubom	strojom	mestám	srdciam	prikázaniam	ženám	uliciam	dlaniam	kostiam
4	pánov	hrdinov	duby	stroje	mestá	srdcia	prikázania	ženy	ulice	dlane	kosti
6	pánoch	hrdinoch	duboch	strojoch	mestách	srdciach	prikázaniach	ženách	uliciach	dlaniach	kostiach
7	pánmi	hrdinami	dubmi	strojmi	mestami	srdcami	prikázaniami	ženami	ulicami	dlaňami	kosťami

Less Regular Declension

Genetive Singular -u Ending Nouns following *Dub*

Many common masculine inanimate words normally following *dub* decline with an ending *-u* instead of *-a.* Some of these words include: *krst, dar, vzor, obrad, hrad, pád, nápad, preklad, príklad, výklad, základ, dôvod, príkaz, odkaz, dôkaz, obraz, pocit, súcit, vlak, krok, pokrok, výsledok, dôsledok, zážitok, úžitok, zmätok, hnev, prejav, stav, plán, dom, vzťah, druh, úspech, prospech, diel,* and masculine names for days of the week.

Examples:

Získajú odpustenie hriechov prostredníctvom **krstu**.
*They will receive forgiveness of sins through **baptism**.*

Čo ste sa naučili z tohoto **príkladu** o vašej vlastnej práci?
*What do you learn from this **example** about your own work?*

Boh, Duch, and *Človek* Declensions

Boh, duch, and človek follow pán except in their singular third and sixth case in which they end with -u, instead of -ovi.

Examples:

Môžete ľuďom pomôcť tak, že získajú správnu znalosť **o Bohu**.
*You can help people gain a correct knowledge **about God**.*

Budeme vás učiť **o Duchu** Svätom.
We are going to teach you about the Holy Ghost.

Note: *Človek* becomes *ľudia* in its plural form. *Ľudia* declines as follows: *ľudia, ľudí, ľuďom, ľudí, ľudoch,* and *ľuďmi*.

Masculine Animate and Inanimate *-us* Endings

Masculine animate nouns ending in *-us* will decline by losing the *-us* and following pán. Common examples include *Kristus, Kolumbus,* and *génius*. Masculine inanimate nouns ending in *-us* will decline by losing the *-us* and following dub. In the latter case, however, the genitive singular declines with the ending *-u*. Common examples include *socializmus, fašizmus,* and *optimizmus*.

Examples:

Prejavuje sa v **dôvere, optimizme, nadšení a trpezlivej vytrvalosti**.
*It is manifest in confidence, **optimism**, enthusiasm, and patient perserverance.*

Ľudia môžu prísť ku **Kristovi** a byť spasení.
*People can come unto **Christ** and be saved.*

Latin Based *-um* Endings

Latin based *-um* are neuter and decline by droping the *-um* ending (except 1st and 4th case) and following *mesto*. If, however, the letter before the *-um* is a vowel as in *evanjelium* or *múzeum*, the sixth case declension will be end in *-u* instead of *-e*. Common examples include *štúdium, centrum, maximum, minimum, spektrum, evanjelium,* and *auditórium*.

1	múzeum	múzeá
2	múzea	múzeí, centier
3	múzeu	múzeám
4	múzeum	múzeá
6	múzeu, centre	múzeách
7	múzeom	múzeami

Examples:

Stručne zhrňte lekciu o **evanjeliu** Ježiša Krista.
*Briefly summarize the lesson about the **gospel** of Jesus Christ.*

V **evanjeliách** sa môžeme učiť o živote Krista.
*We can learn about the life of Christ in the **gospels**.*

Sme teraz v **centre** Bratislavy, kde ste vy?
*We are now in the **center** of Bratislava, where are you?*

Neuter a- Ending

Neuter a-ending nouns decline in the following way. Common examples include *kura/kurča* (chicken), *zviera* (animal), *dievča* (girl), *dieťa* (child, sg. only), *knieža* (prince), and *prasa* (pig).

1	dievča	dievč**atá** /-**ence**
2	dievčaťa	dievč**at** /-**eniec**
3	dievčaťu	dievč**atám** /-**encome**
4	dievča	dievč**atá** /-**ence**
6	dievčati	dievč**atách** /-**encoch**
7	dievčaťom	dievč**atami** /-**encami**

Examples:

Každý človek na zemi je Božím **dieťaťom**.
*Every person on earth is a **child** of God.*

Izaiáš prorokoval, že Ježiš bude nazvaný "**Knieža** pokoja."
*Isaiah prophesied that Jesus would be called "the **Prince** of Peace."*

Pamätám na teba vždy v modlitbách svojich, modliac sa neustále k Bohu Otcu v mene jeho svätého **dieťaťa** Ježiša . . . (Moroni 8:3)
*I am mindful of you always in my prayers, continually praying unto God the Father in the name of His Holy **Child**, Jesus . . . (Moroni 8:3)*

Other Common Endings

Many feminine nouns do not end in *-osť* but nevertheless follow the *osť* pattern. Some of the more common ones are: *vec* (thing), *časť* (part), *noc* (night), *pomoc* (help), and *moc* (power).

Example:

Pravda je znalosť **vecí**, aké skutočne sú, boli a budú.
*Truth is knowledge of **things** as they really are, were, and will be.*

The nouns *deň* and *týždeň* decline like *stroj*. *Týždeň* is regular, and follows *stroj* exactly, but *deň* ends irregularly in nominative plural (*dni*) and genitive plural (*dní*).

Activities

A. Declension

Decline the following words according to the cases associated with the given preposition. Check your answers.

1. Od _____ *(sg. socializmus)*
2. K _____ *(sg. Boh)*
3. Bez _____ *(sg. krst)*
4. Kvôli _____ *(pl. dievča)*
5. Podľa _____ *(pl. dievča)*
6. Bez _____ *(sg. pokrok)*
7. Od _____ *(sg. vzor)*
8. V _____ *(sg. centrum)*
9. Z _____ *(sg. dôvod)*
10. O _____ *(sg. moc)*
11. Vďaka _____ *(sg. knieža)*
12. Pre _____ *(pl. zviera)*
13. V _____ *(sg. Kristus)*
14. S _____ *(sg. dieťa)*
15. Z _____ *(sg. výsledok)*
16. Od _____ *(sg. hnev)*
17. O _____ *(sg. dieťa)*
18. Podľa _____ *(sg. príkaz)*
19. Bez _____ *(sg. vzťah)*
20. Od _____ *(sg. diel)*

B. Declension Patterns

On a separate piece of paper, correctly decline the follow nouns in both their singular and plural forms. Check your answers.

1. Evanjelium
2. Príklad
3. Boh
4. Dieťa

C. Translate

Translate the following scentences into Slovak focusing on correctly declinating each noun. The words in parenthesis are hints to aid you in translation. Check your answers.

1. The atoning sacrifice of Jesus Christ enabled us to overcome the effects of the Fall.
2. Help them to progress in the gospel.
3. It is good that you want to become free from the guilt that you have.
4. He will come to the world to save all people.
5. Blessed are the poor in spirit.
6. Call to Him against the power of your enemies.
7. For this reason (out of this reason), members of the Church seek out information about their ancestors.
8. They have three girls and two boys in their family.

D. Common Errors

Try to figure out why each sentence is wrong and how it should be corrected. Then check your answer against the one listed in the answers section. The translation given for each sentence is what the speaker was trying to say, not necessarily what the sentence actually says.

1. Z tohto ***dôvoda** máme činiť pokánie.
   For this reason, we should repent.
2. Posolstvo o znovuzriadení ***evanjeliuma** požehnáva rodiny.
   The message of the restored gospel blesses families.
3. Pomôžte im, aby boli hodní ***krsta** a konfirmácie.
   Help them to be worthy of baptism and confirmation.
4. Ako môžem rozpoznať a porozumieť ***Duchovi**?
   How can I recognize and understand the Spirit?
5. Uzmierenie je stredom ***základa plána** spásy.
   The Atonement is the center of the foundation of the plan of salvation.
6. Potrebujeme povolenie na krst ***dieťa.**
   We need permission for the baptism of a child.
7. Táto rodina bola verná aj počas ***komunizma**.
   This family was faithful even during communism.
8. Ako môžeme začleniť členov pri ***pomoce** s týmito výzvami?
   How can we involve members in helping with this commitment?

E. Error Correction

The following paragraph contains 10 errors dealing with incorrect noun declension. Find the errors and write down their corrections on a separate piece of paper. Check your answers.

> "Iba prostredníctvom Spasiteľovej milosti a milosrdenstva sa môžeme očistiť od hriecha, aby sme mohli znova žiť v prítomnosti Boha. Aby sme sa mohli vrátiť k Bohovi, potrebujeme obrady evanjeliuma, vrátane krsta a konfirmacia. Prostredníctvom obrada krsta uzatvárame zmluvu s Bohom. Táto zmluva je dôležitý krok plána spáse. Ako misionári potrebujeme pomáhať každému človekovi, aby sa pripravil na tento krok."

F. *Preach My Gospel* Activities

Read "*Uzmierenie*" on page 51 of *Kážte Moje Evanjelium* and pay attention to noun declensions. Record declensions with which you are not familiar in your planner and practice using them throughout the day. Repeat this exercise for other principles in *Kážte Moje Evanjelium*.

G. Language Study Plan Activities

Decide on a place where you will keep record of uncommon declensions you hear as you go about your daily activities. Ask natives to help you when you don't understand a noun's declension pattern. As your list grows, set time aside in your language study to review these uncommon declensions.

Review: Cases

This review will help you see how well you have learned the material in the previous section. It will also help you evaluate your ability to apply several different grammar principles you have learned in performing the following function:

Correct understanding and declension of cases

- Genitive (2nd Case)
- Accusative (4th Case)
- Uncommon Declension
- Dative (3rd Case)
- Locative and Instrumental Cases (6th and 7th Cases)

Activities

A. Error Correction

On a separate sheet of paper, rewrite the paragraph below, correcting the 12 errors in it. Check your answers.

> Dnes vás budeme učiť o evanjeliume Ježiša Krista. Evanjelium je stredobodom Božieho plána a začína vierou v Krista. Veríme v ňom, dôverujeme mu a spoliehame sa na ňom. Táto viera nás vedie k pokánie. Budeme chcieť zmeniť veci v našich životov, čo nie sú v súlad s Božou vôľou. Naša viera v neho tiež spôsobí, že si prajeme prejaviť svoja láska k nemu dodržiavaním jeho prikázaniam, vrátane krsta. Krstom sľubujeme, že budeme dodržiavať jeho prikázania po zbytok našich životov. Boh nám sľubuje, že po krste od neho obdržíme daru Ducha Svätého.

B. Error Correction

On a separate sheet of paper, rewrite the paragraph below, correcting the 12 errors in it. Check your answers.

> Veľa ľudí sa pýta: "Čo sa stane po smrte?" Súčasťou Božieho milosrdného plánu je, že všetci prejdeme fyzickom smrťom. Náš duch sa oddelí od nášho tela a určitý čas budeme žiť v duchovnému svetu. Potom budeme vzkriesení s nesmrteľný telom, ktoré bude spojením nášho tela a ducha. Budeme súdení podľa našich skutky a túžob. Tí, ktorí žili podľa evanjelia, obdržia najväčší dar nášho Nebeského Oteca, dar večného života v jeho prítomnosti. Pri mojom vlastnom štúdi som prišiel k tomu, že tento plán je pravdivý. Nerozumiem všetko, ale chcem pomáhať každému človekovi, aby sa dozvedel o týchto dôležitých pravdoch a o Bohu.

C. Error Correction

This activity will help you see where you need to improve. Each sentence has an error. Write down the corrected sentence or say it to your companion. Check your answers. If you get an answer wrong, the "Answers" section will refer you to the particular case you should study.

1. Môžeme slúžiť Mareka dnes?
2. Čo je najdôležitejšie vo vašom život?
3. Budeme lepšie pripravení na život s Nebeského Otca.
4. Kvôli tomuto rozhodnutie boli vyhnaní.
5. Boh vytvoril rodina, aby bola zdrojom šťastia.
6. Vyučujte jeden z týchto oddiely.
7. Čo ste sa naučili z tohoto príklada o vašej vlastnej práci?
8. Venujeme sa ďalšie rodinný činnosti.
9. Čo viete o tomto posolstvo?
10. Keď ľudia začnú veriť písma...
11. Podelíme sa s obyvateľmi zemi.
12. Môžeme obdržať večný života.
13. Ammón stál pred lamanitského krála.
14. Podajte Pánovi správu o vaše činnosti v ten deň.
15. S modlitbom stanovte ciele.
16. Boh sa zjavil prorokov v každej dispenzácii.
17. Povedzte im, čo budete na tieto návštevy robiť.
18. Skrze viery, pokánia,krstu, a dara Ducha Svätého . . .
19. Naše skutky sú vo veľkej miera deťmi našich modlitieb.
20. Podelenie sa so skúsenosti a svedectva.
21. Môže nás naplniť radosťou, pokojou a útechou.
22. Aký je problém väčšiny našich modlitieb?
23. Ktorá zo všetkých cirkvov je tá pravá?
24. Varujte ľudí pred následkami hriecha.
25. Dajte prednosť pasážam z Knihy Mormonove
26. Študujte odporučené písmam.
27. Pripravte záujemcov na splnenie podmienkov pre krst.
28. Riaďte sa prikázaniami a misionárskymi pravidliami.
29. Vyčleňte si čas na vysvetlení.
30. Máte hlad po poznanie slov večného života?
31. Na pomoc pri tejto práce . . .
32. Ježiš nám ponúka odpustenie hriechy.
33. Pred dvoma tisícimi rokami . . .
34. Potrebujú úľavy od pocitov viny.
35. Toto je plán šťastie, plán spásy alebo plán Boha.
36. Pod vedenom Otca stvoril Ježiš Kristus zem.
37. Mohli by sme pomocť tú ženu.
38. Každý človek na zemi je Božím dieťom.
39. Pocity lásky, ktoré máme ohľadom našich rodinov, sú večné.
40. Podelíme sa o posolstve...

D. Fill in the Blank

Fill in the blank with the appropriate form of the nouns, pronouns, and adjectives given in parenthesis. See lesson 24 on *Personal Pronouns*, lesson 11 on *Adjective-noun Agreement* and lesson 15 on demonstrative pronouns for other forms. (*emph.* = *emphasis*)

1. Pomáhate ____ (ľudia) očistiť sa od ____(hriechy).
2. . . . Na ____(základ) ____ (potreby) ____ (záujemca).
3. Modlia sa o ____ (odpovede).
4. Kniha Mormonova je ____ (dôkaz) ____ (láska).
5. Prostredníctvom ____ (milosrdenstvo) a ____ (milosť) Krista . . .
6. Žijete v ____ (harmónia) s ____ (váš) ____ (znalosť).
7. . . . strániť sa sveta na ____ (vyššia) ____ (úroveň) ____ (myslenie) a ____ (činnosť)...
8. Opakujte ____ (tieto) ____ (činnosti) počas ____ (celý) ____ (váš) ____ (misia).
9. Modlite sa za ____ (porozumenie).
10. Sme ____ (synovia) a ____ (dcéry) Boha.
11. Domov je ____ (to) ____ (najlepší)____ (miesto)...
12. Náuky o viere v ____ (Kristus) a ____ (pokánie).
13. Dôverujte ____ (nevšedný) ____ (prísľub) v Moroni 10:3–5.
14. Veria v dodržiavanie ____ (zákony) ____ (krajina).
15. Môžu vyučovať ____ (ľudia) ____ (sila) a ____ (právomoc).
16. Majú o ____ (tieto) ____ (zákony) vedieť.
17. Cirkev sa odlišuje od ____ (ostatný) ____ (náboženstvá) . . .
18. Právomoc, ktorú ste obdržali, môže viesť k ____ (sila).
19. Domov vybudovaný na ____ (zásady) ____ (evanjelium).
20. Môžeme prekonať ____ (následky) ____ (pád).
21. Niektoré z ____ (tieto) ____ (dôležitý) ____ (pravdy)...
22. Častejšie vyučujte z ____ (písma).
23. Akými ____ (spôsoby) Joseph cvičil ____ (viera) v Krista?
24. V ____ (písma) sa telestiálne kráľovstvo prirovnáva ku sláve ____ (hviezdy).
25. Nadobudnite svedectvo jeho ____ (božský) ____ (povolanie).
26. Podelenie sa so ____ (skúsenosti) a ____ (svedectva).
27. Toto posolstvo o ____ (znovuzriadenie) je pravdivé.
28. Pomôžte ____ (ľudia) získať vieru k ____ (pokánie).
29. Vďaka ____ (toto) ____ (pasáž)...
30. Prečo sa niektorí ľudia stali ____ (záujemcovia)?
31. Dovolíte ____ (tieto) ____ (slova) vsiaknuť hlboko do ____ (váš) ____ (srdce).
32. Poskytnite im ____ (materiály) pre ____ (práca) na ____ (rodinný) ____ (história)...
33. Adam bol ____ (prvý) ____ (prorok) na ____ (zem).
34. Naučte sa naspamäť tie ____ (pasáže) z ____ (písma).
35. Bez ____ (zjavenia) a ____ (kňazský) ____ (právomoc)...
36. Máte ____ (záujem) o ____ (večnosti)?
37. Aký vplyv malo jeho štúdium na ____ (ďalšie) ____ (generácie)?
38. Budete vyjadrovať ____ (láska) k ____ (Pán).
39. Prostredníctvom moci ____ (znovuzriadený) ____ (kňazstvo)...
40. Bol Bohom povolaný za ____ (prorok).
41. Počas ____ (naš) ____ (smrteľnosť) zažívame ____ (veci)...
42. Rozoznávame v ____ (naše) ____ (srdcia)...
43. Porovnajte ____ (svoje) ____ (rozhodnutia) s ____ (písma).
44. Sú sústredené v ____ (naš) ____ (vzťah) s Bohom.
45. Zaznamenajte svoje pocity o ____ (toto) ____ (verš).
46. Vstúpime do ____ (chrám).
47. Nájdite ____ (verš) v ____ (Kniha) ____ (Mormonova)...
48. Jedna z ____ (vaše) ____ (najušľachtilejší) ____ (túžby).
49. Joseph Smith preložil obsah ____ (tieto) ____ (dosky).
50. Povoláva ich k ____ (svoj) ____ (svätý) ____ (dielo).

E. Translation

On a separate sheet of paper, translate the following sentences into Slovak. Check your answers.

1. We must share the gospel with others.
2. One of my favorite verses is in the Book of Mormon.
3. Do you believe in the Bible?
4. Because of the Fall of Adam and Eve . . .
5. With these important truths, we can return to God.
6. I want to help every person.
7. God gave us bodies of flesh and bone.
8. In the spirit world we will learn more about the gospel.
9. We can rely on Jesus Christ.
10. He will show us the way to Heavenly Father.
11. I am grateful for my family and for their help.
12. We live our lives in harmony with God's commandments.
13. You will learn by faith and by study of the scriptures.
14. She was in the hospital for two days.
15. God rewards us according to our works and our desires.
16. Christ promised His disciples the gift of the Holy Ghost.
17. I am becoming an effective missionary.
18. Can you take part in church with us this Sunday?
19. We should avoid harmful substances.
20. Don't be afraid of the power of the devil.

F. Companion Activities

1. Talk with your companion about the questions and concerns that you have encountered when teaching investigators restored truths (e.g., modern-day prophets, the Book of Mormon, Word of Wisdom . . .) and how you resolved those doubts. Reenact the conversation with your companion and focus on using correct casing. Get feedback from your companion.
2. Practice testing each other by giving each other phrases to translate from English into Slovak. In your phrases include a preposition, demonstrative pronoun, adjective and noun (ex. In these important books → V týchto dôležitých knihách). Focus especially on phrases you use often in teaching (ex. "with our families," "in our lives," "in this wicked world").

G. *Preach My Gospel* Activity

Go through the principle “Vaším poverením je vyučovať znovuzriadené evanjelium Ježiša Krista” on page 1 in *Kážte Moje Evanjelium*. Pay particular attention to each noun that is cased. Try to understand why each is cased the way it is and memorize phrases that you are unfamiliar with. Change the sentences into your own words using different forms, focusing on correctly casing each noun. Teach the principle to your companion as if he or she were one of your investigators and get feedback on how well you used these principles. Repeat this exercise for other principles in *Kážte moje evanjelium*.

G. Scripture Activity

Read your favorite passage of scripture in the Book of Mormon and write down all the phrases you are unfamiliar with. Consult your companion or a member to understand why each noun is declined the way it is. Then write a paragraph summarizing your favorite scripture in your own words. Include the phrases you learned from the original text. Then teach what you wrote to the native speaker as if he or she were one of your investigators. Get feedback on your teaching.

H. Writing Activities

Choose one of the following topics and write a paragraph about it. Underline the grammar principles covered in this section in your paragraph and have a native speaker check it.

- The power of the Book of Mormon in conversion
- The importance of prayer in coming to know whether or not Joseph Smith was a prophet
- How to effectively invite others to come unto Christ through faith, repentance, baptism, receiving the gift of the Holy Ghost, and enduring to the end.
- King Benjamin's Final Sermon

Appendix

A. Verb Conjugations

-ám-ajú		**Past Tense**		**Present Tense**		**Future (Imperfective)**	
-ám	-áme	Mal(a) som	Mali sme	Mám	Máme	Budem mať	Budeme mať
-áš	-áte	Mal(a) si	Mali ste	Máš	Máte	Budeš mať	Budete mať
-á	-ajú	Mal(o,a)	Mali	Má	Majú	Bude mať	Budú mať

Regularly conjugates with *-ať* verbs

-ím-ia		**Past Tense**		**Present Tense**		**Future (Imperfective)**	
-ím	-íme	Hovoril(a) som	Hovorili sme	Hovorím	Hovoríme	Budem hovoriť	Budeme hovoriť
-íš	-íte	Hovoril(a) si	Hovorili ste	Hovoríš	Hovoríte	Budeš hovoriť	Budete hovoriť
-í	-ia	Hovoril(o,a)	Hovorili	Hovorí	Hovoria	Bude hovoriť	Budú hovoriť

Regularly conjugates with *-iť* verbs and with many *-ieť* verbs

-em-ú		**Past Tense**		**Present Tense**		**Future (Imperfective)**	
-em	-eme	Chcel(a) som	Chceli sme	Chcem	Chceme	Budem chcieť	Budeme chcieť
-eš	-ete	Chcel(a) si	Chceli ste	Chceš	Chcete	Budeš chcieť	Budete chcieť
-e	-ú	Chcel(o,a)	Chceli	Chce	Chcú	Bude chcieť	Budú chcieť

Very common pattern. Conjugates with many different infinitive types

-ujem-ujú		**Past Tense**		**Present Tense**		**Future (Imperfective)**	
-ujem	-ujeme	Pracoval(a) som	Pracovali sme	Pracujem	Pracujeme	Budem pracovať	Budeme pracovať
-uješ	-ujete	Pracoval(a) si	Pracovali ste	Pracuješ	Pracujete	Budeš pracovať	Budete pracovať
-uje	-ujú	Pracoval(o,a)	Pracovali	Pracuje	Pracujú	Bude pracovať	Budú pracovať

Regularly conjugates with *-ovať* verbs

-nem-nú		**Past Tense**		**Present Tense**	**Future (Perfective)**	
-nem	-neme	Zabud<u>o</u>l(a) som	Zabudli sme	N/A (most are perfective)	Zabudnem	Zabuneme
-neš	-nete	Zabud<u>o</u>l(a) si	Zabudli ste		Zabudneš	Zabudnete
-ne	-nú	Zabud<u>o</u>l(o,a)	Zabudli		Zabudne	Zabudnú

Regularly conjugates with *-núť* verbs

-stanem-stanú		**Past Tense**		**Present Tense**	**Future (Perfective)**	
-stanem	-staneme	Dostal(a) som	Dostali sme	N/A (most are perfective)	Dostanem	Dostaneme
-staneš	-stanete	Dostal(a) si	Dostali ste		Dostaneš	Dostaneme
-stane	-stanú	Dostal(o,a)	Dostali		Dostane	Dostanú

Regularly conjugates with *-stať* verbs

Miscellaneous Verb Conjugations, Irregular Stem and/or Ending

Infinitive ending in -ať		
chápať *(to comprehend)*	→	chápem, -u
písať *(to write)*	→	píšem, -u
plakať *(to cry)*	→	plačem, -ú
pozvať *(to invite) (dok.)*	→	pozvem, -ú
prijať *(to receive)*	→	prijmem, -u
ukázať *(to show)*	→	ukážem, -u
začať *(to start)*	→	začnem, -ú
česať *(to comb)*	→	češem, -ú
brať *(to take) (ned.)*	→	beriem, -ú
Infinitive ending in -iať		
liať *(to pour)*	→	lejem, -ú
priať *(to wish)*	→	prajem, -ú
smiať sa *(to laugh)*	→	smejem sa, -ú
vziať *(to take)*	→	vezmem, -ú
siať *(to sew)*	→	sejem, -ú
diať *(to be going on)*	→	deje sa, -ú
Infinitive ending in -ieť		
chvieť sa *(to tremble)*	→	chvejem sa, -ú
chcieť *(to want)*	→	chcem, -ú
pozrieť *(to look)*	→	pozriem, -ú
smieť *(to may)*	→	smiem, -ú
mlieť *(to grind)*	→	meliem, -ú
umrieť *(to die)*	→	umriem, -ú
zavrieť *(to close)*	→	zavriem, -ú
rozumieť *(to understand)*	→	rozumiem, -ejú
Infinitive ending in -iť		
piť *(to drink)*	→	pijem, -ú
biť *(to beat)*	→	bijem, -ú
šiť *(to sew)*	→	šijem, -ú
žiť *(to live)*	→	žijem, -ú

Infinitive ending in -yť		
kryť *(to cover)*	→	kryjem, -ú
umyť *(to wash)*	→	umyjem, -ú
Infinitive ending in -cť		
môcť *(to be able)*	→	môžem, -u
pomôcť *(to help)*	→	pomôžem, -u
obliecť sa *(to put on (clothes))*	→	oblečiem, -ú
vyzliecť sa *(to take off (clothes))*	→	vyzlečiem, -ú
piecť *(to bake)*	→	pečiem, -ú
tiecť *(to flow)*	→	tečiem, -ú
vliecť *(to drag)*	→	vlečiem, -ú
Infinitive ending in -sť		
ísť *(to go)*	→	idem, -ú
klásť *(to put, lay)*	→	kladiem, -ú
niesť *(to carry)*	→	nesiem, -ú
pliesť *(to knit)*	→	pletiem, -ú
rásť *(to grow)*	→	rastiem, -ú
triasť *(to shake)*	→	trasiem, -ú
viesť *(to lead)*	→	vediem, -ú
Infinitive ending in -zť		
liezť *(to climb)*	→	leziem, -ú
viezť *(to transport)*	→	veziem, -ú
Infinitive ending in -uť	→	
počuť *(to hear)*	→	počujem, -ú
obuť sa *(to put on shoes)*	→	obujem sa, -ú
zobuť sa *(to take off shoes)*	→	zobujem sa, -ú

B. Noun and Adjective Declension

Noun Declension

Singular											
Cases	**Masc. Animate**		**Masc. Inanimate**		**Neuter**			**Feminine**			
1	pán	hrdina	dub	stroj	mesto	srdce	prikázanie	žena	ulica	dlaň	kosť
2	pána	hrdinu	duba	stroja	mesta	srdca	prikázania	ženy	ulice	dlane	kosti
3	pánovi	hrdinovi	dubu	stroju	mestu	srdcu	prikázaniu	žene	ulici	dlani	kosti
4	pána	hrdinu	dub	stroj	mesto	srdce	prikázanie	ženu	ulicu	dlaň	kosť
6	pánovi	hrdinovi	dube	stroji	meste	srdci	prikázaní	žene	ulici	dlani	kosti
7	pánom	hrdinom	dubom	strojom	mestom	srdcom	prikázaním	ženou	ulicou	dlaňou	kosťou

Plural											
Cases	**Masc. Animate**		**Masc. Inanimate**		**Neuter**			**Feminine**			
1	páni	hrdinovia	duby	stroje	mestá	srdcia	prikázania	ženy	ulice	dlane	kosti
2	pánov	hrdinov	dubov	strojov	miest	sŕdc	prikázaní	žien	ulíc	dlaní	kostí
3	pánom	hrdinom	dubom	strojom	mestám	srdciam	prikázaniam	ženám	uliciam	dlaniam	kostiam
4	pánov	hrdinov	duby	stroje	mestá	srdcia	prikázania	ženy	ulice	dlane	kosti
6	pánoch	hrdinoch	duboch	strojoch	mestách	srdciach	prikázaniach	ženách	uliciach	dlaniach	kostiach
7	pánmi	hrdinami	dubmi	strojmi	mestami	srdcami	prikázaniami	ženami	ulicami	dlaňami	kosťami

Adjective Declension

Singular						
Case	**Masculine**		**Neuter**		**Feminine**	
	Hard	**Soft**	**Hard**	**Soft**	**Hard**	**Soft**
1	pekný	cudzí	pekné	cudzie	pekná	cudzia
2	pekného	cudzieho	pekného	cudzieho	peknej	cudzej
3	peknému	cudziemu	peknému	cudziemu	peknej	cudzej
4	(ani.) pekného (ina.) pekný	(ani.) cudzieho (ina.) cudzí	pekné	cudzie	peknú	cudziu
6	peknom	cudzom	peknom	cudzom	peknej	cudzej
7	pekným	cudzím	pekným	cudzím	peknou	cudzou

Plural						
Case	**Masculine**		**Neuter**		**Feminine**	
	Hard	**Soft**	**Hard**	**Soft**	**Hard**	**Soft**
1	(ani.) pekní (ina.) pekné	(ani.) cudzí (ina.) cudzie	pekné	cudzie	pekné	cudzie
2	pekných	cudzích	pekných	cudzích	pekných	cudzích
3	pekným	cudzím	pekným	cudzím	pekným	cudzím
4	(ani.) pekných (ina.) pekné	(ani.) cudzích (ina.) cudzie	pekné	cudzie	pekné	cudzie
6	pekných	cudzích	pekných	cudzích	pekných	cudzích
7	peknými	cudzími	peknými	cudzími	peknými	cudzími

C. Pronoun Declension (Personal, Possessive and Demonstrative)

Personal Pronoun Declension

1	ja	ty	on	ona	my	vy	oni
2	mňa/ma	teba/ťa	neho/ho (jeho)	nej/jej	nás	vás	nich/ich
3	mne/mi	tebe/ti	nemu/mu (jemu)	nej/jej	nám	vám	nim/im
4	mňa/ma	teba/ťa	neho/ho (jeho)	ňu/ju	nás	vás	nich/ich (or ne/ich)
6	mne	tebe	ňom	nej	nás	vás	nich
7	mnou	tebou	ním	ňou	nami	vami	nimi

Possessive Pronoun Declension

Case	Masculine	Neuter	Feminine	Plural
1	môj	moje	moja	moje (masc. animate: moji)
2	môjho	môjho	mojej	mojich
3	môjmu	môjmu	mojej	mojim
4	môj (masc. animate: môjho)	moje	moju	moje (masc. animate: mojich)
6	mojom	mojom	mojej	mojich
7	mojím	mojím	mojou	mojimi

The patterns for *tvoj* and *svoj* are identical, as are the patterns for *náš* and *váš*. *Ich, jeho* and *jej* do not decline.

Demonstrative Pronoun Declension

Case	Masculine	Neuter	Feminine	Plural
1	ten	to	tá	tie (masc. animate: tí)
2	toho	toho	tej	tých
3	tomu	tomu	tej	tým
4	ten (masc. animate: toho)	to	tú	tie (masc. animate: tých)
6	tom	tom	tej	tých
7	tým	tým	tou	tými

D. Composite Chart

Singular

	Singular Masculine						
Cases	Dem. Pronoun	Soft Adjective	Hard Adjective	Masc. Animate		Masc. Inanimate	
1	ten	cudzí	pekný	pán	hrdina	dub	stroj
2	toho	cudzieho	pekného	pána	hrdinu	duba	stroja
3	tomu	cudziemu	peknému	pánovi	hrdinovi	dubu	stroju
4	ten (ina.), toho (ani.)	(ina.) cudzí, (ani.) cudzieho	(ina.) pekný (ani.) pekného	pána	hrdinu	dub	stroj
6	tom	cudzom	peknom	pánovi	hrdinovi	dube	stroji
7	tým	cudzím	pekným	pánom	hrdinom	dubom	strojom

Singular Neuter						
Cases	**Dem. Pronoun**	**Soft Adjective**	**Hard Adjective**	**Neuter Nouns**		
1	to	cudzie	pekné	mesto	srdce	prikázanie
2	toho	cudzích	peknýchch	mesta	srdca	prikázania
3	tomu	cudzím	peknýmm	mestu	srdcu	prikázaniu
4	to	cudzie	pekné	mesto	srdce	prikázanie
6	tom	cudzích	peknýchch	meste	srdci	prikázaní
7	tým	cudzími	peknými	mestom	srdcom	prikázaním

Singular Feminine							
Cases	**Dem. Pronoun**	**Soft Adjective**	**Hard Adjective**	**Feminine**			
1	tá	cudzia	pekná	žena	ulica	dlaň	kosť
2	tej	cudzej	peknej	ženy	ulice	dlane	kosti
3	tej	cudzej	peknej	žene	ulici	dlani	kosti
4	tú	cudziu	peknú	ženu	ulicu	dlaň	kosť
6	tej	cudzej	peknej	žene	ulici	dlani	kosti
7	tou	cudzou	peknou	ženou	ulicou	dlaňou	kosťou

Plural

Plural Masculine							
Cases	**Dem. Pronoun**	**Soft Adjective**	**Hard Adjective**	**Masc. Animate**		**Masc. Inanimate**	
1	(ani.) tí, (ina.) tie	(ani.) cudzí (ina.) cudzie	(ani.) pekní, (ina.) pekné	páni	hrdinovia	duby	stroje
2	tých	cudzích	peknýchch	pánov	hrdinov	dubov	strojov
3	tým	cudzím	peknýmm	pánom	hrdinom	dubom	strojom
4	(ani.) tých, (ina.) tie	(ani.) cudzích, (ina.) cudzie	(ani.) peknýchch, (ina.) pekné	pánov	hrdinov	duby	stroje
6	tých	cudzích	peknýchch	pánoch	hrdinoch	duboch	strojoch
7	tými	cudzími	peknými	pánmi	hrdinami	dubmi	strojmi

Plural Neuter						
Cases	**Dem. Pronoun**	**Soft Adjective**	**Hard Adjective**	**Neuter Nouns**		
1	tie	cudzie	pekné	mestá	srdcia	prikázania
2	tých	cudzích	peknýchch	miest	sŕdc	prikázaní
3	tým	cudzím	peknýmm	mestám	srdciam	prikázaniam
4	tie	cudzie	pekné	mestá	srdcia	prikázania
6	tých	cudzích	peknýchch	mestách	srdciach	prikázaniach
7	tými	cudzími	peknými	mestami	srdcami	prikázaniami

Plural Feminine							
Cases	**Dem. Pronoun**	**Soft Adjective**	**Hard Adjective**	**Feminine**			
1	tie	cudzia	pekná	ženy	ulice	dlane	kosti
2	tých	cudzej	peknej	žien	ulíc	dlaní	kostí
3	tým	cudzej	peknej	ženám	uliciam	dlaniam	kostiam
4	tie	cudziu	peknú	ženy	ulice	dlane	kosti
6	tých	cudzej	peknej	ženách	uliciach	dlaniach	kostiach
7	tými	cudzou	peknou	ženami	ulicami	dlaňami	kosťami

E. Number Declension

The Number One

Case	Masculine	Neuter	Feminine
1	jeden	jedno	jedna
2	jedného	jedného	jednej
3	jednému	jednému	jednej
4	jedného (animate) jeden (inanimate)	jedno	jednu
6	jednom	jednom	jednej
7	jedným	jedným	jednou

Numbers Two to Five

Case	Two	Three	Four	Five
1	dvaja (M-ani) dva (M-ina) dve (N, F)	traja (M-ani) tri (M-ina, N, F)	štyria (M-ani) štyri (M-ani, N, F)	piati (M-ani) päť (M-ani, N, F)
2	dvoch	troch	štyroch	piatich
3	dvom	trom	štyrom	piatim
4	dvoch (M-ani) dva (M-ina) dve (N, F)	troch (M-ani) tri (M-ina, N, F)	štyroch (M) štyri (M-ani, N, F)	*piatich (M-ani) päť (M-ina, N, F)
6	dvoch	troch	štyroch	piatich
7	dvomi (M) dvoma (N, F)	tromi (M) troma (N, F)	štyrmi	piatimi

Note: The masculine animate form can use either piatich or päť. For example, *päť mužov* and *piatich mužov* are both correct. Numbers above five decline according to the same pattern as the number five.

F. Prepositions

By Case

Preposition	Definition	Examples	
2nd Case			
bez	without	**Bez** apoštolov	Without Apostles
blízko	**near**	**Blízko** nášho mesta.	Near our Town
do	**by** (within time), **until** (point in time), **to**, or **into**	**Do** konca.	To the end
mimo	**outside of**	**Mimo** Bratislavy	Outside of Bratislava
namiesto	**instead of, in place of**	**Namiesto** mňa	Instead of me
od	**from (away from or from a person)**	**Od** Ducha Svätého	From the Holy Ghost
okolo	**around, past, approximately, about**	**Okolo** nás	Around us
okrem	**except, besides**	**Okrem** mňa	Besides me
počas	**during**	**Počas** jeho služby	During his ministry
podľa	**according to, in accordance, with, by**	Študujte **podľa** témy	Study by topic
pozdĺž	**along, or alongside**	**Pozdĺž** rieky.	Along the river
prostredníctvom	**through**	**prostredníctvom** viery	Through faith
u	**at** (someone's place)	My sme **u** Kováčovcov.	At the Kováčovci's place
uprostred	**in the middle**	**Uprostred** vojny	In the midst of the war

vedľa	**beside, or next to**	Sedí **vedľa** mňa	He sits next to me
z(o)	**from (meaning out of)**	**Z** kapitoly tri	From chapter three
za	**during (in the sense of "under")**	**Za** veľkého odpadlíctva…	During the great apostasy.
3rd Case			
k(u)	**to, unto or towards**	Prísť **ku** Kristovi	To come unto Christ
kvôli	**because of**	**Kvôli** tomuto rozhodnutiu	*Because of this choice*
napriek	**despite**	**Napriek** tomu, že…	Despite the fact that…
naproti	**across from**	Bývajú **naproti** nám.	They live across from us.
proti	**against**	Vzbura **proti** autorite	Rebellion against authority
vd'aka	**thanks to, because of**	**Vd'aka** uzmiereniu	Thanks to the atonement
voči	**towards** (feeling)	Má výhrady **voči** nemu.	They have reservations against him.
4th Case			
cez	**across, through**	Pracujeme **cez** deň	We work through the day.
na	**for** (a purpose), **for** (a very specific, known duration of time)	pripraviť ľudí **na** krst	*To prepare people for baptism*
pre	**for** (someone or something)	**Pre** misionárov.	For missionaries
za	**in exchange for, on behalf of**	**Za** naše hriechy.	For our sins
o	**in** (an amount of time)	**O** dve hodiny.	In two hours.
4th CaseMotion			
medzi	**between, among**	Idem **medzi** nich.	I'll go between them.
na	**to an event, on, for** (purpose),	Ideme **na** zhromaždenie.	We are going to Sacrament Meeting.
nad(o)	**over or above**	siahajú **nad moju hlavu**	*go over my head*
pod	**under or below**	Ide **pod** most.	It goes under the bridge
pred	**in front of, before**	Zaparkuj **pred** váš dom	Park in front of your home
za	**behind, beyond**	Bežali **za** dom	They ran behind the house
6th Case			
na	**on, at**	Ja som **na** stanici.	I am at the station.
o	**about, at** (time)	**o** znovuzriadení	about the restoration
po	**after, along, all over**	**Po** smrti Krista…	After the death of Christ…
pri	**close, at hand, at, upon, near, next to**	**Pri** každej príležitosti.	At every opportunity.
v(o)	**in**	**v** príručke	In the manual
7th Case			
medzi	**between, amongst**	**medzi** Bohom a nami	Between God and us
nad(o)	**above, over**	**nad** svojou hlavou	Above his own head.
pod	**under, below**	**Pod** vedením	Under the direction
pred	**in front of, before, before** (time), **ago**	**pred** Kristom	Before Christ
s(o)	**with**	**s** vedúcimi	With leaders
za	**behind, beyond**	**za** vami	I am standing behind you

Slovak Equivalents of English Prepositions

Note: Expressions marked as "+ (1)" are not prepositions in Slovak. Also, using motion with some expressions will change the case used in Slovak.

Preposition	Definition	Examples	
about	**okolo + (2)** **asi + (1)** **o + (6)**	okolo piatej hodiny asi sto korún kniha o Prahe	*about five o'clock* *about 100 crowns* *a book about Prague*
above	**nad + (7)**	**nad** stolom	*above the table*
according to	**podľa + (2)**	**podľa** jeho správy	*according to his report*
across	**cez + (4)**	**cez** ulicu	*across the street*
across from	**naproti + (3)**	**naproti** stanici	*across from the station*
after	**potom, ako + (1)** **po + (6)** **za + (7)**	**potom, ako** prišli **po** piatich rokoch jeden **za** druhým	*after they arrived* *after five years* *one after another*
against	**proti + (3)**	**proti** zákonu	*against the law*
ago	**pred + (7)**	**pred** rokom	*a year ago*
along	**pozdĺž + (2)** **po + (6)**	**pozdĺž** rieky **po** ulici	*along the river* *along the street*
amid(st)	**uprostred + (2)**	**uprostred** nepriateľov	*amidst enemies*
among	**medzi + (7)**	**medzi** inými	*among others*
around	**okolo + (2)**	**okolo** stola	*around the table*
as for, as to, as regards	**čo sa týka + (2)** **pokiaľ ide o + (4)**	**čo sa týka** veľkosti **pokiaľ ide o** počasie	*as to the size* *as regards to the weather*
at (place)	**u + (2)** **v + (6)** **na + (6)**	**u** Juraja **v** škole **na** stanici	*at Juraj's* *at (in) school* *at the station*
at (time)	**o + (6)** **na + (6)**	**o** šiestej hodine **na** začiatku, **na** konci	*at six o'clock* *at the beginning, at the end*
because of	**kvôli + (3)** **pre + (4)**	**kvôli** počasiu **nemohli** pre Janu	*because of the weather* *they couldn't because of Jana*
before	**pred + (7)**	**pred** vojnou, **pred** nami	*before the war, before us*
behind	**za + (7)**	**za** nami	*behind us*
below	**pod + (7)**	**pod** nulou, **pod** stolom	*below zero, below the table*
beneath	**pod + (7)**	**pod** povrchom	*beneath the surface*
beside	**vedľa + (2)**	**vedľa** mňa	*beside me*
besides	**okrem + (2)**	**okrem** toho, že	*besides the fact that*
between	**medzi + (7)**	**medzi** nami dvoma	*between us two*
beyond	**za + (7)** **mimo + (4)**	**za** vysokými horami **mimo** nás	*beyond the tall mountains* *beyond (us) our control*
by	**(7)** **pri + (6)** **do + (2)** **od + (2)**	ísť **autobusom** **pri** dverách **do** budúceho týždňa kniha **od** Karla Čapka	*to go by (means of) bus* *by the door* *by next week* *a book by (from) Karel Čapek*
concerning	**ohľadom + (2)** **týkajúc sa + (2)**	**ohľadom** tejto otázky **týkajúc sa** náboženstva	*concerning this question* *conerning religion*
during	**počas + (2)**	**počas** diskusie	*during the discussion*
except	**okrem + (2)**	všetci **okrem** mňa	*everyone except me*
for	**pre + (4)** **za + (4)** **na + (4)**	list **pre** Máriu 1 kilo **za** 50 eur taška **na** nákup	*a letter for Marie* *1 kilogram for 50 Euros* *a bag for shopping*
for (time)	**(4)** **na + (4)**	čakal **celú hodinu** odišiel **na** týždeň	*he waited the whole hour* *he left for a week*

from	**od + (2)** **z + (2)**	darček **od** neho **z** jeho hľadiska	*a gift from him* *from his point of view*
in	**v + (6)**	**v** Žiline **v** januári	*in Žilina in January*
in (time)	**o + (4)**	**o** hodinu	*in an hour*
in front of	**pred + (7)**	**pred** poštou	*in front of the post office*
in spite of	**napriek + (3)**	**napriek** mojej pomoci	*in spite of my help*
in view of	**vzhľadom k + (3)**	**vzhľadom k** jeho chovaniu	*in view of his conduct*
in the inside (of)	**vo vnútri + (2)**	**vo vnútri** krabice	*inside the box*
instead of	**(na)miesto + (2)**	ona príde **(na)miesto** neho	*she's coming instead of him*
into	**do + (2)**	nastúpiť **do** vlaku	*to get into the train*
like	**ako + (1)**	je málo ľudí **ako** on	*there are few people like him*
near	**pri + (6)** **blízko + (2)**	**pri** Bratislave **blízko** Bratislavy	*near Bratislava*
next to	**pri + (6)** **vedľa + (2)**	**pri** banke **vedľa** banky	*next to the bank*
of	**(2)** **z + (2)**	zoznam **študentov** každý **z** nás	*a list of students* *each of us*
on	**na + (6)** **o + (6)**	**na** stole, **na** podlahe prednáška **o** ekonómii	*on the table, on the floor* *a lecture on/about economics*
on behalf of	**v mene + (2)** **za + (4)**	**v mene** robotníkov hovoriť **za** všetkých	*on behalf of the workers* *to speak for (on behalf of) all*
opposite	**naproti (3)**	**naproti** banke	*opposite the bank*
out of	**z + (2)**	vyskočiť **z** ohňa	*to jump out of the fire*
outside (of)	**mimo + (2)**	**mimo** hraníc	*outside the borders*
over	**nad + (7)** **cez + (4)** **po + (6)**	**nad** mojou hlavou **cez** noc **po** celom svete	*over my head* *over night* *over the whole world*
past	**popri + (6)**	Prejdete **popri** našom dome	*You go past our house*
regarding	**ohľadom + (2)** **týkajúc sa + (2)**	**ohľadom** všetkých vecí otázky **týkajúce sa** zdravia	*regarding all things* *questions regarding health*
regardless of	**bez ohľadu na + (4)**	**bez ohľadu na** počasie	*regardless of the weather*
since	**od + (2)**	**od** minulého týždňa	*since last week*
throughout	**po + (6)**	**po** celej Európe	*throughout all Europe*
till	**do + (2)**	**do** apríla	*till April*
to	**k(u) + (3)** **do + (2)**	**k** Jurajovi, **k** záveru chodiť **do** práce	*to George's, to the conclusion* *to go to work*
towards	**k(u) + (3)** **voči + (3)**	**ku** koncu mája jeho postoj **voči** nám	*towards the end of May* *his attitude towards us*
underneath	**pod + (7)**	**pod** povrchom	*under the surface*
upon	**pri + (6)**	**pri** jeho príchode	*upon his arrival*
via	**cez + (4)**	letieť **cez** Londýn	*to fly via London*
with	**s + (7)** **(7)**	ísť **s** kamarátom krájať **nožom**	*to go with a friend* *to cut with a knife*
within	**vo vnútri + (2)** **do + (2)**	**vo vnútri** budovy **do** dvoch týždňov	*inside the building* *within two weeks*
without	**bez + (2)**	**bez** výnimky	*without exception*

Missionary Tasks

Introductions

Basic Conversation

Greetings	Conversation	Response	Farewell
Dobrý deň *Good day*	**Ako sa máte?** *How are you?*	**Mám sa dobre.** *I am well.*	**Tešilo ma** *It pleased me (to meet you)*
Dobrý večer *Good evening*	**Teší ma.** *Nice to meet you.*		**Dovidenia** *Goodbye*
Dobré ráno **Good morning**			**Ahoj/Čau** *Bye (informal; also means hello)*

Introductions

Ask Someone's Name
Ako sa voláte? *What is your name?*

BYŤ *To be*	Noun
Ja som *I am*	**Starší_____.** *Elder_____.*
My sme *We are*	**Sestra_____.** *Sister_____.*
On/Ona je *He/She is*	**Brat_____.** *Brother_____.*
Vy ste *You are*	**misionár(i).** *missionary(ies).*
	misionárka(ky). *sister missionary(ies).*

Pronoun	Possessive	Noun
Toto je *This is*	**môj** *my (masculine)*	**spoločník.** *companion (masculine).*
		učiteľ. *teacher (masculine).*
		otec. *father.*
		brat. *brother.*
	moja *my (feminine)*	**spoločníčka.** *companion (feminine).*
		učiteľka. *teacher (feminine).*
		matka. *mother.*
		sestra. *sister.*
		rodina. *family.*

Talking About Families

MAŤ - *To have*	Noun
Saan *Do you have*	**rodinu?** *a family?*
	bratov? *brothers?*
	sestry? *sisters?*
	deti? *children?*

MAŤ - *To have*	Quantifier	Noun
Mám *I have*	**jedného** *one*	**magmimisyon?** *will you serve a mission?*
	dvoch/troch/štyroch *(two/three/four)*	**bratov.** *brothers.*
	jednu *one*	**sestru.** *sister.*
	dve/tri/štyri *(two/three/four)*	**sestry.** *sisters.*
	päť/šesť . . . *(five or more)*	**sestier.** *sisters.*

Asking Where Someone is From

BYŤ *To be*	Preposition	Noun
Ja som *I am*	**z(o)** *from*	**Ameriky.** *America.*
On/Ona je *He/She is*		**štátu_____.** *the state_____.*
Vy ste *You are*	**Question "from where?"**	**Anglicka.** *England.*
	odkiaľ? *from where?*	**Slovenska.** *Slovakia.*

Give a Simple Overview

Describing What You Will Teach

Adverb (time)	Conjugated Verb	Infinitive Verb	Preposition "about"	Prepositional Phrase
Dnes *Today*	**chceme** *we want*	**učiť** *to teach*	**O** *about*	**Ježiš Kristus.** *Jesus Christ.*
Zajtra *Tomorrow*	**budeme** *we will*	**hovoriť** *to speak*		**znovuzriadení evanjelia.** *the restoration of the gospel.*
Nabudúce *Next time*				**našom vzťahu s Bohom.** *our relationship with God.*

Basic Statements About God and Jesus Christ

Subject	Verb	Direct Object		Subject	Indirect Object	Verb	Direct Object
Boh *God*	**miluje** *loves*	**nás.** *us.*	**a** *and*	**Boh** *God*	**nám** *(to) us*	**dal** *give*	**Krista.** *Christ.*
Ježiš *Jesus*	**sa postará o** *will take care of*	**vás.** *you.*	**tiež** *also*		**vám** *(to) you*	**poslal** *sent*	**prorokov.** *prophets.*
	pozná *knows*	**vašu rodinu.** *your family.*			**všetkým** *(to) everyone*		**Knihu Mormonovu.** *Book of Mormon.*
	počuje *hears*	**naše modlitby.** *our prayers.*					**plán.** *plan.*

Possessive Phrases

Noun	"of" Noun
dieťa/deti *child/children* **slovo** *word* **prorok** *prophet* **evanjelium** *gospel*	**Boha** *of God* **Nebeský Otče,** *Heavenly Father,*

Using the Verb Believe

VERIŤ - *to believe*	In	Noun
Verím(e) *I believe (we believe)* **Veríte** *(Do) you believe* **Verili ste** *Did you believe*	**v** *in*	**Boha** *God* **Nebeský Otče** *Heavenly Father* **Bibliu** *the Bible* **Knihu Mormonovu.** *Book of Mormon*

Asking Why

Why	is	Noun + "important"	for you?
Prečo *Why*	**je** *is*	**rodina dôležitá** *family important* **viera dôležitá** *faith important* **Kristus dôležitý** *Christ important* **toto dôležité** *this important*	**pre vás?** *for you?*

Identifying Needs

Subject	Verb	Direct Object
Vy *You*	**chcete** *want* **hľadáte** *searching for*	**odpustenie?** *forgiveness?* **vieru v Boha?** *faith in God?* **šťastnú rodinu?** *a happy family?* **zmysel v živote?** *purpose in life?*

Offer a Prayer

Address Heavenly Father	
Náš *Our*	**Nebeský Otče,** *Heavenly Father,*
Drahý *Dear*	
Bože *God*	

Express Gratitude

BYŤ - *To be*	**Adjective**	**"for"**	**Prepositional Phrase**
Som *I am*	**Som** *grateful (masculine, feminine, plural)*	**za** *for*	**rodinu.** *family.*
Sme *We are*			**za** *companion (male, female).*
ĎAKOVAŤ - To Thank	**Indirect Object**		**za** *missionary calling.*
Ďakujem *I thank*	**Ti** *Thee*		**Tvojho Syna, Ježiša Krista.** *Thy Son, Jesus Christ.*
Ďakujeme *We thank*			**Tvoju lásku.** *Thy love.*
			uzmierenie. *Atonement.*

Asking for Help and Blessings

Promise	bless	pronoun	with	noun	so that	past tense "to be able to"	verb
Prosím *Please*	**požehnaj** *bless*	**Ma** *me*	**s(o)** *with*	**Duchom Svätým,** *the Holy Ghost,*	**aby** *so that*	**som mohol (mohla)** *I could (feminine)*	**mať vieru.** *have faith.*
		nás *us*		**túžbou,** *desire,*		**mohol** *he could*	**činiť pokánie.** *repent.*
		ich *them*		**silou,** *strength,*		**mohla** *she could*	**byť pokrstený(á).** *be baptized (feminine).*
		ho *him*		**darom jazykov,** *the gift of tongues,*		**sme mohli** *we could*	**čítať.** *read.*
		ju *her*				**mohli** *they could*	**študovať jazyk.** *study the language.*

Ending a Prayer
V mene Ježiša Krista, amen. *In the name of Jesus Christ, amen.*

Testify

Statements About What You Know

VEDIEŤ - *To know*	**"that"**	**Subject**	**"is"**	**Possessive Pronoun**	**Adjective**	**Noun**
Viem, *I know,*	**že** *that*	**Boh** *God*	**je** *is*	**náš** *our*	**milujúci** *loving*	**Nebeský Otec.** *Heavenly Father.*
Vieme, *We know,*		**Ježiš Kristus** *Jesus Christ*		**váš** *your*	**milosrdný** *merciful*	**Spasiteľ.** *Savior.*
Viete, *You know,*				**môj** *my*	**láskavý** *kind*	**Pán.** *Lord.*

Describing the Atonement and its Effect

Subject	**Past Tense Verb**	**Direct Object**	**"of" Noun**		**Conjugated Verb**	**Infinitive Verb**	**Direct Object**
Ježiš Kristus *Jesus Christ*	**že** *felt*	**bolesť** *pain*	**života** *of life*	**a preto** *and that is why*	**môžem** *I am able*	**cítiť** *to feel*	**pokoj.** *peace.*
Spasiteľ *Savior*	**zažil** *experienced*	**pocity** *feelings*	**zármutku** *of grief*		**môžete** *you are able*	**mať** *to have*	**odpustenie.** *forgiveness.*
	prekonal *overcame*	**bremeno** *burden*	**smrti** *of death*		**môžeme** *we are able*	**dostať** *to receive*	**nádej.** *hope.*
	premohol *conquered*	**trest** *punishment*	**hriechov** *of sins*		**všetci môžeme** *we are all able*		**podporu.** *support.*

Describing How God and the Holy Ghost Communicate with Us

Subject	**Indirect Object**	**Verb**	**Through**	**Adjective**	**Noun**
Duch Svätý *The Holy Ghost*	**nám** *(to) us*	**hovorí** *speaks*	**prostredníctvom** *through*	**tichých** *quiet*	**myšlienok.** *thoughts.*
Boh *God*	**vám** *(to) you*			**pokojných** *peaceful*	pocitov. *feelings.*
Nebeský Otec *Heavenly Father*	**mi** *(to) me*			**jemných** *gentle*	

Asking Questions

Question Words	**Indirect Object**	**Verb**	**Subject**
Ako *How*	**nám** *(to) us*	**pomáha(l)** *helps (helped)*	**Kristus?** *Christ?*
Kedy *When*	**vám** *(to) you*	**hovorí** *speaks*	**Duch Svätý?** *Holy Ghost?*
	mi *(to) me*		**Boh?** *God?*

Extend an Invitation

Extending and Invitation

Invitation		When?
Budete *Will you*	**čítať Knihu Mormonovu** *read The Book of Mormon*	**každý deň?** *every day?*
	sa modliť o krste *pray about baptism*	**dnes večer?** *tonight?*
Prídete na zhromaždenie *Will you come to church*		**pred budúcim stretnutím?** *before the next meeting?*
		v nedeľu? *on Sunday?*
Dáte sa pokrstiť *Will you be baptized*		**za tri týždne?** *in three weeks?*

Promising Blessings

If	Future Tense Verb	Future	Verb	Direct Object
Ak *If*	**budete čítať Knihu Mormonovu,** *read the Book of Mormon,*	**budete môcť** *you will be able to*	**dostať** *receive*	**odpovede.** *answers.*
	sa budete modliť, *pray,*		**nájsť** *find*	**vieru.** *faith.*
	budete činiť pokánie, *repent,*		**cítiť** *feel*	**odpustenie.** *forgiveness.*
	prídete na zhromaždenie, *you will come to church,*			**pokoj.** *peace.*

When	Verb	Subject	You	"will help"	Verb
Keď *When*	**ukážete svoju vieru,** *you will show your faith*	**Kristus** *Christ*	**vám** *you*	**pomôže** *will help*	**byť očistený(á).** *to be cleansed. (feminine)*
	budete činiť pokánie, *you will repent*	**Duch Svätý** *Holy Ghost*			**sa zmeniť.** *to change.*

Following up

You	Past Tense Verb	When?
Vy ste *(Did) you*	**čítať Knihu Mormonovu** *read the Book of Mormon*	**včera?** *yesterday?*
	sa pomodlili o krste *pray about baptism*	**v nedeľu?** *on Sunday?*
	išli na zhromaždenie *go to church*	

What	"did you"	Past Tense Verb
Čo *What*	**ste** *(did) you*	**zistili?** *find out?*
		cítili? *feel?*
Čomu *What*	**ste** *(did) you*	**rozumeli?** *understand?*

Share a Scripture

Introducing the Scripture

"Let's read"	Noun	Preposition	Prepositional Phrase
Čítajme *Let's read*	**verš** *a verse*	**o** *about*	**viere a pokání.** *faith and repentance.*
	pasáž *a passage*		**krste.** *baptism.*
			Duchu Svätom. *the Holy Ghost.*
			obrátení. *conversion.*

When	Verb	Intro Phrase		"how"	"you can"	Verb + Noun
Keď *When*	**čítam,** *I read,*	**rozmýšľajte** *think*	**o tom,** *about that,*	**ako** *how*	**môžete** *you can*	**činiť pokánie.** *repent.*
	čítame, *we read,*					**nasledovať Krista.** *follow Christ.*
	čítate, *you read,*					**uplatniť uzmierenie.** *apply the Atonement.*
						dostávať odpovede. *recieve answers.*

Reading the Passage

Read	"please"	Direct Object	Prepositional Phrase	Book	Verse	Number
Prečítajte *Read (command)*	**prosím** *please*	**desiatu kapitolu** *tenth chapter*	**v knihe** *in the Book*	**Moroniho** *(of) Moroni*	**verš(e)** *verse(s)*	**tri až päť.** *three to five.*
		prvú kapitolu *first chapter*		**Jakuba** *(of) James*		**päť.** *five.*
		úvod *the introduction*				

Verb	"what it means"	Subject
Viete, *Do you know,*	**čo znamená** *what it means*	**úprimné srdce?** *a sincere heart?*
Rozumiete tomu, *Do you understand (it)*		**táto veta?** *this sentence?*
		toto slovo? *this word?*

Applying the Scriptures

Question Phrase	Verb	Object
Ako môžete *How can you*	**ukázať** *show*	**vieru v Krista?** *faith in Christ?*
Ako môžeme *How can we*	**uplatniť** *apply*	**skutočný zámer?** *real intent?*
		tento príklad? *this example?*
		tento verš? *this verse?*

Verb	"you have"	Direct Object
Aké *What kind of*	**máte** *you have*	**otázky?** *questions?*
		myšlienky? *thoughts?*
		obavy? *concerns?*

Share an Experience

Introducing the Experience

Subject	"wanted"	Verb	"whether"	---	Phrase
Joseph Smith *Joseph Smith*	**chcel(a)** *wanted (feminine)*	**vedieť,** *to know,*	**či** *whether*	**je** *there is*	**pravdivá cirkev.** *a true church.*
On *He*		**rozumieť,** *to understand,*			**milosrdný Boh.** *a merciful God.*
Ja som *I*		**zistiť,** *find out,*			**odpustenie hriechov.** *forgiveness of sins.*
				Boh *God*	**existuje.** *exists.*
				Ježiš *Jesus*	**ma pozná.** *knows me.*

Preto *Therefore*
Tak *So*

Subject	Past Tense Verb	Verb + Noun
On *He*	**sa rozhodol(la)** *decided (feminine)*	**navštevovať zhromaždenie.** *to visit church.*
Ja som *I*	**začal(a)** *began (feminine)*	**poslúchať slovo Boha.** *to obey the word of God.*
		modliť sa k Bohu. *to pray to God.*
		študovať písma. *to study the scriptures.*
		prejaviť vieru v Krista. *to show faith in Christ.*

Explaining What Happened

Subject	Verb	Object
Joseph Smith *Joseph Smith*	**videl** *saw*	**Boha a Ježiša Krista.** *God and Jesus Christ.*
On *He*		

Transition	Pronoun	Past Verb	"God"	Phrase
Ako dôsledok, *As a consequence,*	**on** *he*	**zistil(a), že** *found out (feminine), that*	**Boh** *God*	**a Ježiš sú odlišné bytosti.** *and Jesus are separate beings.*
Vďaka tomu, *Thanks to that,*	**ja som** *I*			**má fyzické telo.** *has a physical body.*
				odpovedá na modlitby. *answers prayers.*
				sa stará o svoje deti. *God cares for His children.*

Applying the Experience

Adverb	---	Verb	"that"	Subject	Verb	Object
Predtým, *Before that,*	**on** *he*	**zistil(a),** *found out (feminine)*	**že** *that*	**Boh** *God*	**počuje** *hears*	**svoje deti.** *His children.*
Potom, *After that,*	**ja som** *I*	**rozumel(a),** *understood (feminine)*		**Ježiš Kristus** *Jesus Christ*	**vedie** *leads*	**ma.** *me.*
Podobne, *Similarly,*	**môžete** *you can*	**zistiť,** *find out*			**požehnáva** *blesses*	**nás.** *us.*
		rozumieť, *understand*			**uzdravuje** *heals*	**vás.** *you.*

Scenario Practice

Scenario Practice

The following list contains prompts to practice how you would respond to certain scenarios. Use these prompts throughout your mission to improve your ability to answer a variety of questions and respond to different situations. You can practice responding to these prompts on your own, with your companion, or with a native speaker.

While you may not encounter these exact scenarios, practicing the language with these scenarios will help you:

- Learn new vocabulary words
- Memorize words and phrases
- Improve your understanding of grammar principles
- Have more comfortable and natural conversations
- Prepare for situations that you might encounter in your daily activities

Teaching

1. You have just extended a baptismal commitment to a progressing investigator and she has declined. She says that she doesn't see any need in getting baptized. Answer the question "Why do I need to be baptized?"
2. You are conducting a lesson with a recent convert. Teach a short lesson about the sacrament.
3. A man who you are talking to on a bus says that he has heard that we baptize dead people in the Church. Explain the doctrine of vicarious ordinances for the dead.
4. Give a short talk about the Holy Ghost at a baptismal service.
5. Explain patriarchal blessings to a recent convert who has just heard a talk in church about patriarchal blessings.
6. Explain how and why priesthood blessings are given to a progressing investigator who has suddenly become sick.
7. Explain the difference between the Aaronic and Melchizedek Priesthoods to a recent convert young man who is preparing to receive the Aaronic Priesthood.
8. Explain to an investigator with a baptismal date what they need to do to prepare to go the temple.
9. Explain repentance to a new investigator with no religious background.
10. Explain faith to an investigator who is struggling with an alcohol addiction.
11. You are teaching an investigator for the second time. You have just talked about Moroni's promise in Moroni 10:3-5. Explain who the Holy Ghost is and what he does for us.
12. Explain the difference between the influence of the Holy Ghost and the gift of the Holy Ghost to an investigator who has just accepted a baptismal commitment.
13. Explain the difference between the Restoration and the Reformation to the non-member mother of a family in which the father and the 18-year-old son have just been baptized.
14. A woman whom you met while waiting in line at the post office asks you, "What's the difference between your church and any other church? What's special about your church?"
15. Explain the importance of making and keeping commitments to an investigator who is struggling to keep the commitment to read and pray.
16. Teach a small lesson in district meeting about using the scriptures.
17. Explain the necessity of trials to an investigator that is going through economic hardship.

18. You are asked to give a short talk in sacrament meeting about the scriptures. Explain the relationship between the Book of Mormon and the Bible.
19. Teach about and extend a commitment to keep the Sabbath day holy to a less-active family.
20. Explain how to pray to a man who has grown up reciting prayers.
21. A new investigator came to church last week for fast and testimony meeting and was a little confused at what fasting is and why we do it. Explain what fasting is and why it's important.
22. Explain confirmation and the gift of the Holy Ghost to an investigator with a baptismal date.
23. You are talking to an investigator who doesn't quite understand why her baptism in another church is not valid in our church. Respond to her concern.
24. Tell an investigator what happens after we die.
25. Tell an investigator about pre-earth life.
26. Explain the importance of prophets to a man that has very little experience with religion or with reading the Bible.
27. You are planning to teach a new investigator about the Restoration. Prepare three questions that will help you check for understanding.
28. Explain the Great Apostasy to a devout Christian whom you met through one of his member friends.
29. An investigator tells you that she has heard that we do not believe in the Bible.
30. Tell an investigator who does not have a Christian background about the resurrection of Christ. Bear your testimony of this event and of the principle of resurrection.
31. Explain how resurrection and reincarnation are different to an investigator who currently believes in reincarnation.
32. You are helping a member see how the gospel has blessed their life in order to motivate them to do missionary work. Tell how your life would be different if you didn't have the gospel.

Testifying

33. You are teaching an investigator with a baptismal date about the law of tithing. Testify about the importance of tithing.
34. You are teaching an investigator with a baptismal date about the law of chastity. Testify to an investigator about the importance of the law of chastity.
35. Testify about the importance of temples to a recent convert who is preparing to go to the temple.
36. You are teaching a woman with three small children who feels overwhelmed by everything that is required of her. Explain how daily prayer has blessed your life.
37. You are meeting for the first time with a family that was referred to you by the second counselor in the branch presidency. Testify of how the Atonement of Christ has affected your life.
38. Bear your testimony of the importance of obedience in a zone conference.
39. You are teaching a progressing investigator about dispensations and apostasy. Tell about how following the prophet has blessed your life.

Commitments and Follow-up

40. You are working with a less-active man who has not been to church since he was baptized. Promise blessings associated with coming to church.
41. You meet and begin talking with a young couple while going to another appointment. Invite them to hear more about eternal families and set up a meeting with them for another time.
42. Invite an active member to invite their non-member friends to a ward activity next week.

43. Invite the father of a part-member family (the mother and two sons are active members) to start taking the missionary lessons.
44. Follow up on a commitment you gave to a new investigator to read 3 Nephi 11 and pray about the Book of Mormon.
45. Follow up on a commitment you gave to an investigator with a baptismal date to stop smoking.
46. Promise blessings to an active member family associated with helping others learn of the gospel. Ask for referrals.
47. Extend a baptismal commitment to an investigator who has read and prayed about the Book of Mormon and has felt a confirmation that it is true.

Resolving Concerns

48. One of your progressing investigators asks you the question, "Why do bad things happen to good people?"
49. An investigator asks you why she cannot drink alcohol every once in a while in social situations.
50. A new investigator says that he likes some of the things that the Church teaches but thinks that there is more than one true church. Bear you testimony of the Restoration.
51. Ask three questions that would help you find out why a recent convert has become less active.
52. An investigator tells you that she wants to get baptized but does not know what her family will think.
53. Ask three questions that will help you understand why a new investigator does not want to come to church.

Telling a Story

54. You have an appointment with a less-active family that struggles with their testimonies of the Book of Mormon. Tell the story of the Brother of Jared. Talk about what you can learn from that story.
55. You are talking to a new investigator about the Book of Mormon. Talk about how you came to know that the Book of Mormon is true.
56. While tracting you meet a young man who invites you in. You have already talked about his religious background and he asks you what makes your church different from all the others. Briefly relate the story of the First Vision.
57. You are teaching a Sunday School class. Talk about how the Atonement worked in the life of Alma the Younger.
58. Relate your favorite experience that you have had while with your current companion while talking to your mission president in an interview.
59. You are talking to a recent convert who is trying to adopt the principles of the gospel in their parenting, but they feel overwhelmed. Tell about one thing that your parents have done to help you in your life.
60. Briefly relate the story of Adam and Eve in the Garden of Eden while talking to an investigator with a baptismal date about agency.
61. There is a young man in your area that has just received his mission call. He asks you what the MTC is like. Tell about your first day in the MTC. Who was there? When was it? What did you feel?

Getting to Know Someone

62. You have started up a conversation with a woman on a bus, she asks about where you are from. Talk about your hometown.
63. Tell about your family to the bishop in the ward you have just been transferred into.
64. Tell a man whom you met on the bus who you are and why you are here as a missionary.

65. A woman in the grocery store asks why you are wearing name tags. Explain your calling as a missionary. Get to know her and invite her to learn more about the gospel.
66. You've just moved into a new apartment. Introduce yourself to your next door neighbor and explain missionary service. Invite them to hear the first lesson.
67. Ask three questions that would help you get to know your new companion.

Other

68. Your companion came down sick this morning. Leave a phone message for an investigator telling them that you need to reschedule a meeting.
69. You are in a district meeting. Tell your district leader about the progress of one of your investigators.
70. You have just talked to a man on the street about the gospel and he is interested in learning more. He has set up a time to meet with you again, but you have also invited him to come to church with you on Sunday. He does not know how to get there. Tell him how to get to the chapel.
71. Talk with the branch president about how to help a less-active brother come back to church. Discuss how you can help him as missionaries, and discuss what the branch can do to help.
72. Leave a phone message for the missionaries in the area next to yours telling them about a man you met today on the street who lives in their area.
73. You are meeting with an active member before his investigator friend is coming over for a lesson. Tell him your plan for the lesson and let him know how you would like him to help teach.
74. Talk with your companion about your plans for the day, who you are visiting, what you are teaching them, where they live, and what commitments you would like to extend. Also discuss finding activities.
75. A new investigator is curious about missionary life. Talk about what you normally do on preparation day.
76. Tell a new investigator what to expect at a sacrament meeting.

Grammar Glossary

This glossary is designed to be a quick reference to common grammar terms. Explanations on how to use these terms in Slovak, as well as grammar terms unique to the language, can be found in different sections throughout the book.

adjective

Adjectives are words that modify or describe a noun or pronoun. They often match the noun they describe in number (singular or plural), case (subject, object, etc.), and gender (masculine or feminine). "An adjective tells you what sort, how many, how large or small, whose, and so on" (*Chicago* 5.66).

adverb

An adverb is a word that describes a verb, an adjective, or another adverb.

article

An article is a word used next to a noun to indicate what kind of reference the noun is making (definite or indefinite). The English articles are "the," "a," and "an."

clause

A clause is a combination of words that includes both a subject and a verb. A clause can be independent or dependent. An independent clause can stand as a sentence on its own. A dependent clause cannot stand on its own, even though it has a subject and a verb, because it does not express a complete thought (e.g., it might start with "because" or "which," making its expression a dependent or incomplete thought).

conjugation

Conjugation means changing a verb's form to show, the tense (present, past, etc.), the person of the subject (e.g., I, you, she, etc.), and the number (e.g., singular or plural).

conjunction

Conjunctions are connecting words used to join or logically connect and order clauses (or concepts within clauses). Some common conjunctions include "and," "or," "if," and "but."

demonstrative

A demonstrative is a word used to point to specific things, such as "this," "that," "those," "this one," and "that one." Demonstrative adjectives modify nouns in the sentence. Demonstrative pronouns replace the nouns that they refer to.

case

A grammatical change in nouns, pronouns, and adjectives that reflect the function of the word in the sentence. English marks case primarily in pronouns. It has three cases: nominative (to mark the subject, for example, I, you, he, etc.), objective (to mark objects, for example, me, you him, her, etc.), and genitive or possessive (to mark possession, for example, my, your, his, her, etc.). Many languages mark all the words in the noun phrase with affixes to indicate case. Some languages have as many as fifteen or more different cases.

gerund

In English a gerund is a verb that is modified by adding –ing to form a noun. For example, "Hiking is my favorite sport."

helping verb

A helping, or auxiliary, verb is used in coordination with a main verb to express nuances in the meaning of the main verb, for example, "I see" vs. "I have seen." "Have" is the helping verb and must be combined with the main verb "seen" to express the nuance in meaning.

noun

A noun is a person, place, thing, or idea. A noun can be the subject or the object of the sentence.

object

The object of the sentence is whatever is being acted upon by the subject. Not all sentences have objects, but many do. Objects can be direct or indirect.

- *Direct*: A direct object is the person, place, thing, or idea which the verb is directly acting upon.
- *Indirect*: An indirect object is the person, place, thing, or idea which is receiving or benefiting from the action. It is often (though not always) translated in English as "to" or "for" something.

particle

A particle is a word that does not fit under the main parts of speech. Particles can be used to emphasize particular words or parts of a sentence, and many do not translate well into English. Some particles can also act as another part of speech (e.g., conjunctions).

phrase

A phrase is a combination of words that lacks either a subject or a verb.

possessive adjective

A possessive adjective is a word used with nouns to show possession, such as "my," "your," and "his."

preposition

Prepositions tell us how, when, or where something is taking place. These words always precede a noun or pronoun. Combining a preposition with a noun or pronoun forms a prepositional phrase. For example, "through the Spirit" is a prepositional phrase in which "through" is the preposition and "the Spirit" is the noun.

pronoun

Pronouns are words that replace nouns. For example, "they" instead of "the people," or "he" instead of "the man."

subject

The subject of a sentence is the person, place, thing, or idea (the noun) that performs an action (the verb).

verb

Verbs express actions or states of being. For example, a person "prays," "loves," and "blesses." These are things the subject (doer of the verb) does. A person "is," "seems," and "belongs." These express states the subject experiences.

verb tense

Verbs will conjugate, or change, to indicate whether an action happened in the past, is happening in the present, or will happen in the future.

Answers

2 Word Order and Parts of Speech

A

1. Subject **2.** Verb **3.** Verb **4.** Verb **5.** Direct Object (Personal Pronoun) **6.** Personal Pronoun **7.** Clause **8.** Conjunction **9.** Personal Pronoun **10.** Personal Pronoun **11.** Conjunction **12.** Direct Object (Personal Pronoun)

B

1. God us loves. **2.** He wants (to) us give everything. **3.** Correct **4.** Correct **5.** Correct **6.** Correct **7.** Jesus Christ can you help. **8.** Correct **9.** Central to God's plan is (the) Atonement, which us enables so that we return to the presence of God. **10.** Satan us tempts and (he) tries us to lead astray.

C

1. Táto udalosť sa nazýva pád. **2.** Myslíte si, že Boh počuje vaše modlitby? **3.** Budete sa modliť každý deň? **4.** Mohli by sme sa vás spýtať otázku? **5.** Dohodli sme sa s ním na ďalšom stretnutí. **6.** Snažíme sa vám pomáhať. **7.** Podelili by ste sa s nami o písmo? **8.** Mohli by sme sa s vami pomodliť? **9.** Po jeho vzkriesení sa Kristus zjavil v Amerike. **10.** Predtým, ako sme sa narodili na túto zem, žili sme ako duchovné deti nášho Nebeského Otca.

D

1. When avoidable, personal pronouns should not end a sentence - *Boh vás miluje.* **2.** See word order chart on page 6 - *Pomodlili ste sa včera?* **3.** The reflexive pronoun sa must come in second place. - *Kedy sa opäť stretneme?* **4.** The reflexive pronoun si must come in second place. - *Môžeme si stanoviť čas...* **5.** When avoidable, personal pronouns should not end a sentence. - *Duch Svätý nám pomáha.* **6.** Personal pronouns cannot begin a clause. - *Ak poslúchame Boha, požehná nás.* **7.** When avoidable, personal pronouns should not end a sentence - *Čo to pre vás znamená?* **8.** The reflexive pronoun sa must come in second place. -*Čo sa vám na našom cirkevnom zhromaždení páčilo?* **9.** When avoidable, personal pronouns should not end a sentence. - *Začnete odteraz žiť podľa zákonu cudnosti tak, ako sme vám vysvetlili?* **10.** Budete sa modliť a pýtať sa Boha, či Joseph Smith bol prorokom?

3 Subject Pronouns

A

1. Omitted **2.** Omitted **3.** It's important that we clarify in the second clause who is rejecting who's message - *tí ľudia* **4.** Omitted **5.** Omitted **6.** It's important that we clarify who's speaking - *Kristus* **7.** Omitted; When using *aj* the subject pronoun is typically restated for emphasis - *vy*

B

1. ty **2.** vy **3.** ony **4.** vy **5.** vy **6.** vy **7.** my **8.** oni **9.** my **10.** on **11.** ona **12.** ja

C

1. on/ona **2.** my, on (Boh) **3.** vy **4.** ja **5.** on/ona **6.** oni/ony **7.** ty **8.** on/ona **9.** oni/ony **10.** vy **11.** ty **12.** ja

D

1. Pronoun doesn't match verb conjugation - *My čítame písma pravidelne*. **2.** Pronoun doesn't match verb conjugation - *My sme misionári.* **3.** Unnecessary pronoun - *...keď číta Knihu Mormonovu.* **4.** Pronoun doesn't match verb conjugation - *Vy sa stretaváte s misionármi?* **5.** Unnecessary pronoun - *My sa učíme veľa, keď študujeme.* **6.** Pronoun doesn't match verb conjugation, unnecessary pronoun - *Kedy bude pokrstený?*

E.

Subject Pronouns	To Whom It Refers
ty	Jesus Christ
ty	Wicked criminal
my	Criminals
on	Jesus Christ

F.

1. Adam a Eva - *oni;* Boh - *On;* Satan - *on;* Toto - *ono;* Táto udalosť -*ona;* Vylúčenie - *ono;* To - *ono;* zbytok Božích duchovných detí - *on;* Božie deti - *oni*

4 Personal Pronouns

A

	ja	ty	on	vy	ona	oni
pre	ex. pre mňa	pre teba	pre neho	pre vás	pre ňu	pre nich
o	o mne	o tebe	o ňom	o vás	o nej	o nich
od(o)	odo mňa	od teba	od neho	od vás	od nej	od nich
vďaka	vďaka mne	vďaka tebe	vďaka nemu	vďaka vám	vďaka nej	vďaka nim
nad(o)	nado mnou	nad tebou	nad ním	nad vami	nad ňou	nad nimi

B

1. vás **2.** neho (fourth case expression) **3.** ma, mnou **4.** nej **5.** vám **6.** ich **7.** ním **8.** nás **9.** nimi, teba, nich **10.** jej **11.** mne **12.** vás **13.** nás **14.** vás

C

1. Pomôžete mi, prosím? **2.** Spasiteľ zomrel za teba aj za mňa. **3.** Proroci nás učia o tom, ako môžeme prísť k Nemu. **4.** Mohli by ste jej dať požehnanie? **5.** Bolí ma hlava, keď o nich rozmýšľam. **6.** Chceli sme hovoriť s vami o ňom. **7.** Máme im služiť. **8.** Poďte ku mne a buďte pokrstení. **9.** Boh hovoril k nemu, volajúc ho menom... **10.** Nemôžu ju nájsť. **11.** Hriešni ľudia zabili mnohých z nich. **12.** Ľudia vo vás spoznajú Božích služobníkov.

D

1. Neuter nouns (in this case *evanjelium*) are referred to using a masculine pronoun - *...a budú žiť podľa neho.* **2.** The long form must be used after prepositions - *Budeme na neho...* **3.** Except for emphasis, personal pronouns declined into cases typically take the second position in the sentence - *My ho učíme o slove múdrosti.* **4.** The long form must be used after prepositions - *Modlite sa za nich.* **5.** In this context the short form should be used - *Môžete ju držať v rukách.* **6.** The long form must be used after prepositions - *Čo to pre teba znamená?* **7.** Personal pronouns must be appropriately cased (*'v'* (in) usually is followed by a sixth case noun, however, in the phrase *"Veriť v niečo"* it is followed by a fourth case noun) - *...používajú vieru v neho.* **8.** Except for emphasis, personal pronouns declined into cases typically take the second position in the sentence - *Pán vás hojne požehnal.*

E

1. Correct **2.** Correct **3.** *ňou* should be *ním* because *Nebeský Otec* is masculine - *...žil s ním.* **4.** Correct **5.** *Nám* should be *nás* as *'z'* is a second case preposition. Also the reflexive article *sa* should precede the personal pronoun (see word order) - *Boh chce, aby sa každý z nás...* **6.** *Ju* should be *jej* as povedať is a third case preposition. **7.** *Nám* should be in the second position in the first clause - *Rodina nám dáva*

meno a pomáha nám... **8.** Correct **9.** Correct **10.** The long form must be used after prepositions - *Môžeme prísť k tebe?* **11.** Correct **12.** Correct **13.** Correct **14.** In this context the short form should be used - *Pomôžte im porozumieť...* **15.** Correct **16.** Correct (**Note:** the personal pronoun is being put into seventh case because it was "by the means" of them that he was surrounded and filled.)

F

Subject Pronouns	Reasons for Use
ťa (v. 25)	Matches fourth case verb *(velebím)*
ti (v. 26)	Matches third case verb *(zapáčilo sa)*
mi (v. 27)	Matches third case verb *(odovzdal)*
mne (v. 28)	Follows a third case preposition *(ku)*
vám (v. 28)	Matches a third case verb *(dám)*
seba (v. 29)	Follows a fourth case verb *(na)*
mňa (v. 29)	Follows a second case preposition *(odo)*

5 Byt'

A

1. je **2.** som **3.** je **4.** je **5.** je **6.** je **7.** sú **8.** si **9.** sú **10.** sme **11.** je **12.** ste

B

1. Ste ochotný platiť desiatok? **2.** Viera je ako semeno. **3.** Chrám je Pánov dom Boha. **4.** Sú pripravení na krst? **5.** Si veriaci? **6.** Sme poslušní misionári. **7.** Sme tu, aby sme učili evanjelium. **8.** Prečo sme tu? **9.** (Ja) som svetlo sveta. **10.** Nie sú veriaci. **11.** Už je čas ísť na aktivitu. **12.** Je päť hodín.

C

1. When saying “he is reading,” you simply conjugate the verb in its present tense without using the verb byť - *Číta Knihu Mormonovu.* **2.** *Byť* must be included in this sentence, *Ja* simply means "I," not "I am" - *Som zo Chicaga* **3.** The infinitive form of *byť* must be used when following another conjugated verb - *Krst musí byť vykonaný...* **4.** dvere is a plural noun - *Dvere... sú otvorené krstom.* **5.** God and Jesus are the subject of the sentence and require the third person plural form of the verb - *Boh a Ježiš sú vždy ochotní...* **6.** In the future tense, *byť* is not used - Budeme dobrí misionári. **7.** To say "we are all" use *Všetci sme* **8.** This sentence requires the infinitive form of the verb - *Potrebuje... byť pokrstené?*

D

1. Correct **2.** The conjugated form of the verb *modliť* sa means “is praying” - *Tomáš sa modlí...* **3.** The apostles and prophet are the subject and require the third person plural form of the verb - *Apoštoli a proroci sú zjavovateľmi.* **4.** Correct **5.** Correct **6.** Correct **7.** *byť* negates irregularly - *...nie je...* **8.** Correct

E

Veríš, že je Boh?; Veríš, že je Veľký Duch?; On je Bohom; ...Ktorý je Boh...; Všetky veci, ktoré sú na nebi...; Nebesia sú miestom...; Je to nad zemou?; Si poslaný od Boha?; Ja som človek; ja som povolaný Svätým Duchom jeho; aby mohli byť...; ...čo je spravodlivé...

G

Boh je náš Nebeský Otec; My sme Jeho deti; Má telo..., ktoré je oslávené a dokonalé; ... keď robíme to, čo je správne; Nebeský Otec pripravil... spôsob, ako byť úspešnými; Stredobodom plánu nášho Otca je uzmierenie Ježiša Krista; Prostredníctvom uzmierenia môžeme byť oslobodení...

6 Negation

A

1. Tí, ktorí neposlúchajú prorokov, sa musia báť budúcnosti. **2.** Nepamätáme si náš predpozemský život. **3.** Nikto nevie, kedy bude druhý príchod. **4.** Každý človek je nedokonalý. **5.** Každý inšpirovaný človek nie je prorok. **6.** Adam a Eva nemohli napredovať v záhrade Eden. **7.** Satan nikdy nechce, aby sme boli šťastní. **8.** My nie sme zodpovední za pád Adama a Evy. **9.** Nemali sme fyzické telá v predpozemskom živote. **10.** Smrť nezmení naše túžby. **11.** Vy nie ste tu na zemi náhodou. **12.** Nemáme odpovede na všetky vaše otázky. **13.** Človek nemôže byť spasený bez krstu. **14.** Pravda sa nemení časom. **15.** Právomoc nebola na zemi za veľkého odpadlíctva. **16.** Sami nemôžeme prekonať výsledky pádu.

B

1. Nikto **2.** Nie, nič **3.** nikdy **4.** ne (*nemal*) **5.** Žiadna/Nijaká **6.** ne (*nedostávajú*), Žiadne **7.** ne (*nemá*), žiadnej **8.** nikdy **9.** žiadnych

C

1. The verb *môcť* must also be negated - *Nikto nemôže* **2.** Incorrect negation - *nedostaneme* **3.** The pronoun *Niekto* must also be negated - *Nikto nie je...* **4.** Žiadny/Nijaký (instead of ne-) are used with nouns in negation - *Žiadne pokušenie nie je...* **5.** The verb *byť* must also be negated - *Nie je nič* **6.** Incorrect negation - *Nemali* **7.** *Žiadny* must decline to match the noun in gender - *...žiadna cirkev...* **8.** The adverb *niekedy* must also be negated - *Boh nikdy nechce...*

D

1. *žiadne* (no accent) **2.** Correct **3.** Correct **4.** *byť* negates irregularly - *nie je* **5.** Correct **6.** The verb *môcť* must also be negated - *Nikto nemôže...* **7.** The verb môcť must also be negated - *Nič nemôže..* **8.** Incorrect negation - *Nevedel som...* **9.** Incorrect negation - *Nemyslím si, že...* **10.** Correct **11.** Correct **12.** Correct

E

Žid. 5:4 - *A nikto si nemôže sám vziať hodnosť;* **Ámos 3:7 -** *Pretože Hospodin, Pán, neučiní nič bez toho . . . ;* **1 Ne. 3:7 -** *Pán nedáva prikázania deťom ľudským;* **2 Ne. 26:24 -** *Nečiní nič, okrem toho...*

7 Questions

A

1. Učia tí misionári s Duchom? **2.** Miluje Boh svoje deti? **3.** Intonation 4. Je Ježiš Kristus dôležitý vo vašom živote? **5.** Intonation **6.** Zjavuje Boh svoj plán šťastia? **7.** Intonation **8.** Intonation **9.** Majú všetci ľudia dar slobodnej vôle? **10.** Intonation

B

1. Prečo Boh povoláva prorokov? **2.** Čo musíme robiť, aby sme boli spasení? **3.** Kto je Spasiteľom? **4.** Kde sa zjavil Kristus? **5.** Kedy chodíme na zhromaždenie? **6.** Čo je Kniha Mormonova?

C

1. Aká **2.** Čo **3.** Aký **4.** Čo **5.** čom **6.** Aká **7.** Aký **8.** akých **9.** Čo

D

1. Ako **2.** Čo **3.** Aký **4.** Čo **5.** Prečo **6.** Čo **7.** Aký **8.** Kto **9.** Kedy

E

1. *Aký*, not Čo is used to ask for specific information - *Aké je vaše meno?* **2.** When asking about a process (in this case how the investigators are progressing) rather than the description of a noun, *Ako* should be used - *Ako napredujú vaši záujemcovia?* **3.** *Aký*, not Čo is used to ask for specific information - *Aký je rozdiel?* **4.** *Kedy* not *keď* is used when asking questions about time - *Kedy ste boli pokrstená?* **5.** *Aký*, not Čo is used to ask for specific information - *Aké je vaše obľúbené písmo?* **6.** When asking about the description of a noun (in this case the weekend) rather than a process, *Aký* should be used - *Aký ste mali víkend?* **7.** *Čo*, not *Aký* is used to ask for a definition - *Čo je kňazstvo?* **8.** To ask yes/no questions, simply conjugate the noun. The verb *robiť* is not used - *Čítate písma?*

F

1. Correct **2.** Correct **3.** Correct **4.** To ask yes/no questions, simply conjugate the noun. The verb *robiť* is not used - *Existuje Boh?* **5.** *Aký*, not *Čo* is used to ask for specific information - *Aké máte otázky?* **6.** Prečo is one word - *Prečo sa Alma . . .* **7.** Correct **8.** Correct. **9.** *Kto* is a noun and must decline - *Komu sa zjavil Moroni?* **10.** Correct

G

1. Aké je vaše obľúbené písmo? **2.** Aké požehnania ste dostali na svojej misii? **3.** Aké má (meno záujemcu) ťažkosti? **4.** Akú máte adresu? **5.** Čo je evanjelium? **6.** Čo je viera? **7.** Ktorý záujemca napreduje najviac? **8.** Aké má (meno záujemcu) pochybnosti? **9.** Aké sú vaše ciele dnes? **10.** Ktorú lekciu potrebujeme precvičovať? **11.** Koľko je hodín? **12.** Ktorú lekciu budeme učiť?

H

Alma 34:9–12 - Prečo bolo uzmierenie potrebné? Aká bytosť musela vykonať uzmierenie? Čo to podľa vás znamená?
Moroni 10:3–5 - Čo musí človek robiť, aby zistil, či Kniha Mormonova je pravdivá? Aké podmienky musí splniť človek, aby dostal odpoveď od Boha? Akým spôsobom odpovie Boh na naše modlitby?
Malachiáš 3:8–10 - Ako je to možné, aby človek podvádzal Boha? Čo sľúbil Pán tým, ktorí budú verne platiť desiatok? Ako rozumiete zákonu desiatku?
Ev. Sv. Jána 3:3–5 - Ako sa môže niekto narodiť znova? Ku komu hovoril Kristus v tejto pasáži? Kedy budete nasledovať príklad Ježiša Krista?

Review: State of Being

A

1. Veľa ľudí premýšľa: „Odkiaľ sme prišli? Prečo sme tu? **Kam** pôjdeme? **Aký** je Boží plán?“ Možno také isté otázky máš aj **ty**. Boh je tvoj Otec a má **ťa** rád. Pripravil pre **teba** plán. My **sme** všetci jeho deti a on nám dal prikázania, aby nám pomohol. Sme súčasťou jeho rodiny a žili sme s **ním** predtým, ako sme sa narodili na túto zem. Nikdy nás **neopustí**. Vieme však, že **žiadny** človek **nemôže** vojsť do kráľovstva Božieho bez obradov evanjelia. Preto **ťa** chceme učiť o evanjeliu. Viem, že **som** veľmi vďačný za evanjelium.

B

1. mňa **2.** nám 3. nami **4.** ti **5.** tebe **6.** nej **7.** neho, teba **8.** ním **9.** nami **10.** ím **11.** mnou **12.** nám **13.** vám **14.** nich **15.** mňa **16.** ňom **17.** ňou **18.** nemu **19.** mne, nás 20. neho.

C

1. Nikdy **nemôžeme** byť dokonalý v tomto živote. (Negation) **2. (Pronoun removed)** Budeš sa modliť dnes večer? (Subject Pronouns) **3. Nie** sme odtiaľto. Viete kde sme? (*byť*) **4.** Ježiš Kristus za **nás** prekonal túto prekážku. (Personal Pronouns) **5.** Ak **vám** správne rozumiem... (Personal Pronouns) **6. Aká** je tvoja adresa? (Questions) **7. Kam** máme ísť s nimi? (Questions) **8. My** sa učíme o uzmierení Ježiša Krista. (Subject

Pronouns, *byť*) **9.** On **je** z Utahu. **Odkiaľ** ste vy? (*byť*, Questions) **10. Nemáte** nič, o čo sa musíte báť. (Negation) **11.** Rodina **je** velmi dôležitá. (*byť*) **12. Čo** viete o Bohu? (Questions) **13.** Väčšina ľudí nevie **nič** o znovuzriadení. (Negation) **14. Aký** je rozdiel? (Questions) **15**. Prečo **(Pronoun removed)** sme tu na zemi? (Subject Pronouns) **16.** Nemajú **žiadnu** predstavu Boha. (Negation) **17.** Môžete prísť aj **vy**. (Subject Pronouns) **18.** Bolo niečo, **čomu** ste nerozumeli? (Questions) **19.** Keď študujem, prichádzajú ku **mne** myšlienky. (Personal Pronouns **20.** Kristus hovorí k **nám** v týchto veršoch. (Personal Pronouns) **21. Čo** je znovuzriadenie? (Questions) **22. (Subject Pronoun removed) (*byť* removed)** Čítate Knihu Mormonovu? (Subject pronoun, *být*) **23.** Hovoria o **niekom** kto tu býval. (Questions) **24.** Boh nam nikdy **neklame**. (Negation) **25.** Budú **(*byť* removed)** dobrí misionári. (*byť*) **26.** Môžem sa spýtať, **aké** je vaše obľúbené písmo? (Questions) **27.** (Subject Pronoun removed) Pripravujeme niečo pre **teba**. (Subject Pronouns, Personal Pronouns) **28.** Môžete **ju** držať v rukách. (Personal Pronouns) **29. Kedy** sa dáte pokrstiť? (Questions) **30.** Potrebuje moje bábätko **byť** pokrstené? (*byť*)

D

1. Sme **2.** (Vy) ste **3.** Prečo **4.** Odkiaľ **5.** Budete **6.** žiadny **7.** Je, niekde **8.** Nikto nie je **9.** Ako **10.** Ony budú **11.** ňom, nej, vás **12.** Nie si **13.** Kedy **14.** nej **15.** teba, mňa **16.** Koľko **17.** niečo **18.** nič **19.** čoho **20.** komu

8 Gender

A

1. ten prorok **2.** ten deň **3.** tá ruka **4.** tá ryba **5.** ten problém **6.** to posolstvo **7.** to stretnutie **8.** ten krst **9.** tá kniha **10.** ten večer **11.** ten slovník **12.** tá práca **13.** ten človek **14.** to múzeum **15.** to svedectvo **16.** ten brat **17.** tá láska **18.** to počasie **19.** tá starosť **20.** to auto **21.** tá noc **22.** ten strom **23.** to kňazstvo **24.** to srdce **25.** ten stroj **26.** to pokánie **27.** to centrum **28.** tá trieda **29.** tá služba **30.** ten pes **31.** ten apoštol **32.** to stvorenie.

B

1. The demonstrative pronoun must match the feminine noun *zem - ... na tejto zemi.* **2.** The possessive *svoj* must match the neuter noun *evanjelium - Vyučoval ich svoje evanjelium.* **3.** Both *Kňazský* and *potrebný* must match the feminine noun *právomoc - Kňazská právomoc je potrebná na vykonávanie tohoto obradu.* **4.** *Pondelky* must match the masculine noun *večer* and it is singular- *Pondelok večer je...* **5.** The demonstrative pronoun must match the masculine noun *verš - Môžete prečítať tento verš nahlas?* **6.** *Aký* must match the feminine noun *odpoveď - Akú odpoveď hľadáte?*

9 Pluralization

A

1. proroci **2.** dni **3.** ruky **4.** ženy **5.** problémy **6.** lekcie **7.** otázky **8.** pocity **9.** mená **10.** knihy **11.** telá **12.** rodiny **13.** učitelia **14.** služby **15.** svedectvá **16.** bratia **17.** svetlá **18.** vzťahy **19.** sestry **20.** požehnania **21.** misionári **22.** noci **23.** hriechy **24.** písma **25.** príležitosti **26.** sľuby **27.** zázraky **28.** túžby **29.** členovia **30.** stretnutia **31.** skúsenosti **32.** prikázania.

B

1. Masculine animate nouns ending in *-k* often change to *-ci* in their pluralized form - *Proroci svedčia.* **2.** *Cirkev* is feminine and becomes *cirkvi* when pluralized (following *radosť*) - *Mnohé cirkvi vznikli.* **3.** *Deň* becomes *dní* when pluralized (exception) - *Cirkev Ježiša Krista Svätých Neskorších dní.* **4.** *Obeť* becomes *obete* when pluralized (following *pokoj*) - *Desiatky a obete sú...* **5.** *Misionár* becomes *misionári* when pluralized (following *syn*) - *My sme misionári.* **6.** *Brat* becomes *bratia* when pluralized (exception) - *Bratia a sestry...*

C

1. *Nasledovník* becomes *nasledovníci* when pluralized - *Joseph Smith, jeho naslovníci a proroci...* **2.** *Človek* (person) becomes *ľudia* (people) when pluralized - *Cnostní ľudia sú čistí.* **3.** Correct **4.** *Zásada* must be pluralized in this context (following *rodina*) - *Viera a nádej sú zásady evanjelia.* **5.** *Slovo* should be pluralized in this context (following *písmo*) - *Môžeme študovať slová apoštolov.* **6.** *Rodina* should be pluralized in this context (following *rodina*) - *Rodiny sú veľké požehnania.* **7.** Correct **8.** Correct **9.** *Obrad* should be pluralized in this context (following *život*) - *Obrady musia byť...* **10.** *Misia* should be pluralized in this context (following *ulica*) - *Naše misie sú pre nás posvätné.* **11.** If *člen* (member) referred to an inanimate object, this sentence would be correct (following *život*). However, because in this context *člen* refers to a plural animate noun, it becomes *členovia* when pluralized - *... členovia sa stretávajú...* **12.** Correct **13.** *Záujemca* becomes *záujemcovia* when pluralized - *Naši záujemcovia postupujú?* **14.** Correct

D

(Words that have no plural form are omitted) 1. Singular-Plural, Dispenzácia-Dispenzácie, Kňazstvo-Kňazstvá, Odpadlíctvo-Odpadlíctva, Prorok-Proroci, Reformátor-Reformátori, Sloboda-Slobody, Vykupiteľ-Vykupitelia, Zjavenie-Zjavenia, Znovuzriadenie-Znovuzriadenia. **2.** Smrť-Smrti, Pád-Pády, Život-Životy, Súd-Súdy. **3.** Evanjelium-Evanjeliá, Konfirmácia-Konfirmácie, Koniec-Konce, Život-Životy, Zmluva-Zmluvy

10 Adjective-Noun Agreement

A

1. pevný (strong) - first case, masculine inanimate, singular **2.** jednoduché (simple) - first case, neuter, singular **3.** Nebeského (Heavenly) - fourth case, masculine animate, singular **4.** znovuzriadenom (restored) - sixth case, neuter, singular **5.** krátkej (short) - second case, feminine, singular **6.** rôzny (various) - fourth case, masculine inanimate, singular; rôznych (various) - sixth case, feminine, plural **7.** neustálym (constant) - seventh case, neuter, singular **8.** osobného (personal) - second case, neuter, singular **9.** Základnou (basic) - seventh case, feminine, singular **10.** celému (whole) - third case, masculine inanimate, singular **11.** Inšpirovaní (inspired) - first case, masculine animate, plural **12.** najlepšími (best) - seventh case, masculine inanimate, plural

B

1. pravdivá **2.** dôležité **3.** dokonalý **4.** obľubená **5.** posvätný **6.** dôležité **7.** ťažký **8.** pokorný

C

1. úžasné **2.** základné **3.** láskavá **4.** misionárskych **5.** dobrých **6.** inšpirované **7.** hodná **8.** Svätého **9.** povolaný, veľkou **10.** šťastnému **11.** slobodnej **12.** novým **13.** silnú **14.** úžasnej **15.** hlavnú, krátkom **16.** rôznych, iných **17.** duchovným, fyzickým **18.** správnom **19.** úprimným, naozajstným **20.** vtedajším náboženským

D

A**ll adjectives must match the noun they describe in case, gender, and number. 1.** *Pravidvý* because it refers to a masculine noun *prorok.* **2.** *Vzácny* because it refers to a masculine noun *dar* **3.** *Verná* because it refers to a feminine noun *Eva* **4.** *Celestiálne* because it refers to a neuter noun *kráľovstvo* **5.** *Svätého* because it refers to a masculine noun in second case *človek* **6.** *Sexuálny* because it refers to a masculine noun *hriech* **7.** *Nutná* because it refers to a feminine noun *časť* **8.** *Spravodliví* because it refers to a masculine animate plural noun *muži* **9.** Sväté because it refers to a neuter plural noun *písma* **10.** *úžasným* because it refers to a masculine noun in seventh case *človekom*

E

1. The adjective must match the case of the noun it describes - *...Máme podporovať čestných a múdrych vodcov.* **2.** The adjective much match the feminine noun it describes - *Sestra Raganová nie je pripravená* **3.** Correct. **4.** The adjective must match the neuter plural noun it describes - *Sväté písma...* **5.** The adjective must match the plural noun it describes noun it describes *Všetci z nás sú zodpovední* **6.** Correct **7.** The adjective must match the case of the noun it describes - *...posolstvom pokoja a dobrej vôle.* **8.** The adjective must match the plural feminine noun it describes noun it describes - *Zlé otázky môžu...* **9.** Correct **10.** Correct **11.** Correct **12.** Correct

G

1. moje, druhé, duchovnou, nášho, vyľakaný, Môj, prvý, zvyknutý, moju, krátku, všetky, večernej, duchovnej, ten, svoje, jednoduché, vybraté, dôležité, môjho, zrozumiteľnej, daný, znepokojený, mojimi, komunikačnými, moju, môj, môj, nášho, tichým, iného **2.** svojho, istý, odpustené, svoje, potrebnú, dobré, ktoré, mojom, Svätého, pravdivá, nevyhnutné, mojich, najväčších, večný, celestiálnom, Božom, istý, šťastnú, úspešnú, mojej, jedného, takým, úprimnú, večnom, znechutení, vhodné, pozitívne, milý, ťažké, čistý, číry, spoľahlivý, spravodlivé, povznášajúce, nehodné, svojej, svojich, svoje, Svätého, mojom, mojom, Denne, svoje, dané, schopný, nahnevaný, znechutený, trpezlivý, misionárskeho, samým, svojich, mierny, prostý, vďačný, ktoré, Moje, vážne, úprimné, vďačný, mojich, Pánovu, akákoľvek, svoje, najdôležitejšie, svoje, svoje, dokončená, svojej, správne, vyžadované, hodný, chrámového, misionárskymi, svojich.

11 Possessive Pronouns

A

1. môj **2.** jeho **3.** jeho **4.** váš **5.** jej **6.** náš, jeho **7.** náš **8.** Ich **9.** ich **10.** tvoj **11.** Váš **12.** jej

B

1. Syn (first case, masculine, singular) - *môj* **2.** rodinami (seventh case, feminine, plural) *našimi* **3.** lásku (fourth case, feminine, singular) - *tvoju* **4.** modlitby (fourth case, feminine, plural) - *vaše* **5.** rodinu (fourth case, feminine, singular) - *vašu* **6.** syn (first case, masculine, singular) - *Matkin* **7.** pravdivosti (sixth case, feminine, singular) - *jej* **8.** potreby (fourth case, feminine, plural) - *ich* **9.** Syna (fourth case, masculine, singular) - *svojho* **10.** vedenie (fourth case, neuter, singular) - *jeho* **11.** meno (fourth case, neuter, singular) *Kristovo* **12.** pádu (third case, masculine, singular) - *Adamovmu* **13.** kňazstva (second case, neuter, singular) - *Áronovho* **14.** príklad (first case, masculine, singular) - *Kristov* **15.** synovi (third case, masculine, singular) - *Máriinmu* **16.** odvahu (fourth case, feminine, singular) - *Evinu* **17.** mene (sixth case, neuter, singular) - *mojom* **18.** prikázaniami (seventh case, neuter, plural) - *Božími*. **19.** vďačnosť (fourth case, feminine, singular) - *svoju*; požehnania (fourth case, neuter, plural) - *svoje*. **20.** zručnosti (fourth case, feminine, plural) - *moje*.

C

1. *Nás* is personal pronoun whereas *Náš* is a possessive pronoun - *Boh je náš Nebeský Otec.* **2.** *Svoj* should be used instead of *náš* - *...ako sme prežili svoj život.* **3.** Possessive endings must match the noun they modify in number, gender, and case - *v oku bratovom.* **4.** Possessive pronouns must match the noun they modify in number, gender, and case - *...s vašou rodinou...* **5.** Possessive pronouns must match the noun they modify in number, gender, and case - *...za Tvoju dobrotivosť.* **6.** *Vás* is personal pronoun whereas *Váš* is a possessive pronoun - *...Boh je váš Nebeský Otec?* **7.** *Svoj* should be used instead of *Jeho - Boh poslal svojho Syna*. **8.** Possessive pronouns must match the noun they modify in number, gender, and case - *...Kristus je našim Spasiteľom.* **9.** Possessive endings matching a first or fourth case singular neuter noun end in *-ovo/-ino*, **not** *-ove/-ine - ...za Kristovo uzmierenie.* **10.** Feminine names drop their final *a* and add *-in, -ino, or -ina. - Matkina rodina je veľká.* (you could also say: *Rodina mojej matky...*) **11.**Possessive pronouns must match the noun they modify in number, gender, and case - *Prostredníctvom našej viery...* **12.** *Jeho, jej* and *ich* never decline or change gender even if the noun they possess declines - *...o jej posolstve.*

D

1. Correct **2.** *Jeho* should be used instead of *svoj* to denote that it wasn't the subject's (Joseph's) church - *Joseph znovuzriadil evanjelium Ježiša Krista a Jeho cirkev.* **3.** Correct **4.** Possessive pronouns must match the noun they modify in number, gender, and case - *Viem, že Pán odpovie na vaše modlitby.* **5.** Possessive endings must match the noun they modify in number, gender, and case - *Spasiteľova pozemská služba.* **6.** Correct **7.** Correct **8.** In this case, *jej* not *jeho* should be used because the Book of Mormon is a feminine noun - *Premýšľajte o jej posolstve.* **9.** Possessive endings matching a 1st or 4th case singular masculine noun end in *-ov/-in,* **not** *-ový/-iný - Mám rád Prvý Petrov* list. **10.** Possessive pronouns conjugate similar to adjectives - *Cítime v našich životoch...* **11.** Correct **12.** *Kolega* is a masculine noun - *Môj kolega je...* **13.** Correct **14.** Correct **15.** *Svoj* should be used instead of *Jeho* as the possessive pronoun refers to the subject of the sentence *(Spasiteľ) - Počas svojho pozemského pôsobenia Spasiteľ vyučoval...* **16.** Correct v

12 Demonstrative Pronouns

A

1. *Táto*-This, *tieto*-these **2.** *tom*-that **3.** *Ten*-That **4.** *tejto*-this **5.** *tieto*-these **6.** *tým*-those **7.** *Tie*-Those **8.** *Tí*-Those

B

1. tieto **2.** tomto **3.** túto **4.** títo **5.** tieto **6.** táto **7.** tieto **8.** tejto

C

1. tej **2.** tohoto **3.** Tí **4.** tým **5.** tým **6.** toho **7.** ten **8.** tie **9.** Táto **10.** Tieto

D

1. *Ten* should be *tento - Ďakujeme Ti za tento deň.* **2.** *Tie* should be *Tieto - Tieto verše hovoria...* **3.** The demonstrative must match the noun in modifies in gender - *Tí ľudia...* **4.** The demonstrative must match the noun in modifies in gender - *Tieto prikázania...* **5.** The demonstrative must match the noun in modifies in gender - *Táto lekcia...* **6.** The demonstrative must match the noun in modifies in case - *V tomto videní...*

E

1. The demonstrative must match the noun in modifies in number - *Toto obdobie...* **2.** Correct **3.** Correct **4.** Correct **5.** The demonstrative must match the noun in modifies in case - *Chceme čitať tú kapitolu s vami...* **6.** The demonstrative must match the noun in modifies in gender - *Viem, že tieto veci...* **7.** The demonstrative must match the noun in modifies in case - *...od toho proroka.* **8.** Correct **9.** Correct **10.** Correct **11.** The demonstrative must match the noun in modifies in case and gender - *...tou správnou právomocou.* **12.** Correct **13.** Correct **14.** When the demonstrative is not attached to a noun, it is neuter - *Môžeme sa učiť to, čo Boh pre nás chce* **15.** Correct **16.** Correct

13 Ktorý (Who, Which, That)

A

1. work, which. **2.** those, who **3.** pattern, that **4.** death, which **5.** teachings and practices, that **6.** period, which **7.** Those, who **8.** law, that **9.** pillar, which **10.** foundation, who **11.** gift, which **12.** thoughts, beliefs and behaviors, that

B

1. ktorú **2.** kto **3.** čo **4.** ktorý **5.** ktorý **6.** čom **7.** kto **8.** čo **9.** kto **10.** kto **11.** ktorý **12.** čo **13.** ktorej **14.** ktorého **15.** čomu **16.** ktorými, ktorým **17.** ktorej **18.** ktorú

C

1. *že* is not used to replace the object of the previous clause - *...pocity hanby a viny, ktoré ťažia...* **2**. *Ktoré* must match *Doba* in gender and number, and must match *v* in case - *Doba, v ktorej žijeme...* **3.** *Ktorý* must match *moc* in gender - *Milosť je moc od Krista, ktorá...* **4.** *Ktorí* should be used in place of *kto* - Ľudia, *ktorí* dodržiavajú slovo múdrosti... **5.** *čo* must be put in third case in order to match the third case verb *rozumieť - Počul som niečo, čomu som nerozumel.* **6.** *Ktorý* must match the neuter noun *evanjelium* in gender - *...evanjelium, ktoré...* **7.** *Ktoré*, must be put into first case as it is the subject of the subordinate clause. It also must match *tým* in gender. - *...žehná tým, ktorí majú vieru...* **8.** *že* is not used to replace the object of the previous clause - *...niečo, čomu ste nerozumeli?* **9.** *Ktorým* should be used instead of *komu - Boh povoláva prorokov, ktorým udeľuje kňazstvo.* **10.** *Kto* should be used instead of *ktorý - ...niekto, kto má kňazskú právomoc.*

D

1. Evanjelium bolo niečo, o čom som ani nevedel. **2.** Počas vašej služby hovorte s každým, koho stretnete. **3.** To vám pomôže, aby ste sa pripravili čeliť potrebám tých, ktorých učíte. **4.** Nie je dané žiadne iné meno pod nebesiami, ktorým by človek mohol byť spasený. **5.** Akú zásadu ste sa naučili, ktorá vám pomáhala? **6.** Budete dodržiavať zákony krajiny, v ktorej žijete? **7.** Potrebujú cítiť spolupatričnosť, ktorá prichádza z poznania, že sú deťmi Božími. **8.** Každý človek, ktorého učíte, sa musí rozhodnúť, či prijme Knihu Mormonovu.

14 All, Everything, and Everyone

A.

1. všetko **2.** všetka **3.** všetok **4.** všetku **5.** všetkého **6.** všetkých **7.** všetci **8.** Všetci **9.** všetky **10.** Všetky **11.** všetkom **12.** všetkej

B.

1. Spasiteľ pozýva všetkých, aby prišli k Nemu. **2.** Všetci budú vzkriesení. **3.** Boh stvoril všetko na zemi. **4.** Všetci sme deti Božie. **5.** Všetky kapitoly v Knihe Mormonovej svedčia o Kristovi. **6.** Robte všetko, čo môžete, aby ste pomohli ostatným, aby rozumeli uzmiereniu. **7.** Svedectvo nemusí zahŕňať všetko, čo viete. **8.** Všetci budú mať príležitosť počuť evanjelium. **9.** Všetky požehnania prichádzajú od Boha. **10.** Kristus naplnil všetku spravodlivosť. **11.** Dostanú všetko, čo má Nebeský Otec. **12.** Boh má plán pre všetky svoje deti.

C.

Remember in part B and C, *Všetko* must match the noun it modifies in case, gender, and number.
1. *Všetko* should be *všetky - ...aby sme obdržali všetky požehnania?* **2.** When *všetko* is not attatched to a noun, it remains in its singular neuter form - *Urobte všetko...* **3.** *Všetko* should be *všetci - My všetci sme misionármi.* **4.** *Všetko* should be *všetky - Dodržiavajú všetky záväzky?* **5.** *Všetké* should be *všetko - Kristus vykonal všetko to...* **6.** *Všetko* should be *Všetci - Všetci apoštoli svedčia...* **7.** *Všetky* should be *Všetci - Všetci potrebujeme...* **8.** *Všetko* should be *všetkému - ...veriť všetkému...* **9.** *Všetci* should be *všetok - ...aby všetok ľud vyučovali...* **10.** *Všetký* should be *všetkých - o všetkých našich záujemcoch?*

D.

1. *Všetci* should be *všetko - Kristus robí všetko to, čo...* **2.** Correct **3.** *Všetko* should be *všetky - ...za všetky naše požehnania.* **4.** Correct **5.** *všetkého* should be *všetko - Urobte všetko...* **6.** Correct **7.** Correct **8.** Correct

E.

v. 41 ...všetky veci..., ...všetky veci... **v. 44** ...svedectvo všetkých týchto vašich bratov... ...všetkých svätých prorokov... ...všetky veci... ...všetky veci...

15 Adverbs

A.

1. *prosto* (simply), *ochotne* (willingly) **2.** *verne* (faithfully) **3.** *milosrdne* (mercifully) **4.** *fyzicky* (physically), *duchovne* (spiritually) **5.** *úplne* (completely) **6.** *pravidelne* (regularly) **7.** *doslovne* (literally) **8.** *presne* (exactly) **9.** *individuálne* (individually) **10.** *slobodne* (freely)

B.

1. otvorene **2.** pokorne **3.** hojne **4.** často **5.** denne **6.** rýchlo **7.** Ticho **8.** odvážne **9.** pokojne, optimisticky **10.** príjemne

C.

1. Veľmi rád učím. **2.** Prijímame večeru Pána týždenne. **3.** Dobre poznám našich záujemcov. **4.** Modlím sa denne za to, aby som mal Ducha. **5.** Máme odvážne nasledovať vedenie Ducha. **6.** Rýchlo a jednoducho sme učili o evanjeliu. **7.** Chcem stručne zhrnúť túto zásadu. **8.** Máme navštevovať chrám pravidelne. **9.** Boh nás požehnáva časne a duchovne. **10.** Trpezlivo čakám, kým sa naplnia sľuby Pána.

D.

1. Adjectives ending in *-ný* become drop *-ý* and add *-e to become an adverb - Pevne verím...* **2.** Adjectives ending in *-ný* become drop *-ý* and add *-e to become an adverb - Modlitba nás posilňuje* duchovne. **3.** Adjectives that don't end with *-ný*, drop the final *-ý* or *-y* and add an *-o - Krátko sa delíme...* **4.** Both *dole* and *dolu* can be used - *Kristus prišiel dole/dolu...* **5.** Adjectives ending in *-ný* become drop *-ý* and add *-e to become an adverb - Máme pravidelne prijímať...* **6.** Adjectives ending in *-ný* become drop *-ý* and add *-e to become an adverb - Kristus osobne cítil*. **7.** *Vnútri* should be used instead of *vnútra* because there is no motion - *Ako sa citíte vo vnútri?* **8.** Adjectives that don't end with *-ný,* drop the final *-ý* or *-y* and add an *-o - Nevezmeš meno Hospodina, svojho Boha, nadarmo.*

E.

1. Correct **2.** The adjective *vážny* should be an adverb *(vážne) -To myslíte vážne?* **3.** Correct **4.** Correct **5.** Correct (*neustále* describes frequency and does not decline) **6.** The adjective *duchovný* should be an adverb *(duchovne) - byť duchovne posilňovaný.* **7.** *Domov should be used instead of doma* because there is motion - *Boh chce, aby sme sa vrátili domov k Nemu.* **8.** Correct **9.** *Vonku* should be used instead of *von* because there is no motion - *Môžeme sa stretnúť vonku alebo vo vnútri.* **10.** Adjectives that end in ***-cký*** or ***-ský*** form adverbs simply by dropping the final *dĺžeň - ...nemusíme zomrieť fyzicky.*

16 Comparative and Superlative

A.

1. (naj)otvorenejší **2.** (naj)lepší **3.** (naj)optimistickejší **4.** (naj)zábavnejší **5.** (naj)bližší **6.** (naj)slušnejší **7.** (naj) bezpečnejší **8.** (naj)ľahší **9.** (naj)bohatší **10.** (naj)správnejší **11.** (naj)rýchlejší **12.** (naj)menší **13.** (naj) ušľachtilejší **14.** (naj)krajší **15**. (naj)jednoduchší **16.** (naj)horší

B.

1. závažnejšia (adj.) **2.** najdôležitejšiu (adj.) **3.** užitočnejšie (adv.) **4.** správnejšie (adv.) **5.** lepšie (adv.) **6.** najvnútornejších (adj.) **7.** väčšiemu (adj.) **8.** bližšie (adv.) **9.** najvzácnejších (adj.) **10.** najdôležitejšie (adj.)

C.

(Answers may vary) 1. Kniha Mormonova je najmocnejšia kniha. **2.** Uzmierenie bolo najmilorsrdnejšia udalosť v histórii. **3.** Láska k Bohu a k druhým je najväčšie prikázanie. **4.** Duch Svätý je najlepší učiteľ.

D.

1. *Dobrý* becomes *lepší* in the comparative form - *Domov je najlepším miestom...* **2.** Najlepší is describing the verb používať and must be put in the adverb form - *Ako najlepšie používať príručku...* **3.** *Najväčší* must match *radosti* in gender, number, and case - *zdrojom našej najväčšej radosti.* **4.** *šťastnejší* must match *rodina* in gender, number, and case - *Ako môže byť moja rodina šťastnejšia?* **5.** *Najťažší* must match *rokom* in number, gender, and case - *Minulý rok bol tým najťažším rokom...* **6.** *Svedomitejšieho* is describing the verb *vyhľadávať* not noun Ducha. It therefore must be put in the adverb form - *Ako budete vyhľadávať Ducha svedomitejšie?* **7.** *Veľký* becomes *väčší* in the comparative form - *Príde väčšie svedectvo...* **8.** *Schopnejší* is describing the subject *vy*, not the verb *reagovať*. It therefore must match the subject in gender, number, and case - *Budete schopnejší lepšie reagovať...*

E.

1. *kratký* becomes *kratší* in the comparative form - *Čítajte a diskutujete o kratších pasážach.* **2.** Correct **3.** Correct **4.** *lepší* should be put in the adverb form - *Nebeský Otec vie lepšie.* **5.** Correct **6.** Correct **7.** *pomaly* becomes *pomalší* in the comparative form - *Niektorí budú napredovať rýchlejšie alebo pomalšie ako iní.* **8.** Correct

Review: Describing

A.

Ježiš Kristus znovuzriadil **svoje** evanjelium prostredníctvom proroka v **týchto neskorších** dňoch. O evanjeliu sa dozvedáme z Knihy Mormonovej, **ktorú** môžeme čítať, nad ktorou môžeme premýšľať, a za **ktorú** sa môžeme modliť. Táto kniha je záverný kameň **nášho** náboženstva. Keď sa modlíte **úprimne**, Boh vám pomocou Ducha Svätého povie, že je **pravdivá**. Keď poznáte, že je **pravdivá**, budete chcieť činiť pokánie a dať sa pokrstiť, aby ste obdržali odpustenie hriechov a dar Ducha Svätého. S **týmto** darom budete **vnímavejší** k **duchovným** pravdám.

B.

Kniha Mormonova je **silným** dôkazom Kristovej božskosti. Je **najsprávnejšia** spomedzi **všetkých** kníh na zemi. Ako misionár musíte mať najskôr **osobné** svedectvo o tom, že Kniha Mormonova je pravdivá. Toto svedectvo potom vedie k **hlbokej** a **trvalej** viere. Buďte si istý, že Duch Svätý dosvedčí komukoľvek, kto číta a premýšľa o Knihe Mormonovej a pýta sa Boha s úprimným srdcom, **skutočným** úmyslom a vierou v Krista, či je **pravdivá. Toto** svedectvo Ducha Svätého má byť stredobodom **vášho** záujmu pri výučbe. Aj keď nie všetci ľudia budú veriť **všetkému**, čo ich budete učiť, mali by ste **presvedčivo** a jasne svedčiť o **jej** pravdivosti.

C.

1. Stredom **Božieho** plánu je Ježiš Kristus. (Adjective-Noun Agreement) **2. Všetky** kapitoly v príručke vám pomôžu. (All, Everything, and Everyone) **3.** Prekonajú odpor, **ktorému** čelia. (*Ktorý*) **4.** Budú **nadšenejší** pre misionársku prácu. (Comparative and Superlative) **5.** Počas života na zemi sme **fyzicky** oddelení od Boha. (Adverbs) **6.** Ako **najlepšie** vieme... (Adverbs) **7. Všetka** práca v Cirkvi je dobrovoľná. (All, Everything, and Everyone) **8.** Je nanič bez **druhej** polovice. (Adjective-Noun Agreement) **9.** Jedna hovorila k nemu, **volajúc** ho menom. (Adverbs) **10.** Prostredníctvom **týchto** obradov ľudia vchádzajú bránou. (Demonstrative Pronouns) **11.** Aby sme obdržali **všetky** požehnania uzmierenia . . . (All, Everything, and Everyone) **12.** Môžete im dať brožúrku, v **ktorej** sa hovorí o tom . . . (*Ktorý*) **13.** Boh poslal **svojho** Syna, aby nás spasil. (Possessive Pronouns) **14. Rýchlo** činia pokánie z akéhokoľvek hriechu. (Adverbs) **15.** Pán očakáva z **našich** rúk . . . (Possessive Pronouns) **16.** Ona vyzerá **vyborne**.

(Adverbs) **17.** Buďte **presvedčivejším** učiteľom. (Comparatives and Superlatives) **18.** Duch je Utešiteľom, **ktorého** Spasiteľ prisľúbil. (*Ktorý*) **19.** Hovoríme o dobrých ľuďoch, s **ktorými** pracujeme denne . . . (*Ktorý*) **20.** Vybudujte **taký** vzťah, ktorý by im umožnil cítiť sa príjemne. (Adjective-Noun Agreement) **21.** Každý človek na zemi je **Božím** dieťaťom. (Adjective-Noun Agreement) **22.** Veľa z **týchto** ľudí hľadá zmysel života. (Demonstrative Pronouns) **23.** Máte učiť tak, aby ostatní rozumeli **vášmu** posolstvu. (Possessive Pronouns) **24.** My pozývame **všetkých**, aby prišli ku Kristovi. (All, Everything, Everyone) **25.** Neexistuje **závažnejšia** práca. (Comparison) **26.** Vyniesli toto evanjelium do **celého** sveta. (Adjective-Noun Agreement) **27.** Po **všetkom**, čo bolo povedané . . . (All, Everything, and Everyone) **28.** Pomôžte tým, **ktorých** učíte.. (*Ktorý*) **29.** Hovorila **otvorene** a **úprimne** s milujúcim Otcom v nebi. (Adverbs) **30.** Vyučujte všetky náuky v **týchto** lekciách. (Demonstrative Pronouns)

D.

1. všetka **2.** ktorej **3.** nášmu, jeho **4.** najsprávnejšieho **5.** tomuto **6.** tých **7.** požehnania, večné **8.** odvážne **9.** túto **10.** všetkých **11.** všetkým **12.** ďalšieho **13.** ktorej **14.** dolu/dole, hore **15.** mojich **16.** dôležitým **17.** misionárskych **18.** mechanicky **19.** týmito **20.** tieto, šťastné **21.** najúžasnejšiemu **22.** tvojej **23.** tohto **24.** ktorom **25.** Všetko **26.** Všetky, milosti **27.** prirodzeného **28.** najväčších **29.** verne **30.** ktorou **31.** ich **32.** splnomocnený **33.** všetkými, vašimi **34.** ktorého **35.** ťažké **36.** moje **37.** týmto, ťažkým **38.** často, ktoré, týchto **39.** ktorých **40.** tohto, menšieho

E.

1. krátkej **2.** tomto **3.** jeho **4.** to, týchto **5.** Všetci **6.** vyššia **7.** vašom **8.** najdôležitejšia **9.** Pre koho sú tie písma? **10.** silnú **11.** úprimne, k nášmu milujúcemu **12.** aktívnymi **13.** O ktorej knihe hovoríte? **14.** Všetci sú **15.** celému **16.** ostatným **17.** tom **18.** rýchlejšie **19.** V ktorej budove ste? **20.** S kým hovoríte? **21.** ťažšie **22.** ktorú **23.** nášmu **24.** výdávajúc **25.** všetko **26.** naše **27.** vašim **28.** niekoho, koho **29.** najvnútornejších **30.** veľmi dobrou

F.

1. slobodní (first case, masculine, plural), všetky (fourth case, feminine, plural), nevyhnutné (first case, feminine, plural), slobodní (first case, masculine, plural), večný (fourth case, masculine, singular), veľkého (second case, masculine, singular), všetkých (second case, masculine, plural), diablovej (second case, feminine, singular), biedni (first case, masculine, plural). **2.** tieto (first case, neuter, plural), týmto (third case, neuter, plural), týmto (third case, neuter, plural), to (first case, neuter, singular), to (first case, neuter, singular), to (first case, neuter, singular), tieto (first case, feminine, plural)

17 Verbs

A.

1. kráčam (*I walk*) **2.** modlíte sa (*You pray*) **3.** stretneme sa (*We will meet up*) **4.** zjaví (*He will reveal*) **5.** potrebujú (*They need)* **6.** prestaneš (*You will stop*) **7**. svedčí (*She testifies*) **8.** spievate (*You sing*) **9.** odmietnu (*They will reject*) **10.** dostaneš (*You will receive*) **11.** prečítame (*We will read*) **12.** nasleduješ (*You folllow*) **13.** stane sa (*He will become*) **14.** poznám (*I know*) **15.** zabudne (*He will forget*)

B.

1. Potrebujú **2.** nazývame **3.** hovoria **4.** zostaneme **5.** Musím, deliť **6.** Číta **7.** mám **8.** Chceme, dodržiavať **9.** Získajú, dostanú **10.** Prijímate, uplatňujete

C.

1. The verb is unconjugated - *Aké máte otázky?* **2.** *Potrebovať* conjugates according to the *-ovať,* not the *-ať pattern - Potrebuješ sa modliť...* **3.** *dostať* conjugates according to the *-stať* pattern, not the *-ať* pattern - *Dostaneš odpovede...* **4.** *Poznať* should be used instead of *vedieť - Poznáte túto pieseň?* **5.** *Študovať* conjugates according to the *-ovať* pattern, not the *-ať* pattern - *Študujem Knihu Mormonovu.* **6.** Since the subject is

Proroci, the verb must be put in third person - *Proroci nás učia...* **7.** *byť* is used in conjunction with the verb in past tense but not in the present - *Hovorím s nimi...* **8.** *byť* is used in conjunction with the verb in past tense but not in the present - *Môžeme sa vrátiť...* **9.** *Potrebovať* is conjugated incorrectly - *Potrebuje sa dať pokrstiť* **10.** Only one verb is conjugated per clause - *Chcem nasledovať Ježiša Krista*. **11.** *Stretnúť* conjugates according to the *-núť* pattern, not the *-ovať* pattern - *Kde sa stretneme?* **12.** *Vedieť* should be used instead of *poznať- Viem, ako hrať na klavír*.

D.

1. The verb must be conjugated - *Ja hovorím...* **2.** Correct **3.** Correct **4.** Correct **5.** *Nasledovať* conjugates according to the *-ovať* pattern and not the *-ať* pattern - *Nasledujeme príklad Ježiša Krista.* **6.** Correct **7.** Only one verb is conjugated per clause - *Potrebujeme sa modliť často.* **8.** *Prestať* conjugates according to the *-stať* pattern, not the *-ať* pattern - *Prestanete fajčiť?* **9.** Although *obdržať* ends in *-ať,* it conjugates according to the *-iť* pattern - *Obdržia obrady...* **10.** Correct

E.

(Repeats omitted) je (on/ona/ono); vedú (oni); zahŕňa (on/ona/ono); činíme (my); cítime (my); prestávame (my); konať (unconjugated); pokračujeme (my); môžeme (my); vrátiť sa (unconjugated); obdržíme (my); priznáme si (my); pocítime (my); vyznávame (my); pomôžu (oni); prosíme (my); Robíme (my); spôsobiť (unconjugated); volá sa (on/ona/ono); mení sa (on/ona/ono); meníme sa (my); uvedomujeme si (my); sme (my); nemusíme (my); opakovať (unconjugated); odvraciame sa (my); neopakujeme (my); odoláme (my); dopúšťať sa (unconjugated); nasledovať (unconjugated); posilňuje (on/ona/ono); prehlbuje (on/ona/ono); prináša (on/ona/ono); mizne (on/ona/ono); odídeme (my); budeme (my); zakopnúť (unconjugated); hrešiť (unconjugated); snažiť sa (unconjugated); zdokonoľovať sa (unconjugated); rozvíjať (unconjugated); rásť (unconjugated); slúžiť (unconjugated); dozvedáme sa (my); očakáva (on/ona/ono); želáme si (my); prejavovať (unconjugated); poslúchame (my); zistíme (my); zlepšuje (on/ona/ono); stanú sa (oni); dosiahneme (my).

18 Irregular Verbs

A.

1.

ísť (*to go*)	
idem	ideme
ideš	idete
ide	idú
L-form: (i)šiel	

nájsť (*to find*)	
nájdem	nájdeme
nájdeš	nájdete
nájde	nájdu
našiel	

prísť (*to come*)	
prídem	prídeme
prídeš	prídete
príde	prídu
prišiel	

prejsť (*to go through, cross*)	
prejdem	prejdeme
prejdeš	prejdete
prejde	prejdú
prešiel	

odísť (*to leave*)	
odídem	odídeme
odídeš	odídete
odíde	odídu
odišiel	

rásť (*to grow*)	
rastiem	rastieme
rastieš	rastiete
rastie	rastú
L-form: rástol	

brať (*to take*)	
beriem	berieme
berieš	beriete
berie	berú
bral	

viesť (*to lead*)	
vediem	vedieme
vedieš	vediete
vedie	vedú
viedol	

pomôcť (*to help*)	
pomôžem	pomôžeme
pomôžeš	pomôžete
pomôže	pomôžu
pomohol	

kryť (*to cover*)	
kryjem	kryjeme
kryješ	kryjete
kryje	kryjú
L-form: kryl	

písať (*to write*)	
píšem	píšeme
píšeš	píšete
píše	píšu
písal	

priať (*to wish*)	
prajem	prajeme
praješ	prajete
praje	prajú
prial	

obliecť (*to put on clothes*)	
oblečiem	oblečieme
oblečieš	oblečiete
oblečie	oblečú
obliekol	

jesť (*to eat*)	
jem	jeme
ješ	jete
je	jedia
L-form: jedol	

odpovedať (*to answer*)	
odpoviem	odpovieme
odpovieš	odpoviete
odpovie	odpovedia
odpovedal	

vedieť (*to know*)	
viem	vieme
vieš	viete
vie	vedia
vedel	

stáť (*to stand or to cost*)	
stojím	stojíme
stojíš	stojíte
stojí	stoja
stál	

B.

***-ísť* verbs: 1.** Idem **2.** Príde **3.** Odídu **4.** Nájdeš **5.** Prejdete **6.** Ideme **7.** Odídete **8.** Prídu **9.** Prejdem **10.** Nájdeme **11.** Prídem **12.** Ide **Other Irregular-stem: 1.** Beriem **2.** Smejeme sa **3.** Chcú **4.** Pečie **5.** Pijete **6.** Berieš **7.** Môžeme **8.** Začnem **9.** Beriete **10.** Chce **11.** Môžeš **12.** Začnú

Irregular *Oni* Form with Stem Changes: 1. Povie **2.** Jem **3.** Rozumiete **4.** Vedia **5.** Povieš **6.** Bojím sa **7.** Je **8.** Povedia **9.** Viete **10.** Rozumieme **11.** Bojíme sa **12.** Jedia

C.

***-ísť* verbs: 1.** ideme **2.** Nájdem **3.** odíde **4.** prejdeme **5.** prídu **6.** ide **7.** Nájdete **8.** prídu **9.** Pôjdete **10.** odídu **Other Irregular-stem: 1.** Môžeme **2.** vezmete **3.** začne **4.** odoberie **5.** chce **6.** vyberieme **7.** Môžeme **8.** Bojím sa **9.** rastie **10.** stojí

Irregular *Oni* Form with Stem Changes: 1. jeme **2.** povedia **3.** rozumiem **4.** Vieme **5.** odpovie **6.** rozumejú **7.** rozumiete **8.** jedia **9.** vedia **10.** chcete, odpovie

D.

1. *Vedieť* conjugates irregularly - *Ako viete, že...* **2.** *Rozumieť* has an irregular *Oni* form with a stem change - *Ľudia často nerozumejú...* **3.** *Chcieť* drops the *i* when conjugated - *Chcete čítať...* **4.** *Odpovedať* conjugates like *vedieť* - *Boh určite odpovie...* **5.** Don't get *stáť* (to stand or cost) mixed up with *stať sa* (to become). Remember *stáť* conjugates irregularly while *stať sa* conjugates like a *-stať* verb (see previous section) - *Staneme sa takými....* **6.** odobrať conjugates irregularly - *Boh odoberie...* **7.** *Viesť* follows *niesť*- *apoštoli nás vedú.* **8.** *vedú* means "they lead" while *vedia* means "they know" - *Oni vedia, že...*

E.

1. Correct **2.** Correct **3.** *Vziať* has an irregular stem - *Vezmeme na seba...* **4.** *písať* has an irregular stem - *...Moroni píše niekoľko slov...* **5**. Correct **6.** *Prísť* has an irregular stem - *Prídeš túto nedeľu...* **7.** *Začať* uses *-núť* endings - *Začnem štúdium teraz.* **8.** Correct.

G.

1. Ja začnem... **2.** Ja odídem... **3.** Ja sa bojím... **4.** Ja kážem evanjelium... **5.** Ja viem... **6.** Ja idem **7.** Ja rozumiem... **8.** Ja pôjdem s tebou... **9.** Ja môžem... **10.** Ja poviem...

19 Aspect and Future

A.

1. Perfective **2.** Perfective **3.** Imperfective **4.** Imperfective **5.** Perfective **6.** Imperfective, Perfective **7.** Perfective **8.** Imperfective **9.** Perfective **10.** Imperfective

B.

sme sa rozhodli, perfective; nasledovať, imperfective; dal, perfective; závisí, imperfective; používame, imperfective; Prišli sme, perfective; aby sme získali, perfective; boli, imperfective; sme, imperfective; ukazujeme, imperfective; sa riadime, imperfective; pomáhajú, imperfective; aby sme zostali, perfective; Učíme sa, imperfective; povolal, perfective; sme, imperfective; pošle, perfective; bude, imperfective.

C.

išiel, perfective; pokľakol sa, perfective; opísal, perfective; Videl, imperfective; sa približoval, imperfective; spočinul, perfective; spočinulo, perfective; uvidel som, perfective; sa vymykali, imperfective; hovorila, imperfective; povedala, perfective; je, imperfective; Vypočuj, perfective.

D.

1. *Prekonal* should be used instead of *prekonával* because overcoming death is a completed event - *Ježiš Kristus prekonal fyzickú smrť*. **2.** *Otvorí* should be used instead of *otvára*, because the sentence refers to a future completed event - *Nebeský Otec nám otvorí...* **3.** *Budete* cannot be used with perfective verbs - *Prídete s nami na...* **4.** *Hovorí* should be used instead of *povie* because the verb is in present tense. Also note that *Poveda* is not a word (the correct conjugation of *povedať* is *poviem*, etc.) - *Duch Svätý nám hovorí...* **5.** Stretnúť sa should be used instead of stretávať sa because the meeting is a single-occurring event - *Chceme sa s vami stretnúť...* **6.** *Pomáha* should be used instead of *pomôže* because the verb is in present tense - *Evanjelium nám pomáha...* **7.** *Byť* should be omitted because *budeme* alone means "We will be" - *Budeme súdení...* **8.** *Modlíme sa* should be used instead of *pomodlíme sa* because the verb is in present tense - *Keď sa modlíme...* **9.** *Prečítali ste* should be used instead of *Čítali ste* because the reading in this case was a completed event - *Prečítali ste tie kapitoly...* **10.** *Dáva* should be used instead of *dá* because the verb is in present tense - *Boh dáva prikázania...*

E.

1. Correct **2.** *Dostávame* should be used instead of *dostaneme*. *Dostáme* is not a word (the correct conjugation of *dostať* is *dostanem*, etc.) **3.** *Navštívil* should be used instead of *navštevoval* because this sentence refers to Christ's single visit in the Book of Mormon - *Kristus navštívil...* **4.** *Odmietajú* should be used instead of *odmietnu* as the verb is in present tense and as this is a reoccurring event - *Keď odmietajú prorokov...* **5.** Correct **6.** Correct **7.** *Pozývame* should be used instead of *pozveme* as the verb is in present tense, and as this is a regularly occurring event **8.** *skončiť* should be used instead of *končiť* because the sentence refers to a single event **9.** Correct **10.** napísali should be used instead of písali because the sentence refers to a completed event - *Starodávni proroci napísali Božie slová...*

20 Verbal Nouns, Adjectives, and Adverbs

A.

1. vytrvanie **2.** prijímanie **3.** stretnutie **4.** krst **5.** konfirmovanie **6.** vyučovanie **7.** obdržanie **8.** odpočinutie **9.** zameranie **10.** opakovanie **11.** potvrdenie **12.** odpustenie **13.** porozumenie **14.** povolanie

B.

1. predsedajúca **2.** posilňujúci **3.** žijúci **4.** začínajúca **5.** napredujúci **6.** nasledujúce **7.** inšpirujúce **8.** kajúci

C.

1. Dodržiavaním prikázaní získavame odpustenie. **2.** Máme pozvať našich napredujúcich záujemcov na zhromaždenie. **3.** Boh nám pomôže uskutočniť správne rozhodnutia. **4.** Domáce a navštevujúce učenie sú dôležité. **5.** Môžeme nájsť šťastie, keď naše životy sú založené na učeniach Ježiša Krista. **6.** Kniha Mormonova je najsilnejším zdrojom pre učenie tohto posolstva. **7.** Prečo by sme mali vedieť o Božích prikázaniach? **8.** Ak sme hodní, máme právo na to, aby sme dostali zjavenie. **9.** Krst a konfirmovanie ľudí, ktorých učíte, je vaším najdôležitejším cieľom. **10.** Okrskové stretnutia by mali zahŕňať podelenie sa so skúsenosťami a svedectvami o misionárskej práci.

D.

1. Naša viera rastie počúvaním Božieho slova. **2.** Mám rád čítanie Knihy Mormonovej. **3.** Nasledovanie proroka znamená, že žijeme podľa evanjelia. **4.** Pripravte sa na vyučovanie vašich záujemcov. **5.** Čo môžeme robiť na posilňovanie našich svedectiev? **6.** Ako môžeme zlepšiť plánovanie? **7.** Kňazstvo udeľujeme vkladaním rúk na hlavu. **8.** Vydávaním svojho svedectva cítime Ducha Svätého.

E.

1. When forming verbal nouns, typically the perfective form of the verb is used - *Bez zjavenia by sme boli stratení.* **2.** The verbal adjective must be declined to match the noun it modifies - *... keď cítite Ducha pracujúceho...* **3.** The verbal adjective must be declined to match the noun it modifies - *...slová žijúcich prorokov.* **4.** Just as with every other noun, verbal nouns must be declined properly - *Pod vedením Otca...* **5.** The verbal noun must be declined properly - *Všetky naše požehnania...* **6.** *-iť* verbs drop *-íť* and add *-enie* to form verbal nouns (they must also be cased properly) - *Ak nás to vyzýva k čineniu...* **7.** *hlásajúc* is describing the verb *ísť* and therefore must be in the adverb form - *...majú ísť v moci, hlásajúc radostné zvesti.* **8.** The verb *vidieť* becomes a verbal noun *videnie* (vision) by dropping its *-ieť* ending and adding *-enie* - *Joseph Smith mal videnie...*

F.

1. The verbal adjective *nasledujúci* must match the noun it modifies - *Chceme, aby dodržiaval nasledujúce záväzky.* **2.** The verbal noun *nasledovanie* must be cased properly - *Radosť prichádza nasledovaním Božích zákonov.* **3.** Correct **4.** *uzmierenej* must be a verbal adjective - *...prostredníctvom svojej uzmierujúcej obete.* **5.** Correct **6.** Correct **7.** All verbs ending in *-núť* become verbal nouns by replacing *-núť* with *-nutie* - *Môžeme robiť lepšie rozhodnutia...* **8.** Correct **9.** Correct **10.** The verbal adjective must match the noun it modifies - *od milujúceho Otca...*

G.

Verbal Adjectives/Adverbs: stojace (*stáť*: to stand), volajúc (*volať*: to call), ukazujúc (*ukazovať*: to show), predchádzajúcou (*predchádzať*: to come before), predchádzajúcou (*predchádzať*: to come before), Žijúci (*Žiť*: to live)

Verbal Nouns: Znovuzriadenie (*Znovuzriadiť*: to restore), vzrušenie (*vzrušiť*: to excite), hľadanie (*hľadať*: to look for), videní (*vidieť*: to see), prikázaniam (*prikázať*: to command), zdanie (*zdať sa:* to seem), vysvätenia (*vysvätiť*: to make sacred)

21 Verbs of Motion and Verb Prefixes

A.

1. Budú chodiť, na **2.** chodíme, do **3.** chodil **4.** ide **5.** Pôjdete, na **6.** Pôjdem, na **7.** Idem, na **8.** Chodím na **9.** Chodím, k **10.** Budem jazdiť **11.** ísť, ku **12.** Ideme, do **13.** Chodíme, po **14.** Pôjdem, do **15.** Idem, k **16.** Ide, na **17.** Idem **18.** Išli, k **19.** Chodíme, p**o** **20.** Pôjdu, na

B.

1. chodíme do **2.** ideme **3.** chodiť na **4.** Ideme/Pôjdeme na **5.** chodil/a do **6.** ide k **7.** ide do **8.** chodia po **9.** Ideme/Pôjdeme do **10.** Ideme k

C.

1. pochádza **2.** odchýliť **3.** rozlišovali **4.** dopúšťame **5.** Nastúpili **6.** Precvičujte **7.** Podčiarknite **8.** prinesie **9.** Odložia **10.** Prečítajte

D.

1. When coming to an event, the preposition *na* is used - *Chcete prísť na zhromaždenie s nami?* **2.** To express the future tense of a determinate verb of motion, add *po-* or *pô- - Pôjdeme na zhromaždenie...* **3.** *Prísť* is already a perfective verb - *Prídete s nami...* **4.** The verb *chodiť* should be replaced with a future tense determinate verb - *Pôjdeme do parku zajtra.* **5.** To express the future tense of a determinate verb of motion, add *po-* or *pô* - Duch *ponesie...* **6.** *do* can only be used in its literal sense. The preposition *k* should be used here - *Môžete ísť k biskupovi...* **7.** An indeterminate verb of motion should be used in place of *ide - Chodí k doktorovi...* **8.** Care must be taken to choose an appropriate prefix for the application. *Vyčítať* literally means to reproach or to blame. A better prefix to use here is *-pre - Prečítate tento verš pre nás?*

E.

1. Correct **2.** When visiting a single person ("the doctor") use *k*. If you intended to express that you go for the purpose of finding a doctor often, this sentence would be correct - *Chodíte často k doktorovi?* **3.** To express the future tense of a determinate verb of motion, add *po-* or *pô - Pôjdeme do Trenčína...* **4.** Correct **5.** *Chodiť* should be removed - *Pôjdete s nami na zhromaždenie...* **6.** Correct **7.** As there is only one meeting, a determinate verb should be used - *Pôjdeme na stretnutie...* **8.** Correct **9.** Preposition *na* should be used for motion to events. Additionally, an indeterminate verb should be used as "going to church" is a regular occurring event in this sentence - *Prečo chodíte na zhromaždenia?* or *Prečo chodíte do kostola?* **10.** Correct

22 Reflexive Pronouns and Articles

A.

1. sa **2.** si **3.** seba **4.** si **5.** sa **6.** sebe **7.** sa **8.** seba **9.** sebe **10.** sebou **11.** sa **12.** sebou **13.** si, seba **14.** sa

B.

1. vrátiť sa - *Máte sa vrátiť...* **2.** predstavím - *Ja ťa im predstavím.* **3.** dáte si - *Čo si dáte jesť?* **4.** učím sa - *Ja sa učím veľa...* **5.** menia sa - *Srdcia sa menia.* **6.** Dostaneme sa - *Dostaneme sa tam o päť minút.* **7.** učiť - *Chceme ho učiť o pláne spásy.* **8.** vrátite - *Kedy mi vrátite moje veci?* **9.** Stretneme sa - *Stretneme sa s ním...* **10.** dostaneš - *Dostaneš niečo...* **11.** zmeniť - *...znamená niečo zmeniť k lepšiemu.* **12.** stretneme - *My ho streneme zajtra...*

C.

1. The reflexive pronoun typically takes second position - *Kedy sa modlíte obvykle?* **2.** The investigators are preparing *themselves* so the reflexive pronoun *sa* must be included - *Pripravíte sa na to...* **3.** The pronoun *si* should be *sa (rozhodnúť sa) - Ako ste sa rozhodli?* **4.** *Pýtať sa* must have a reflexive pronoun - *Budete sa modliť a pýtať sa Boha?* **5.** Even though the verb *učiť sa* has been converted into a verbal noun, the reflexive pronoun must included - *Učenie sa od...* **6.** When expressing *"to oneself,"* use the reflexive pronoun *"si"* instead of *"sa" - Prečítate si túto kapitolu?* **7.** The reflexive should be omitted because the subject is not introducing himself - *Mohol by si ho predstaviť?* **8.** The reflexive pronoun *si* should be included. (**Note:** The *si* in this sentence is part of the past tense *byť* included in the L-form verb) - *Čo si si myslel...* **9.** Verbs will often share the same reflexive if they are in the same clause - *Snažte sa modliť úprimne.* **10.** The reflexive pronoun typically takes second position - *Šťastie v rodinnom živote sa dá najlepšie dosiahnuť...*

D.

1. The phrase *"vziať na seba"* uses a fourth case reflexive pronoun - *Sú ochotní vziať na seba...* **2.** Correct **3.** *Zapamätať si* must have a reflexive pronoun while *zistiť* does not - *Zapamätajte si to, čo ste zistili.* **4.** *Všímať si* must have *si as* a reflexive pronoun - *Všímajte si detaily.* **5.** Correct **6.** The preposition *s(o)*

must be followed by a seventh case pronoun - *Noste so sebou malý slovník*. **7.** Correct **8.** Reflexive *sa* is required because we want to prepare ourselves - *Chceme sa pripraviť na lekciu.* **9.** Correct **10.** Reflexive *sa* must be in the second position of the second clause - *Budete činiť pokánie a modliť sa...* **11.** Correct **12.** Correct **13.** Correct **14.** *Snažiť sa* must have a reflexive pronoun - *Snažte sa, aby sa ľudia s vami cítili príjemne.*

E.

v. 22 stať sa (to happen); **v. 23** stať sa (to happen), zdvihnúť sa (to arise/lift), stratiť sa (to get lost); **v. 24** tlačiť sa (to push), priblížiť sa (to come closer), chytiť sa (to take, seize, grasp), tlačiť sa (to push), držať sa (to hold on), priblížiť sa (to come closer); **v. 25** rozhliadnuť sa (to look around), hanbiť sa (to be ashamed); **v. 26** rozhliadnuť sa (to look around); **v. 27** posmievať sa (to mock/tease); **v. 28** hanbiť sa (to be ashamed), posmievať sa (to mock/tease), stratiť sa (to get lost); **v. 30** tlačiť sa (to push), chopiť sa (to take, seize, grasp), tlačiť sa (to push), držať sa (to hold on), priblížiť sa (to come closer)

F.

v. 15 odobrať sa (to retire to), naplánovať si (to plan for yourself), rozhliadať sa (to look around), sústrediť sa (to concentrate), zdať sa (to seem); **v. 16** poddávať sa (to surrender); **v. 17** objaviť sa (to appear), vymykať sa (to defy)

Review: Actions and Events

A.

Boh je náš **milujúci** Nebeský Otec. On nám dal vedenie a **pomoc** prostredníctvom **žijúceho** proroka. Tento prorok nás **vedie** a učí nás o svojom pláne pre rodiny. Posolstvo o znovuzriadení evanjelia Ježiša Krista **požehnáva** rodiny. Pomáha manželom a manželkám, rodičom a deťom, keď sa snažia **vybudovať** pevnejšie vzťahy a duchovnú silu vo svojich rodinách. Viem, že moja rodina mi pomáhala cítiť spolupatričnosť a učiť sa správnym zásadám v láskyplnom prostredí. Kým som **vyrastal**, modlil som sa často s mojou rodinou. Spolu sme **čítali** písma každý večer. Keď sme mohli, **jedli** sme spolu. Domov je tým najlepším miestom na **vyučovanie**, učenie sa a uplatňovanie zásad evanjelia Ježiša Krista.

B.

Prídete s nami **na zhromaždenie** v nedeľu? Každý sabatný deň moja rodina a ja **chodíme** do domu Pána, aby sme Ho uctievali. Prijímame tam večeru Pána, aby sme **si** pripomenuli Ježiša Krista a Jeho uzmierenie. Obnovujeme naše zmluvy a ukazujeme, že sme ochotní činiť pokánie zo svojich hriechov a chýb. **Chodíme**, pretože vieme že sa tam budeme **cítiť** vplyv Ducha Svätého. **Nedbajúc** na svoju situáciu, viem, že zhromaždenie mi pomáha **posilniť** môj vzťah s Bohom. Myslím **si**, že keď prídete, **uvidíte** pre seba, ako vám **dodržiavanie** vašich zmlúv dá silu.

C.

1. Žijeme naveky vo vzkriesenom stave. (Irregular-stem Verbs) **2.** Opýtajte **sa** ich, ako prišli do kontaktu s cirkvou. (Reflexive Pronouns) **3.** Môžete ísť **k** vedúcemu a hovoriť s ním. (Verbs of Motions and Prefixes) **4.** Tam **zostaneme** až do svojho vzkriesenia. (Verbs) **5.** Prezrite si záznam o výučbe každého **napredujúceho** záujemcu. (Verbal Nouns, Adjectives, and Adverbs) **6.** Myslíte **si**, že Kniha Mormonova je pravdivá? (Reflexive Pronouns) **7. Prečítali** ste kapitolu včera? (Aspect and Future) **8.** Cieľom štúdia so spoločníkom je **budovanie** jednoty. (Verbal Nouns, Adjectives, and Adverbs) **9.** Záujemcovia **sa** učia veľa od misionárov. (Reflexive Pronouns) **10.** Oni **vedia**, že evanjelium je pravdivé. (Irregular-stem Verbs) **11.** Pripravte vašich záujemcov na **splnenie** podmienok ku krstu. (Verbal Nouns, Adjectives, and Adverbs) **12. Vezmeme** na seba meno Ježiša Krista. (Irregular-stem Verbs) **13.** Kde sa **stretnete**? (Verbs) **14. Viem**, že ak dodržiavame toto prikázanie... (Verbs) **15.** Nebeský Otec **odpovie** na ich modlitby.. (Irregular-stem Verbs) **16.** Moroni **píše** niekoľko slov spôsobom nabádania. (Irregular-stem Verbs) **17. Pomôžeme** ti v utorok. (Aspect and Future) **18.** Prečo **potrebujem** získať osobné zjavenie? (Verbs) **19. Rozvinutie** vlastností podobných tým Kristovým pomôže ľudom. (Verbal Nouns, Adjectives, and Adverbs) **20.** Snažíme sa **dodržiavať** jeho prikázania (Aspect

and Future) **21.** Duch je nevyhnutný pre **vyučovanie** pravdy. (Verbal Nouns, Adjectives, and Adverbs) **22. Vieme**, že Kniha Mormonova je pravdivá. (Irregular-stem Verbs) **23.** Myslím si, že **poznám** Davida. (Verbs) **24. Dostaneš** odpovede na vaše modlitby? (Irregular-stem Verbs) **25.** Misionári **slúžiaci** v pobočkách sú povolaní Bohom. (Verbal Nouns, Adjectives, and Adverbs) **26.** Boh **odoberie** svoju kňazskú právomoc. (Irregular-stem Verbs) **27. Stretneme** sa s ním dnes poobede. (Aspect and Future). **28.** Pán vás **zavedie** k nim alebo ich **povedie** k vám. (Verbs of Motion and Prefixes

D.

1. Budeme sa stretávať každý pondelok. **2.** Pôjdem na zhromaždenie túto nedeľu. Pôjdete aj vy? **3.** Snažím sa modliť k Bohu každý deň. **4.** Bojí sa veľa. **5.** Poviem mu zajtra. **6.** Prekvapenie bolo neočakávané. **7.** Začínam chodiť na zhromaždenie pravidelnejšie. **8.** Ideme k doktorovi. **9.** Kupujeme zmrzlinu často. **10.** Usmievajúci sa muž nám dal knihu. **11.** Čo si si myslel? **12.** Stávam sa lepším človekom. **13.** Pozývame ho každý týždeň. **14.** Odchádzajú. **15.** Pôjdeme do domu Pána. **16.** Berie so sebou kravatu. **17.** Pán nám pomôže zajtra. Vždy nám pomáha. **18.** Ani si nemôžem predstaviť, aké to musí byť. **19.** Čítate písma denne? **20.** Viem, že máme žijúceho proroka na zemi.

23 Past Tense, L-form, and *Aby*

A.

1.

dostať (*to receive*)	
Ja som dostal/ dostala	My sme dostali
Ty si dostal/ dostala	Vy ste dostali
On dostal Ona dostala Ono dostalo	Oni dostali

dodržiavať (*to keep*)	
Ja som dodržiaval/ dodržiavala	My sme dodržiavali
Ty si dodržiaval/ dodržiavala	Vy ste dodržiavali
On dodržiaval Ona dodržiaval Ono dodržiaval	Oni dodržiavali

byť (*to be*)	
Ja som bol/ bola	My sme boli
Ty si bol/ bola	Vy ste boli
On bol Ona bola Ono bolo	Oni boli

mať (*to have*)	
Ja som mal/mala	My sme mali
Ty si mal/ mala	Vy ste mali
On mal Ona mala Ono malo	Oni mali

existovať (*to exist*)	
Ja som existoval/ existovala	My sme existovali
Ty si existoval/ existovala	Vy ste existovali
On existoval Ona existovala Ono existovalo	Oni existovali

viesť (*to lead*)	
Ja som viedol/ viedla	My sme viedli
Ty si viedol/ viedla	Vy ste viedli
On viedol Ona viedla Ono viedlo	Oni viedli

môcť (*to be able*)	
Ja som mohol/ mohla	My sme mohli
Ty si mohol/ mohla	Vy ste mohli
On mohol Ona mohla Ono mohlo	Oni mohli

rozumieť (*to understand*)	
Ja som rozumel/ rozumela	My sme rozumeli
Ty si rozumel/ rozumela	Vy ste rozumeli
On rozumel Ona rozumela Ono rozumelo	Oni rozumeli

stretnúť (*to meet*)	
Ja som stretol/stretla	My sme stretli
Ty si stretol/ stretla	Vy ste stretli
On stretol Ona stretla Ono stretlo	Oni stretli

odpočinúť si (*to rest*)	
Ja som si odpočinul/si odpočinula	My sme si odpočinuli
Ty si si odpočinul/ si si odpočinula	Vy ste si odpočinuli
On si odpočinul Ona si odpočinula Ono si odpočinulo	Oni si odpočinuli

B.

1. Poznali ste **2.** jedli **3.** sme sa vrátili **4.** vykonal **5.** sa zjavili **6.** bola **7.** povolal **8.** Čítal som **9.** nemali **10.** pokračovali **11.** ...aby si nás požehnal... **12.** ...aby sme sa mohli...

C.

1. Proroci svedčili o Kristovi. **2.** Joseph Smith sa modlil za poznanie. **3.** Apoštoli boli povolaní Bohom. **4.** Ježiš prekonal fyzickú smrť. **5.** Mojžiš hovoril s Bohom a dostal prikázanie. **6.** Čítal som Knihu Mormonovu každé ráno. **7.** Študovali ste o viere v Knihe Mormonovej? **8.** Joseph Smith sa učil od anjela Moroniho. **9.** Boh ukázal svoju lasku k nám prostredníctvom rodiny. **10.** Videli sme Božiu ruku v našich životoch. **11.** Išli/ prišli sme na zem a zabudli sme na náš predpozemský život. **12.** Boh nás požehnával so všetkým, čo sme potrebovali.

D.

1. Boh chce, aby sme boli šťastní. **2.** Musíme študovať a modliť sa, aby sme vedeli, že Kniha Mormonova je pravdivá. **3.** Prišli sme na zem, aby sme mohli získať telo a byť skúšaní. **4.** Kristus uzmieril naše hriechy, aby sme sa mohli vrátiť a žiť s Bohom. **5.** Joseph Smith sa modlil, aby zistil, ktorá cirkev je pravdivá. **6.** Pomodlíte sa, aby ste vedeli či to, čo sme vás učili je pravdivé? **7.** Aby mohol učiť evanjelium, Boh povoláva prorokov. **8.** Pozývame vštkých, aby prišli ku Kristovi. **9.** Ukazujete vašu vieru, keď robíte všetko to, čo Pán chce, aby ste robili.

E.

1. The *-a* is only added to the L-form verb when the subject is feminine singular - *Joseph Smith bol...* **2.** The conjugated form of *byť* is not included in the L-form of third person (*on, ona, ono, oni*) - *Kristus založil cirkev...* **3.** An *i* must be added onto the end of the L-form verb to match the subject in number - *Oni hovorili...* **4.** *Aby* must be followed by an L-form verb - *...aby ste sa mohli...* **5.** The conjugated form of *byť* must be added to match the subject - *Nemohli sme napredovať...* **6.** *Aby* must be followed by an L-form verb - *...aby nás spasil.* **7.** When *-núť* is preceded by a consonant, the *-núť* is dropped and replaced with *-ol* to convert to L-form - *... Ak si sa v tomto živote rozhodol poslúchať Boha...* **8.** The conjugated form of *byť* must be added to match the subject - *Ja som čítal...* **9.** When *-núť* is preceded by a vowel, the *-ť* is simply replaced with an *-l* to convert to L-*form - ...aby som rozvinul túto vlastnosť?* **10.** The conjugated form of *byť* must be added to match the subject. Also, the second L-form verb must end in *-a* to match the female who was invited to church - *My sme ju pozvali, aby prišla...* **11.** An *-o* must be added to the end of the L-form to match the subject (*evanjelium*) in gender - *Ako vaše štúdium evanjelia ovplyvnilo váš život?* **12.** The conjugated form of *byť* is not included in the L-form of 3rd person (*on, ona, ono, oni*) - *..., aby ľudia činili záväzky.*

F.

1. An *i* must be added onto the end of the L-form verb to match the subject in number - *Chceli sme...* **2.** Correct **3.** The conjugated form of *byť* in this sentence indicates that the subject is singular. The L-form verbs must therefore match a singular subject - *Kedy si sa dal(a) pokrstiť a stal(a) si sa členom cirkvi?* **4.** The L-form verb must match the subject in number - *Žil/ žila som...* **5.** Correct **6.** Correct **7.** *Vziať* has an irregular L-form - *Vzali na seba...* **8.** The conjugated form of *byť* must be added to the L-form verb to distinguish that Moroni wants *"us"* to know and not *"them"* - *...aby sme poznali...* **9.** When a vowel is added to the end of the L-form *poslúchnuť*, the *-o* drops out - *Zlí ľudia neposlúchli...* **10.** When *-nuť* is preceded by a consonant, the *-nuť* is dropped and replaced with *-ol* to convert to L-form. The *-o* is dropped when adding a vowel to match the subject in number - *Dohodli sme sa...*

G.

Úvod. Túto knihu napísalo..., Ich slová... citoval a skrátil prorok..., Jedna prišla z Jeruzalema..., potom sa rozdelila..., Druhá prišla..., Pán zmiatol..., boli všetci zničení..., aby získali..., Mormon dokončil..., odovzdal túto správu..., ktorý pridal niekoľko vlastných slov a ukryl dosky..., [Moroni] ukázal prorokovi... a poučil ho...., ...boli dosky odovzdané, [Joseph Smith] preložil..., [Joseph Smith] povedal..., Pán umožnil, aby ... videlo... boli..., aby čítali..., aby premýšľali... sa pýtali, aby pripravilo ....

24 Prepositions

A.

1. pre **2.** s **3.** k **4.** Bez **5.** na **6.** o, v **7.** okolo **8.** Vďaka **9.** o **10.** podľa **11.** kvôli **12.** počas **13.** Po **14.** do **15.** z **16.** pred

B.

1. za **2.** na **3.** pre **4.** pre **5.** na **6.** pre **7.** za **8.** na

C.

1. k **2.** o **3.** od **4.** na **5.** po **6.** cez **7.** na **8.** u **9.** v **10.** Po **11.** Pred **12.** medzi

D.

1. When using the common expression "veriť v niečo," what you believe in is put into fourth case - *Veríte v Ježiša Krista?* **2.** The preposition *s* becomes *so* when placed before a noun starting with an *s* - *Štúdium so spoločníkom.* **3.** *Z* is a second case preposition - *z kapitoly...* **4.** When going to an event, *na* should be used - *Ideme na zhromaždenie.* **5.** *Na* is a sixth case preposition - *Každý človek na zemi...* **6.** The preposition *k* becomes *ku* when placed before a noun starting with a *k* - *...aby prišli ku Kristovi.*

E.

1. Correct **2.** *Z* is a second case preposition - *...z Knihy Mormonovej.* **3.** *Na* becomes a fourth case preposition in this context due to motion - *Nebeský Otec poslal svojho Syna na zem.* **4.** Correct **5.** *Počas* is a second case preposition - *Počas života na zemi...* **6.** Correct **7.** Correct **8.** *K* is a third case preposition - *Viera nás motivuje k pokániu.* **9.** *Medzi* is a seventh case preposition - *...medzi Jeho deťmi.* **10.** Correct

25 Passive Voice

A.

1. Právomoc bola stratená. **2.** Obrady sú vykonávané. **3.** Požehnania sú prisľúbené. **4.** Evanjelium je vyučované. **5.** Zmluvy sú uzatvorené. **6.** Pravda je zjavená. **7.** Náuka je udržiavaná. **8.** Zásady sú naučené. **9.** Zázraky sú vykonané. **10.** Svedectvá sú napísané. **11.** Lekcie sú pripravené. **12.** Moc je daná. **13.** Hriechy sú odpustené. **14.** Cirkev je založená. **15.** Inšpirácia je nájdená.

B.

1. Adam a Eva boli umiestnení v záhrade Eden. **2.** Proroci boli povolaní Bohom. **3.** Dvanásti apoštoli boli vybraní Kristom. **4.** Evanjelium Ježiša Krista bolo znovuzriadené Josephom. **5.** Cirkev bola založená Kristom. **6.** Štefan bol zabitý farizejmi. **7.** Učenia Ježiša Krista boli odmietnuté. **8.** Služba bola ponúknutá misionármi. **9.** Viera je rozvíjaná trpezlivosťou. **10.** Slobodná vôľa nám bola daná. **11.** Božia vôla je zjavovaná prorokmi. **12.** Je nám prikazované Bohom.

C.

1. Boh stvoril všetkých z nás. **2.** Boh inšpiruje prorokov. **3.** Apoštoli rozšírili evanjelium po smrti Ježiša Krista. **4.** Proroci vyučovali evanjelium Krista v každej dobe. **5.** Kristus založil cirkev na základe 12 apoštolov. **6.** Boh poslal Krista na zem. **7.** Farizeji ukrižovali Krista na kríži. **8.** Zlí vedúci zabili Ježiša Krista. **9.** Kniha Mormonova vyučuje vieru v Ježiša Krista. **10.** Moc Božia ich posilnila. **11.** Boh zjavil Mojžišovi desať prikázaní. **12.** Kristus stvoril zem.

D.

1. zlomeným **2.** znovuzriadenej **3.** vyvoleného **4.** opísaných **5.** milovaného **6.** obráteným **7.** pripravení **8.** položených **9.** poskytnutých **10.** pozdvihnutý

E.

1. Both the L-form verb and passive participle must match the neuter subject - *Evanjelium bolo hlásané...* **2.** To form passive voice, *dostať* must be in its passive participle form - *Požehnania môžu byť dostané...* **3.** *Zakázané* must match *ovocia* (second case, singular, neuter) - *...aby nejedli zo zakázaného ovocia.* **4.** Both the L-form verb and passive participle must match the feminine subject - *Právomoc mu bola udelená.* **5.** The passive participle must match the inanimate plural subject - *Naše hriechy budú odpustené...* **6.** The *-ať* verbs form passive participles by dropping the *-ť* and adding *-ný*. They must then be conjugated appropriately - *Apoštoli boli vybraní...* **7.** To form passive voice, *vykonávať* must be in its passive participle form - *... obrady sú vykonávané.* **8.** The *-iť* verbs form passive participles by dropping the *-iť* and adding *-ený*. They must then be conjugated appropriately - *Boli sme stvorení...* **9.** Cirkev is feminine, and passive participle must match cirkev - *Cirkev bola obnovená...* **10.** Passive participle *oddané* must match *službe* (third case, singular, feminine) - *...Viera vedie k oddanej službe.*

F.

1. The past particle must match the subject *(it) - Je nám prikázané.* **2.** *Napísali* is the past tense; it should have the passive participle *napísané - Písma boli napísané.* **3.** Correct **4.** Correct **5.** The *-iť* verbs form past particles by dropping the *-iť* and adding *-ený*. They must then be conjugated appropriately - *Krst je ustanovený...* **6.** To form passive voice, *odmietnuť* must be in its passive participle form - *Kristus bol odmietnutý.* **7.** Correct **8.** To form passive voice, *poslať* must be in its passive participle form - *Duch Svätý bol poslaný...* **9.** Correct **10.** The L-form verb must match the feminine subject - *Kňazská právomoc bola stratená...*

G.

"...boli zo zeme odňaté kľúče kňazstva..." "...Falošné myšlienky boli vyučované ako pravda..." "...Náuky... boli prekrútené a zabudnuté...," "...náuky a obrady evanjelia boli buď pozmenené alebo stratené...," "... Nevyhlasovali však, že sú Bohom povolaní za proroka..." "...náuky a zvyklosti, ktoré... boli pozmenené alebo prekrútené..."

H.

ev. Sv. Lukáša 13:10–13 "...bola žena... posadnutá...," "...bola zhrbená...," "...si oslobodená od svojej nevládnosti..."

Review: Narrating

A.

Po smrti Ježiša Krista boli apoštoli a členovia Cirkvi prenasledovaní. Mnohí z nich **boli** zabití. Bez apoštolov sa časom náuka **skazila**. Falošné myšlienky boli **vyučované** ako pravda. Náuky o viere v Ježiša Krista, pokání, krste a dare Ducha Svätého boli **prekrútené** a **zabudnuté**. Kňazská právomoc, udelená Kristovým apoštolom, sa **na** zemi už nenachádzala. Keď nastali správne podmienky, Boh **(omitted) vyniesol** na svetlo dávne sväté písmo, zrovnateľné s Bibliou, ktoré obsahuje plnosť večného evanjelia Ježiša Krista. Aby **sme** mohli zistiť, či je Kniha Mormonova pravdivá, musíme ju čítať, premýšľať nad ňou a musíme sa za ňu modliť. Ja som bol **požehnaný** so znalosťou, že evanjelium Ježiša Krista je pravdivé. Viem, pretože **som sa modlil** za potvrdenie.

B.

Nebeský Otec znovu zasiahol, aby svojim deťom **prejavil** svoju lásku. **Povolal (omitted)** za proroka mladého muža, ktorý sa volal Joseph Smith. Joseph Smith **(omitted) chcel** vedieť, ktorá zo všetkých cirkví je tá pravá. Vy **ste sa** tak cítili predtým? Keď máme také otázky, Boh chce, **aby sme boli** pokorní. Chce, aby sme ho **prosili** o odpovede **v** úprimnej modlitbe. Keď Joseph hľadal pravdu **medzi rozličnými vierovyznaniami**, obrátil sa na Bibliu pre radu. Dočítal sa: „Ak sa niekomu z vás nedostáva múdrosti, nech si ju prosí od Boha, ktorý prosto a ochotne dáva všetkým, a dostane sa mu jej“ (pozri Jakub 1:5). Vďaka **tejto pasáži** sa Joseph rozhodol, že sa opýta Boha na to, čo by mal robiť. Joseph Smith bol **povolaný**, aby znovuzriadil evanjelium v týchto neskorších dňoch. **Prostredníctvom Josepha Smitha** bola Kniha Mormonova preložená. Môžete sa modliť, aby ste **vedeli** sami za seba.

C.

1. Rozhodli sme sa prísť. (Past Tense, L-form, and *Aby*) **2.** Ježiš Kristus zomrel, **aby** nás spasil. (Past Tense, L-form, and *Aby*) **3.** Snažili sa opraviť veci, ktoré boli **pozmenené**. (Passive Voice) **4.** Obdržia vedenie **od** Ducha Svätého. (Prepositions) **5.** Nebeský Otec poslal svojho **milovaného** Syna. (Prepositions) **6.** Mená a adresy **pokrstených** a **konfirmovaných** ľudí. (Passive Voice) **7.** Ľudia **odmietli** prorokov za odpadlíctva. (Past Tense, L-form, and *Aby*) **8.** Adam a Eva **vyučovali** svoje deti. (Past Tense, L-form, and *Aby*) **9.** Spasiteľ pozýva ľudí, aby **prišli** k Nemu. (Past Tense, L-form, and *Aby*) **10.** Na konci sa **rozhodla**, že nechcela prísť. (Past Tense, L-form, and *Aby*) **11.** Čo **chceli** od vás? Čo ste im povedali? (Past Tense, L-form, and *Aby*) **12.** Modlite sa, aby ste **poznali** pravdu. (Past Tense, L-form, and *Aby*) **13.** Krst je obrad **nevyhnutný** pre spásu. (Passive Voice) **14.** Aby sme **obdržali** toto požehnanie... (Past Tense, L-form, and *Aby*) **15.** My **sme** sa ho spýtali, či čítal Knihu Mormonovu. (Past Tense, L-form, and *Aby*) **16.** Dáme sa pokrstiť, aby sme **mohli** žiť s Ním. (Past Tense, L-form, and *Aby*) **17.** Evanjelium je návod k **požehnanému** životu. (Passive Voice) **18.** Bol **ukrižovaný** a Jeho apoštoli boli odmietnutí a zavraždení. (Passive Voice) **19. Nemali** plnosť pravdy a kňazskú právomoc. (Past Tense, L-form, and *Aby*) **20.** Prostredníctvom viery v Ježiša Krista a Jeho **uzmierenia**... (Prepositions) **21. Odpočinuli** sme si na chvíľu, kým sme čakali. (Past Tense, L-form, and *Aby*) **22.** Študovať náuky **z** misionárskych lekcií. (Prepositions) **23.** Aby **ste ich** pripravili na výzvu ku krstu a konfirmácii... (Past Tense, L-form, and *Aby*) **24.** Hovoríme o podobenstve o **stratenej** ovci. (Passive Voice) **25.** Vyjadrujeme vďačnosť **za** svoje požehnania. (Prepositions) **26. Dal** sa pokrstiť minulý týždeň. (Past Tense, L-form, and *Aby*) **27.** Nebudú naveky **zavrhnutí**. (Passive Voice). **28.** Prosíte **o odpoveď** v modlitbe. (Prepositions)

D.

1. Kniha Mormonova bola preložená Josephom Smithom. **2.** Ponúkol nám dokonalý plán. **3.** Kristus zomrel, aby nás spasil. **4.** Buďte si vedomí neplánovaných príležitostí. **5.** Mohli sme sa jej spýtať, aby sa pomodlila. **6.** Čo môžeme robiť, aby sme jej pomáhali? **7.** V čo veríte vy? **8.** Odviezol/zaviezol Michala domov. **9.** Proroci sú povolaní, aby nás učili o pláne. **10.** Bez evanjelia nemáme vedenie od Ducha. **11.** Cirkev je vybudovaná na základe apoštolov. **12.** Čo viete o znovuzriadenom evanjeliu? **13.** Čo môžeme robiť pre neho? **14.** Sú proti nám. **15.** Boh chce, aby sme rástli. **16.** Aby sme sa vrátili k Bohu, musíme byť pokrstení. **17.** Evanjelium je jasne vyučované v Knihe Mormonovej. **18.** Naše posolstvo je o rodinách. **19.** Joseph videl Krista vedľa Boha vo videní. **20.** Si pripravený ísť?

26 Rád (To Like)

A.

1. Radi začíname s modlitbou. **2.** Joseph Smith rád čítal Bibliu. **3.** Rád (rada) čítam písma. **4.** Čo radi robíte? **5.** Máte radi túto pieseň? **6.** Hovorí váš kamarát rád o náboženstve? **7.** Rád (rada) sa učím viac o evanjeliu. **8.** Som rád (rada), že môžem s vami dnes hovoriť. **9.** Mám veľmi rád (rada) toto písmo. **10.** Rád (rada) vidím chrám. **11.** Rada čítaš o Kristovi? **12.** Sme radi, že sme vás mohli navštíviť.

B.

1. The verb *mať* is not included when expressing "to like to do something" - *Rád (rada) čítam príbehy v písmach.* **2.** The verb *mať* is not included when expressing "to like to do something" - *Váš bratranec rád študuje náboženstvá?* **3.** The thing pleasing (the Book of Mormon) is the subject of the sentence and must be put into the nominitive case (first case) - *Páči sa vám Kniha Mormonova?* **4.** The sentence literally translates: "It pleases me." Notice that in this sentence "me" must be put into the accusative case (fourth case) - *Teší ma.* **5.** The word rád must decline to match the subject of the sentence - *Radi hovoríme s ľuďmi.* **6.** The word *rád* must decline to match the subject of the sentence - *Som rád (rada), že tu môžem byť.* **7.** The verb *mať* is not included when expressing "to like to do something" - *Rád (rada) ješ toto jedlo?* **8.** The thing pleasing in this case is plural, and must be reflected in the verb ending - *Piesne sa mi páčia.*

C.

1. Correct **2.** The verb *mať* must be included when expressing "to like" - *Ja mám rád (rada) Knihu Mormonovu.* **3.** Correct **4.** Correct **5.** The thing pleasing (the Book of Mormon) must be the subject of the sentence, match the verb ending and be put into the nominitive case (first case). In addition, a third case personal pronoun must be added to indicate "to whom" the subject is pleasing - *Páči sa mi Kniha Mormonova.* **6.** The preposition *na* must be added to express excitement for a future event - *Teším sa na naše stretnutie.* **7.** Correct **8.** The verb *mať* is not included when expressing "to like to do something" - *Rád (rada) spievam.* or *Mám rád (rada) spievanie (noun).* **9.** Correct **10.** Correct

D.

Máte radi...? Čo máte radi? Čo radi robíte? Radi...? Čo sa vám páči o...? d"
3 Ne. 13:5–6 - ...tí sa radi modlia

27 Commands

A.

činiť (*to do*)	
	čiňte
čiň	čiňme

pomôcť (*to help*)	
	pomôžte
pomôž	pomôžme

zavolať (*to call*)	
	zavolajte
zavolaj	zavolajme

rozhodnúť sa (*to decide*)	
	rozhodnite sa
rozhodni sa	rozhodnime sa

nasledovať (*to follow*)	
	nasledujte
nasleduj	nasledujme

B.

1. Zaspievať: zaspievaj, zaspievajte, zaspievajme **2.** Pomôcť: pomôž, pomôžte, pomôžme **3.** Počúvať: počúvaj, počúvajte, počúvajme **4.** Ísť: choď, choďte, choďme; prinášať: prinášaj, prinášajte, prinášajme **5.** Študovať: študuj, študujte, študujme **6.** Vybrať: vyber, vyberte, vyberme **7.** Prečítať: prečítaj, prečítajte, prečítajme; povedať: povedz, povedzte, povedzme **8.** Prosiť: pros, proste, prosme **9.** Hovoriť: hovor, hovorte, hovorme **10.** pomodliť sa: pomodli sa, pomodlite sa, pomodlime sa; požiadať: požiadaj, požiadajte, požiadajme

C.

1. Študovať → Študujú → Študuj → Študujte - *Študujte túto kapitolu, prosím*. **2.** Hovoriť → Hovoria → Hovor → Hovorme - *Hovorme s ním...* **3.** Prečítať → Prečítajú → Prečítaj → Prečítajte - *Prečítajte tento verš* **4.** Rozhodnúť sa → Rozhodnú sa → Rozhodni sa → Rozhodnite sa - *Rozhodnite sa dnes, komu budete slúžiť.* **5.** Povedať → Povedz (*Irregular*) → Povedzte - *Povedzte nám...* **6.** Prísť → Poď (*Irregular*) → Poďte - *Poďte ku Kristovi...*

D.

1. Correct **2.** Činiť → Činia → Čiň → Čiňte - *Čiňte pokánie!* **3.** Podeliť sa → Podelia sa → Podeľ sa - *Podeľ sa s nami o svoje svedectvo.* **4.** Correct **5.** Byť → Buď (*Irregular*) **6.** Zobrať → Zoberú → Zober → Zoberte - *Zoberte túto knihu.* **7.** Correct **8.** Usilovať sa → Usilujú sa → Usiluj sa → Usilujme sa - *Usilujme sa v práci Pána.*

E.

1. D&C 45:3–5: v. 3 listen (počúvajte), v. 4 behold (hľa), behold (hľa), v. 5 spare (ušetrite) **2. John 8:11:** v. 11 go (choďte), sin not (nehrešte) **3. D&C 6:33–37:** v. 33 fear not (nebojte sa), v. 34 fear not (nebojte sa), do/make (čiňte), let (nech), v. 35 Behold (hľa), go (choďte), sin not (nehrešte), perform (konajte), v. 36 look (hľaďte), doubt not (nepochybujte), fear not (nebojte sa), v. 37 Behold (hľa), be (buďte), keep (zachovávajte) **4. D&C 33:10–11:** v. 10 Open (Otvárajte), Repent, repent (čiňte pokánie), prepare (pripravujte sa), do/make (čiňte), v. 11 repent (čiňte pokánie), be (buďte), be (buďte) **5. Moroni 7:34:** v. 34 Repent (Čiňte pokánie), come (poďte), be (buďte), have (majte) **6. D&C 18:10:** v. 10 Remember (pamätajte) **7. D&C 88:63:** v. 63 Draw near (Priblížte sa), seek (hľadajte), ask (proste), knock (klopte) **8. Alma 7:15:** v. 15 Come (poďte), fear not (nebojte sa), lay aside (odložte), come (poďte), go forth (vyjdite), show (ukážte), witness (dosvedčite)

28 Conditional

A.

1. mohol **2.** mal **3.** chcel **4.** prečítal **5.** spýtal sa

B.

1. nemohli - *Adam a Eva by nemohli...* **2.** ste, spýtali - *...čo by ste sa ho spýtali* **3.** mali - *...ktoré by mali...* **4.** Prečítali, ste - *Prečítali by ste...* **5.** Mohli, sme - *Mohli by sme...* **6.** mohla - *Ako by vám mohla...* **7.** mal - *...čo by mal robiť* **8.** mali - *Svätí neskorších dní by mali...* **9.** Mali, ste - *Mali by ste...* **10.** Chceli, ste - *Chceli by ste...*

C.

1. Prečítali by ste túto pasáž? **2.** Napísali by ste svoje číslo tu? **3.** Čo by ste chceli? **4.** Mohli by ste mi pomôcť? **5.** Mohli by sme vás opäť navštíviť? **6.** Dali by ste nám číslo? **7.** Čo by sme mali robiť? **8.** Čo by ste chceli, aby sme učili? **9.** Mali by sme študovať písma každý deň. **10.** Povedali by ste nám niečo o vašej rodine?

D.

1. You must add *by* in order to turn this question into conditional form - *Ako by sme mohli...* **2.** Except in the case of third person singular or plural (e.g., *he, she, it, they*), the conjugated form of *byť* matching the subject must follow *by* - *...čo by ste sa Boha spýtali?* **3.** Only one verb is put into L-form (in this case *mať*) - *Mali by ste čítať...* **4.** The L-form verb must match the subject (identified by the conjugated form of *byť*) in number - *Prečo by sme mali čítať...* **5.** Except in the case of third person singular or plural (e.g., *he, she, it, they*), the conjugated form of *byť* matching the subject must follow *by* - *... o čom by ste mohli premýšľať?* **6.** When a vowel is added to the end of the L-form of *môcť (mohol)*, the second o drops out - *Mohli by ste...* **7.** The L-form verb must match the subject in number - *Ako by sme mohli vám pomáhať?* **8.** The conjugated form of *byť* is incorrect - *Kým by sme/ ste sa chceli stať?*

E.

1. *By* must come before the conjugated form of *byť - Boli by sme radi, keby ste prišli na zhromaždenie.* **2.** The *L-form* verb must match the neuter subject *(posolstvo) - ...komu by toto posolstvo pomohlo?* **3.** *By* always takes the second position - *Koho by ste chceli...* **4.** Correct **5.** Correct **6.** The conditional uses an *L-form* verb - *Prečítali by ste túto pásaž, prosím?* **7.** If the gender of the subject is feminine, *mohol* becomes *mohla - Mohol/Mohla by som ti kládať otázku?* **8.** Correct **9.** Correct **10.** Only one *L-form* verb is used to create the conditional - *Mohli by sme začať túto lekciu s modlitbou?* **11.** The *L-form* verb must match the subject - *Chceli by sme sa podeliť o pásaž z Knihy Mormonovej.* **12.** Correct Past Te

29 *Keby* and *Ak* (If-Then)

A.

1. Ak **2.** Ak **3.** Pokiaľ **4.** Či **5.** Keby **6.** Ak **7.** Keby **8.** Pokiaľ

B.

1. Keby **2.** Ak **3.** keby **4.** Keby **5.** Ak **6.** Ak **7.** Keby **8.** Ak

C.

1. The L-form *bol* must match the subject *(Kristus) - Keby Kristus neprišiel...* **2.** When *ak* is used, the then-clause is a statement and is not conditional - *Ak sa budeme modliť, Boh na naše modlitby odpovie.* **3.** *Ak* should be used instead of *pokiaľ - Ak máte otázky, spýtajte sa.* **4.** The then-clause must be in the conditional - *...čo by ste robili?* **5.** When *ak* is used, the then-clause is a statement and is not conditional - *...máme činiť pokánie.* **6.** When *keby* is used, the then-clause is conditional - *...nemali by sme zjavenie*. **7.** The conjugated form of *byť* must be second (see lesson on word order) - *Keby ste prišli...* **8.** When *ak* is used, the then-clause is a statement and is not conditional - *... ľudia musia prijať...*

D.

1. Correct **2.** The second *ak* in the sentence should be omitted - *Ak sa spoliehame na Ježiša Krista, On nám môže pomôcť...* **3.** Correct **4.** Correct **5.** *Keby* is used when the then-clause is conditional - *...keby ste chceli.* **6.** *Pokiaľ* is a better fit than *ak* in this sentence - *...pokiaľ je toho hodný.* **7.** Correct **8.** Correct **9.** *keby* must be accompanied by an L-form verb - *...keby sme vedeli...* **10.** Correctnse,ast Te

Review: Expressing

A.

Boh nás má **rád** a pomôže nám uskutočniť správne rozhodnutia. **(Omitted) Rád** nám **pomáha** a chce, aby sme boli šťastní. Avšak, napriek tomu, že nás miluje, dovolí nám čeliť výzvam. On vie, že by **sme** nemohli poznať radosť a rásť bez ťažkostí. Nebeský Otec pripravil pre nás spôsob, ako byť úspešnými v tomto živote a ako sa vrátiť a žiť v Jeho prítomnosti. **Ak** dodržujeme prikázania Ježiša Krista, môžeme sa stať čistými od hriechu. **Keby** nebolo Spasiteľa Ježiša Krista, smrť by znamenala koniec všetkých nádejí na ďalší život s Nebeským Otcom. **Prečítajte** tento verš nahlas, prosím. Ked ho prečítate, rozmýšľajte nad týmto: "Čo by to **znamenalo** pre mňa, keby to **bolo** pravdivé?"

B.

Čo by to znamenalo vo vašom živote, **keby** Kniha Mormonova bola pravdivá? Čo by ste **robili** inak? Ak sa budete modliť s úprimným srdcom, s naozajstným zámerom a vierou v Krista, Boh vám pomocou Ducha Svätého povie, že Kniha Mormonova je pravdivá. Viem, že Kniha Mormonova je pravdivá. Rád ju **čítam** denne. **Mám rád** Knihu Mormonovu, pretože je to silný dôkaz znovuzriadenia. Chceme, aby ste mali toto svedectvo aj vy. Keď ju čítate, vždy **začnite** s modlitbou. **Poproste** o pomoc, aby ste získali odpoveď za seba.

C.

1. Sme radi, že ste čítali. (Expressing Liking) **2. Nestrať** vieru. (Commands) **3. Ja** by som mu povedal... or Povedal by som mu... (Conditional) **4.** Čo by som povedal Moronimu, **keby** som mal príležitosť? (*Keby* and *Ak* (If-Then)) **5.** Mohli by **sme sa** vrátiť? (Conditional) **6.** Čo by ste robili, keby ste vedeli na 100%, **či** Boh žije? (*Keby* and *Ak* (If-Then)) **7. Tešíme sa na to**, keď príde! (Expressing Liking) **8. Radšej** hovoríme o evanjeliu. (Expressing Liking) **9. Pracujme** usilovne a s Duchom. (Commands) **10.** Majú **radi** svoju rodinu. (Expressing Liking) **11.** Poslúchnuť toto prikázanie by **znamenalo**... (Conditional) **12. Povedzte**, čo máte na mysli. (Commands) **13.** Keby k odpadlíctvu **neprišlo**... (*Keby* and *Ak* (If-Then)) **14. Ak** sme poslušní, žehná nám. (*Keby* and *Ak* (If-Then)) **15.** Boh nás **nerád** trestá. (Expressing Liking) **16. Odložte** prirodzeného človeka. (Commands) **17. Pokiaľ** sme na zemi, nemáme prístup do Božej prítomnosti. (*Keby* and *Ak* (If-Then)) **18.** Neviem, **či** je to pravdivé. (*Keby* and *Ak* (If-Then)) **19. Buďte** pokrstení v mojom mene. (Commands) **20. Choďte** domov a prečítajte tú kapitolu. (Commands) **21.** Čo **radi robíte**? (Expressing Liking) **22.** Neboli **by** sme sem prišli... (*Keby* and *Ak* (If-Then)) **23. Modlime** sa každý deň! (Commands) **24.** Mali by ste **čítať** túto knihu. (Conditional) **25. Prestaňte** s tým, prosím. (Commands) **26.** Môžete sa tešiť **zo spoločenstva** Ducha Svätého po celý život. (Expressing Liking) **27. Chcel** by som vám dať Knihu Mormonovu. (Passive Voice). **28. Sadnite** si. (Commands) **29. Pomôžte** im, aby mali sebadôveru. (Commands) **30.** Ako by **mohli** prísť na zhromaždenie? (*Keby* and *Ak* (If-Then))

D.

1. Prečítajte dve kapitoly dnes večer. **2.** Rád vidím chrám. **3.** Čo by ste povedali, keby bol Boh v tejto miestnosti? **4.** Rozhodnite sa, čo chcete. **5.** Teším sa, že vás uvidím budúci týždeň. **6.** Mohli by sme ho navštíviť zajtra. **7.** Nepovedzte mu, že prídeme. **8.** Mám veľmi rád túto kapitolu. **9.** Čo si myslíte, že by ste mali robiť? **10.** Veľmi rád čítam tieto kapitoly. **11.** Keby som mohol, išiel by som. **12.** Čo by sa spýtali Boha? **13.** Ako by ste mu mohli pomáhať? **14.** Poďte s nami! **15.** Mám rád príklad Nefiho v týchto kapitolách. **16.** Povedal by som mu, že rád učím evanjelium.

30 Time and Date

A.

1. Je osem (hodín) ráno. **2.** Je štvrť na štyri v noci. **3.** Je trištvrte na štyri popoludní. **4.** Je sedemnásť/päť (hodín) tridsať deväť (minút) večer. **5.** Je desať (hodín) štyridsať osem (minút) dopoludnia. **6.** Je jedna hodina devätnásť minút poobede. **7.** Je poludnie. **8.** Sú tri minúty po druhej v noci. **9.** Je pol piatej poobede. **10.** Je jedna hodina ráno.

B.

1. Zastavíme sa o jedenástej dopoludnia. **2.** Zhromaždenie je v nedeľu o desiatej ráno **3.** Krst je v sobotu o osemnástej. **4.** Aktivita je od pol siedmej do ôsmej večer. **5.** Mohli by sme vás navštíviť o pol tretej poobede? **6.** Máme stretnutie v nedeľu o štvrť na desať ráno. **7.** Máme stretnutie o ôsmej večer v pondelok. **8.** O koľkej sa vrátite v piatok? **9.** Zavezieme vás tam v nedeľu ráno o trištvrte na desať. **10.** Prečo ste vstali o pol štvrtej v noci? **11.** Dnes je osemnásteho augusta. **12.** Zajtra je piatok. **13.** Cirkev bola zorganizovaná šiesteho apríla tisíc osemsto tridsať. **14.** Budúca nedeľa je prvého marca. **15.** Joseph Smith mal prvé videnie v roku tisíc osemsto dvadsať. **16.** Stretnutie bude v utorok o pol ôsmej večer. **17.** Dnes je dvadsiateho tretieho decembra dvetisíc osem. **18.** Krst je v sobotu o osemnástej. **19.** Hodilo by sa vám, keby sme začali o pol šiestej? **20.** O koľkej končíte prácu v sobotu?

C.

1. The conjugation of *byť* is plural (*sú*) when you have two, three, or four of something - *Sú dve štyridsať sedem.* **2.** *Koľkého* should be used when referring to the date - *Koľkého je dnes?* **3.** Whenever you have five or more of something, you must use the genitive (second case) plural declension of the noun with a singular conjuagtion of the verb *byť - Je deväť hodín, päť minút.* **4.** To express "on a certain day," use the preposition *v*, and use the accusative (fourth case) of the day - *Môžeme sa stretnúť v piatok?*

5. Conjugated ordinal numbers are used with prepositions - *Vrátime sa domov o šiestej.* **6.** Slovaks refer to the hour that is coming, not the hour that has already past - *Je pol tretej.* **7.** To express "in an amount of time" in Slovak, use the preposition *o* and the accusitive (fourth case) of the time period - *Dá sa pokrstiť o dva dni.* **8.** *Prvého* not *jedného* is used for dates - *Dnes je prvého mája.*

D.

1. Ordinal numbers are not used when referring to the quarter hour - *Budeme tam o trištvrte na osem.* **2.** Correct **3.** *O koľkej* should be used instead of *koľkého* - *O koľkej chcel...* **4.** Correct **5.** To express "by a certain" in Slovak, use the preposition *do* and the genitive (second case) of the deadline - *Pozvete do piatku Pavla...* **6.** Correct **7.** Correct **8.** The ordinal numbers are both incorrect - *Včera bola dvadsiateho siedmeho augusta.* **9.** Correct **10.** *Odoberieme sa do postele o pol desiatej).* **11.** Conjugated ordinal numbers are used with prepositions - *Ideme asi o pol jednej.* **12.** Correct **13.** The single whole integer is used for the year - *V roku tisíc osemsto dvadsať...* **14.** *Koľko je hodín?* **15.** The ordinal number *tridsiateho* must be used in this context - *Dáte sa pokrstiť tridsiateho prvého novembra?* **16.** *Streda* must be in the accusative (fourth case) - *Budeme tam v stredu, dobre?*

30 *To, čo* and Before, During, and After

A.

1. Pred - *Pred narodením Krista* **2.** Predtým, ako - *Predtým, ako vás učíme...* **3.** Predtým, ako - *Predtým, ako bola cirkev znovuzriadená...* **4.** Pred - *Pred vzkriesením...*

B.

1. Počas - *Počas tohto života...* **2.** Za - *Za veľkého odpadlíctva...* **3.** Zatiaľ čo - *Zatiaľ čo sme tu na zemi...* **4**. Zatiaľ čo - *Zatiaľ čo čítate... (or kým čítate...)*

C.

1. Potom, ako - *Potom, ako sme súdení...* **2.** Po - *Po krste obdržíme dar Ducha Svätého.* **3.** Potom, ako - *Potom, ako prečítate, pomodlíte sa?* **4.** Po - *Po smrti ide náš duch do duchovného sveta.*

D.

Predtým, ako sme išli na obed, učili sme Rada. Učili sme o modlitbe a o tom, ako môžeme komunikovať s Bohom. Potom sme sa ho spýtali: "Podľa toho, čo sme učili, čo rozmuiete o modlitbe?" Dal nám dobré vysvetlenie toho, čo je modlitba. Bol vďačný za to, čo sme ho učili. Sme vďační za neho.

E.

1. Po zhromaždení navštívime Sestru Háčkovu. **2.** Za/počas odpadlíctva ľudia stále hľadali pravdu. **3.** Predtým, ako som išiel na misiu, chodil som do školy. **4.** Budeme vzkriesení pred posledným súdom. **5.** Musíte žiť podľa zákonu cudnosti predtým, ako sa dáte pokrstiť. **6.** Po krste sa s vami budeme stále stretávať. **7.** Zatiaľ čo sme tu na zemi, musíme ukazovať vieru. **8.** Prečítate túto kapitolu pred naším ďalším stretnutím? **9.** Dostaneme milosť potom, ako robíme všetko to, čo je v našich silách. **10.** Po Kristovej smrti apoštoli viedli cirkev.

F.

1. *"Predtým, ako"* should be used because "before" precedes a verb instead of a noun - *Predtým, ako Boh stvoril zem...* **2.** *"Potom, ako"* should be used because "after" precedes a verb instead of a noun - *Alma sa obrátil potom, ako počul...* **3.** A demonstrative pronoun must be inserted to take the case of the preposition *o* - *...hovoriť o tom, ako...* **4.** *"Pred"* should be used because "before" precedes a noun instead of a verb - *Pred vaším krstom...* **5.** *"Po"* should be used because "after" precedes a noun instead of a verb - *Po modlitbe...* **6.** A demonstrative pronoun must be inserted to take the case of the preposition - *Budete konať podľa toho, čo...* **7.** *Ako* must be included in the phrase - *Predtým, ako učíme o krste...* **8.** The demonstrative pronoun must be declined according to the case of the preposition *o* - *obdržíte vedenia o tom, kam...*

G.

1. Correct **2.** *Ako* must be included in the phrase - *Potom, ako apoštoli zomreli...* **3.** Correct **4.** *"Pred"* should be used because "before" precedes a noun instead of a verb - *...pred krstom.* **5.** Correct **6.** The past tense should be used to denote that the subject read - *...zatiaľ čo ste čítali?* **7.** Correct **8.** A demonstrative pronoun must be inserted to take the case of the preposition *na* - *Sila svedectva nezáleží od toho, aký silný je váš hlas.*

32 When

A.

1. Kedy **2.** keď **3.** Keď **4.** Kedy **5.** Až/Keď **6.** keď **7.** Aj keď **8.** Kedy **9.** kedykoľvek /hocikedy **10.** keď **11.** kedy **12.** kedykoľvek/hocikedy **13.** kedy **14.** Aj keď

B.

1. Potrebujeme mať vieru, keď nachádzame záujemcov. **2.** Budem sa modliť za môjho spoločníka, keď učí. **3.** Kedy bude ďalšia zónová konferencia? **4.** Keď budete vedieť, že toto je pravdivé, dáte sa pokrstiť? **5.** Kedy ste sa naposledy stretli s misionármi? **6.** Kedy sa vrátite na Slovensko? **7.** Budem sa modliť, až kým nedostanem odpoveď. **8.** Pomáhajte záujemcom počas doby, kedy sú vyučovaní. **9.** Učte, keď vyhľadávate a nachádzajte, keď učíte. **10.** Kedy ste začali veriť v Boha? **11.** Duch ma posilnil, keď som sa úprimne modlil. **12.** Nájdete pokoj, keď prídete na zhromaždenie v nedeľu. **13.** Musíme sa vyhýbať pornografii v akejkoľvek (hociakej) forme. **14.** Buďte si istí, že Duch Svätý bude svedčiť komukoľvek, koho budete učiť.

C.

1. *Kedy* is used when asking direct and indirect questions - *Kedy sa môžeme stretnúť zasa?* **2.** *Keď* is used to express **when** or **as** in statements - *Keď nastali správne podmienky...* **3.** This could be correct if you were going to decide on something *when* you went to visit them. However, because you are deciding actually *when you will visit them, kedy* should be used - *Rozhodnite sa, kedy ich opäť navštívite.* **4.** To say **even though** use the phrase *aj keď* - *...aj keď nie som pod tlakom.* **5.** *Kedy* is used in refering to a specific time identified in the previous clause (in this case *deň*) - *Je deň, kedy budete...* **6.** This could be correct if you were only trying to discern something yourself when the investigators didn't understand but because you are actually trying to discern *when the investigators themselves are not understanding, kedy* should be used - *Počas výučby sa snažte rozoznať, kedy nerozumejú.* **7.** *Kedy* is used in referring to a specific time identified in the previous clause (in this case *skúsenosťami*) - *Podeľte sa so skúsenosťami, kedy ste boli požehnaní* **8.** *Kedy* is used to express **ever** - ...pre ktorú sa kedy záujemca rozhodne.

D.

1. Correct **2.** *Až* should be *Keď* in this case as the sentence does not refer to a future event - *Keď sa modlíme...* **3.** *Keď* is used to express **when** or **as** in statements - *Joseph Smith videl Boha a Ježiša Krista, keď sa modlil.* **4.** Correct **5.** Correct **6.** *Keď* is used to express **when** or **as** in statements. - *Ste úspešní, keď ste poslušní.* **7.** Correct **8.** *Kedy* is used in refering to a specific time identified in the previous clause (in this case *príležitosti)* - *Vyhľadajte príležitosti, kedy ste boli vedení Duchom.* **9.** Correct **10.** Correct **11.** When using *až kým*, the following verb must be negated - *až kým v neho nemali vieru.* **12.** *Keď* is used to express **when** or **as** in statements. - *Ako ste sa cítili, keď sme hovorili...* **13.** Correct **14.** *Kedy* is used when asking direct and indirect questions - *Kedy ste boli konfirmovaný?*

33 How Often

A.

1. Raz za týždeň **2.** Trikrát za mesiac **3.** Dvakrát za striedanie **4.** Každý druhý deň **5.** Zakaždým **6.** Dvakrát **7.** Koľkokrát za rok? **8.** Každé ráno každú stredu/každú stredu ráno **9.** Raz za deň za dvadsať dní. **10.** Čítam písma pravidelne. **11.** Ako často sa modlíte? **12.** Občas chodí na zhromaždenie.

B.

1. *Hodina* must be put in the accusative fourth case - *Raz za hodinu...* **2.** *Každý* must match the noun in modifies - *...každú sobotu.* **3.** Once is expressed as *raz za - Raz za dva mesiace.* **4.** "Every time" is expressed as *zakaždým - Zakaždým to robí.*

Review: Time, Date, and Frequency

A.

Spýtali sme sa jej, či by sme mohli prísť **o** pol druhej poobede. Súhlasila, tak sme sa neskôr zastavili. Nebola doma, tak sme jej zavolali. Povedala, že meška. Čakali sme (**omitted**) 10 minút, potom prišla s koláčmi. Sadli sme si s ňou v jej dome. Predtým, ako sme začali vyučovať, ona nám povedala: "**Predvčerom** som vás videla na námestí. Aj keď len čítam Bibliu párkrát za (**omitted**) rok, chcela som vedieť viac, **keď** som počula o Knihe Mormonovej." Začali sme jej vysvetľovať **to**, ako sme získali Knihu Mormonovu. **Po** našej lekcii bola velmi šťastná. Chcela vedieť, **kedy** by sme sa mohli vrátiť.

B.

Koľkokrát za deň sa modlíte? **Kedy** sa najčastejšie modlíte každý deň? Boh má plán pre nás a chce, aby sme s ním hovorili často. Misionári sa často modlia, sedem alebo **osemkrát** za deň. Vedia, že potrebujú pomoc od Boha. Modlia sa **predtým, ako** jedia a **predtým, ako** sa odoberú do postele. Modlia sa pred lekciami. Modlia sa, keď niekto potrebuje pomoc. Môžu sa modliť **kedykoľvek** o pomoc s jazykom alebo vyučovaním. V roku **tisíc osemsto dvadsať**, Joseph Smith sa rozhodol, že sa opýta Boha na to, čo by mal robiť. Vďaka tej modlitbe, evanjelium bolo neskôr znovuzriadené (**omitted**) šiesteho apríla v roku tisíc osemsto tridsať. Modlitba je mocný dar, ktorý nám dal Boh.

C.

1. Naše stretnutie je **každý druhý utorok** v decembri. (Time and Date) **2. Koľkého** máš narodininy? (Time and Date) **3.** Odoláme **akejkoľvek** túžbe dopúšťať sa hriechu. (When) **4. Keď** slúžime druhým, slúžime Bohu. (When) **5.** Musíme kráčať podľa viery a nie podľa toho, čo vidíme. (To, čo and Before, During, and After) **6.** Začíname **o** pol tretej. (Time and Date) **7.** Premýšľajte o časoch, **kedy** ste získali skúsenosti. (When) **8. Keď** sme ju učili, cítila Ducha Svätého. (When) **9.** Je jedna hodina, (**omitted**) dvadsať minút. (Time and Date) **10.** Podľa **toho**, čo sme ťa učili... (To, čo and Before, During, and After) **11. Raz** za týždeň chodím na zhromaždenie. (How Often) **12.** Kráľ Lamoni sa obrátil **potom, ako** počul slová Ammona. (To, čo and Before, During, and After) **13.** Máme generálnu konferenciu dvakrát **za** rok. (How Often) **14.** Konferencia

je o deviatej (**omitted**) ráno. (Time and Date) **15.** Za **každý** hriech musí byť zaplatené. (How Often) **16.** (**Omitted**) Devätnastého apríla mám narodeniny. (Time and Date) **17.** Hovoríme o **tom**, čo čítame. (To, čo and Before, During, and After) **18.** Modlím sa **mnohokrát** za mesiac. (How Often) **19. Po krste** prejavujeme vieru dodržiavaním svojich zmlúv. (To, čo and Before, During, and After) **20. Sú** tri hodiny. (Time and Date) **21.** V priebehu tejto alebo **ktorejkoľvek** ďalšej lekcie... (When) **22.** Stretnutie skončí o **štvrť** na jednu. (Time and Date) **23.** Pokračujte, aj **keď** ste unavení. (When) **24.** Príde o **trištvrte** na osem. (Time and Date) **25.** Viac ako **kedykoľvek** predtým rozmýšľa o tom, či Boh existuje. (When) **26. Je** deväť hodín, päť minút. (Time and Date) **27.** Je to buď v auguste alebo v **apríli**. (Time and Date). **28.** Až kým **nemáte** právomoc od Boha, nemôžete učiť. (When) **29. Sú** dve, štyridsať. (Time and Date) **30. Je** trištvrte na osem. (Time and Date)

D.

1. Ako často chodíte na zhromaždenie? **2.** Čítal som pol hodinu. **3.** Budeme mať pohovor o pol siedmej večer v sobotu. **4.** Máte čas o desiatej doobeda (alebo dopoludnia) zajtra? **5.** Budeme hovoriť o tom, ako nás Boh požehnáva. **6.** Predtým, ako začneme, mohli by sme sa pomodliť? **7.** Sú dve hodiny. Kedy môžete prísť? **8.** Môžeme prísť o pol ôsmej? **9.** Bolo trištvrte na päť, keď prišla. **10.** Pred modlitbou sme sa spýtali... **11.** Máme stretnutie štvrtého júla. **12.** Potom, ako zomrieme, pôjdeme do duchovného sveta. **13.** Je pol šiestej teraz. **14.** Dal som sa pokrstiť pred šiestimi rokmi. **15.** Mohli by sme sa stretnúť dvadsiateho druhého tohto mesiaca? **16.** Rozmýšľajte nad tým, prečo máme chrámy. **17.** Boli sme s Bohom pred týmto životom. **18.** Keď svedčil, cítil som Ducha. **19.** Za/Počas odpadlíctva nie sú žiadni proroci. **20.** Modlím sa dvakrát za deň. **21.** Až kým sa nenaučíte princípy evanjelia... **22.** Predtým, ako sme prišli na zem...

E.

1. Šiesteho apríla tisíc osemsto tridsať **2.** Pätnastého mája tisíc osemsto dvadsať deväť **3.** Dvadsiateho druhého septembra tisíc osemsto dvadsať sedem **4.** Dvadsiateho tretieho decembra tisíc osemsto päť **5.** Na jar v roku tisíc osemsto dvadsať **6.** Dvadsiateho šiesteho marca tisíc osemsto tridsať **7.** Dvadsiateho siedmeho júna tisíc osemsto štyridsať štyri **8.** Dvadsiateho štvtého júla tisíc osemsto štyridsať sedem.

34 Quantity and Genitive

A.

1. bolo **2.** príde **3.** túžia **4.** verilo **5.** má **6.** premýšľajú **7.** verilo **8.** nebude

B.

1. ľudí **2.** volieb **3.** potrieb **4.** bratov **5.** hriechov **6.** otázok **7.** cirkví **8.** zázrakov **9.** požehnaní **10.** vecí

C.

1. mnohí z **2.** Mnohí **3.** Mnohí z **4.** mnoho **5.** Mnohí z **6.** mnoho **7.** Mnohí **8.** mnoho **9.** mnoho **10.** mnohí

D.

1. All quantity words are considered singular, neuter nouns - *Koľko nás je tam?* **2.** Numbers five and up are considered singular, neuter nouns - *Je nás päť.* **3.** The verb must match the singular neuter subject *(Veľa ľudí) - Veľa ľudí príde.* **4.** The preposition z must be included - *Mnohí z nás...* **5.** *Mnoho* should be used to match the genitive subject - *Mnoho Židov...* (Note: *Mnohí Židia...* would also be correct.) **6.** Roky must be in its genitive form *rokov - O mnoho rokov...* **7.** The verb must match the singular neuter subject *(päť záujemcov) - Päť záujemcov prišlo na zhromaždenie.* **8.** *Mnohí* should be used to match the plural normative subject *(duchovní) - Mnohí duchovní...* **9.** *Následky* should be in its genitive form *následkov - Úprimné pokánie prináša hneď niekoľko následkov.* **10.** *Súrodenci* should be in its genitive form *súrodencov - Mám šesť súrodencov.*

E.

1. Correct **2.** *misionári* should be in it's genitive form *misionárov - Veľa misionárov má...* **3.** Correct **4.** Correct **5.** *Ľudia* should be in its genitive form *ľudí - Koľko ľudí príde...* **6.** The preposition z must be included - *Mnohí z nich...* **7.** Correct **8.** Correct **9.** *misionári* should be in its genitive form *misionárov - Veľa misionárov slúži...* **10.** The verb must match the singular neuter subject *(Mnoho farizejov) - Mnoho farizejov chcelo...* **11.** Correct **12.** When a preposition precedes a quantity word, the noun will assume the case of that preposition - *V mnoho prípadoch...*

35 Declension of Numbers

A.

1. jedna **2.** dvoch **3.** jedného **4.** traja **5.** piatich **6.** štyroch **7.** jeden, dva **8.** dvanástich **9.** štyrom **10.** Jedno z **11.** jednu, dve **12.** dvetisíc *or* dvoma tisícimi **13.** sto, jednu, deväťdesiatdeväť **14.** jedným, deväťdesiatimi deviatimi

B.

1. Prvého **2.** šiestom **3.** tretím **4.** druhú **5.** siedmeho **6.** ôsmej , deviatej **7.** Prvé **8.** dvadsiateho štvrtého **9.** druhej, tretej **10.** druhej

C.

1. Vyučujte prvé štyri lekcie pred krstom. **2.** Poďme dvojkou dnes. **3.** Na začiatku vašej prvej návštevy buďte priateľský. **4.** Prečítajte jedno z prvých štyroch evanjelií. **5.** Tretieho dňa sa Jeho duch a Jeho telo navždy spojili. **6.** Druhou zásadou (alebo druhá zasada) evanjelia je pokánie. **7.** Bývajú na šesťdesiat trojke. **8.** Mohli by sme ísť buď osemnástkou alebo dvadsať štvorkou. **9.** Zajtra je desiateho októbra. **10.** Dnes rozdáme desať brožúr. **11.** Diskutujte o jednom z vašich nových záujemcov. **12.** Choďte sedmičkou smerom na námestie (do centra).

D.

1. Numbers one, two, three, and four all must conjugate to match the noun they modify - *Mám troch bratov.* **2.** An ordinal number must be used instead of a cardinal number when denoting position - *Duch Svätý je tretím členom Božstva.* **3.** A cardinal number must be used instead of an ordinal number when denoting quantity - *Chceli by sme rozdať päť kníh dnes.* **4.** Numbers one, two, three, and four all must conjugate to match the noun they modify - *Ja som tretí zo štyroch synov.* **5.** Numbers one, two, three, and four all must conjugate to match the noun they modify - *...uvidel dve bytosti.* **6.** Numbered items conjugate like nouns, not adjectives - *Vstúpili sme do trojky smerom na východ.* **7.** An ordinal number must be used instead of a cardinal number when denoting position - *Sme teraz na štvrtom stretnutí so záujemcom...* **8.** Numbers one, two, three, and four all must conjugate to match the noun they modify - *Je to jedno z najdôležitejších rozhodnutí...*

E.

1. Correct **2.** Correct **3.** Numbered items conjugate like nouns, not adjectives - *Bývame na druhom poschodí na jedenástke.* **4.** Numbers one, two, three, and four all must conjugate to match the noun they modify - *Jedna z jeho úloh je vyučovať a svedčiť o pravde.* **5.** Correct **6.** Both numbers must be conjugated to match the noun they modify (in this case *dňa*) - *Pôjdeme do Bratislavy dvadsiateho ôsmeho.* **7.** Correct **8.** Ordinal numbers must conjugate to match the nouns they modify - *Čítajme zo štvrtej knihy Mojžišovej*. **9.** Correct **10.** Correct **11.** Only numbers five and up can function as quantity words (words followed by a plural genitive cased noun) - *Včera sme učili štyri ženy.* **12.** Numbers 100, 200, . . . 900, 1000, 2000, etc. do not decline - *V sto druhom oddiele...* **13.** Correct **14.** Correct

F.

1. dve (bytosti) - fourth case feminine **2.** Jedna (bytosť) - first case feminine **3.** druhú - fourth case feminine

G.

(Repeats omitted) v. 15: jednému (a person) - third case masculine; päť (talentov) - fourth case masculine; druhému (a person) - third case masculine; dva (talenty) - fourth case masculine; jeden (talent) - fourth case masculine; **v. 16:** päť (talentov) - fourth case masculine; **v. 17:** s dvoma (talentami) - seventh case masculine; dva (talenty) - fourth case masculine; **v. 18:** jeden (talent) - fourth case masculine; **v. 20:** päť (talentov) - fourth case masculine; **v. 22:** dva (talenty) - fourth case masculine; **v. 24:** jeden (talent) - fourth case masculine; **v. 28:** desať talentov - fourth case masculine.

H.

Včera sme išli domov električkou (**sedmičkou**). Hovoril som s **dvomi** ľuďmi na ceste. **Prvý** človek, s ktorým som hovoril, sa volal Peter a mal osemnásť rokov. Druhý človek bol starší a bol zvedavý na to, prečo sme na Slovensku. Vysvetlil som, že sme zástupcovia žijúceho proroka na zemi dnes. Dozvedel som sa, že býva blízko nás a že má **dve** deti. Spolu sme prestúpili na **dvojku**. Kým sme sa rozprávali, všimol som si, že mal záujem o Knihu Mormonovu v mojej ruke. Potom, ako som vysvetlil, čo to je a ako sme ju dostali, dal som mu **jednu**. Mal veľa **otázok**, tak sme sa dohodli na ďalšom stretnutí. Spýtal som sa ho predtým, ako sme rozlúčili: "Koľko **kapitol** prečítate dnes večer?" Sľúbil, že prečíta prvé dve kapitoly ten večer. Veľmi sa teším, že s ním budem dnes hovoriť. Hovoril som **s mnohými ľuďmi** predtým, ale nikdy som nehovoril s nikým takým, ako bol on.

I.

Veľa ľudí **nevie** o tom, čo robil Ježiš Kristus. Mnoho z nich by tiež **povedalo**, že nevedia nič o Bohu, keby ste sa ich spýtali. Všetci sú deti Božie, naši bratia a sestry. Veľa z týchto **ľudí** hľadá zmysel života. Veľa sa **obáva** o svoje rodiny. Naše posolstvo o uzmierení môže pomáhať týmto ľuďom.

J.

1. Toto je naše **štvrté** stretnutie dnes. (Declension of Numbers) **2.** Koľko ľudí **prišlo** na zhromaždenie? (Quantity and Genitive) **3.** Ja som **osemdesiaty** štvrtý misionár na Slovensku. (Declension of Numbers) **4.** Pomáhame **jednému** staršiemu mužovi. (Declension of Numbers) **5.** Vďaka veľa **ľuďom** . . . (Quantity and Genitive) **6.** Kážte **prvé** zásady evanjelia. (Declension of Numbers) **7.** Bývame na **jedenástke**. (Declension of Numbers) **8.** Pôjdeme tam s **koľkými** ľuďmi? (Quantity and Genitive) **9.** V **dvoch** alebo v **troch** vetách... (Declension of Numbers) **10. Tretieho** dňa sa jeho duch a jeho telo navždy spojili. (Declension of Numbers) **11.** Posolstvo **prvého** predsedníctva . . . (Declension of Numbers) **12.** Obvykle chodíme **dvadsať** trojkou domov. (Declension of Numbers) **13.** Pred **dvomi** dňami . . . (Declension of Numbers) **14.** Máme pár **týždňov**, aby sme sa pripravili. (Quantity and Genitive) **15. Druhou** zásadou evanjelia je pokánie. (Declension of Numbers) **16.** Jeden z **troch** svedkov hovoril . . . (Declension of Numbers) **17.** Máte niekoľko **minút**? (Quantity and Genitive) **18.** Ste na **ôsmom** stretnutí so záujemcom . . . (Declension of Numbers) **19.** Rozprávali sme sa s **piatimi** ľuďmi na ulici. (Declension of Numbers) **20.** S **niekoľkými** ľuďmi musíme byť opatrní. (Quantity and Genitive) **21. Mnohí** chcú vedieť, prečo sme tu. (Quantity and Genitive) **22.** Veľa ľudí sa nás **spýtalo**... (Quantity and Genitive).

K.

1. Mnoho je povolaných, ale málo vyvolených. **2.** Pomáhame veľa ľuďom. **3.** Poznám zopár dobrých písiem. **4.** Piateho tohto mesiaca pôjdeme domov. **5.** Vybral šiestich z dvanástich misionárov. **6.** Bolo mnoho svedkov, ale len traja svedkovia videli anjela. **7.** Toto posolstvo je o veľa ľuďoch. **8.** Idete trojkou alebo osmičkou? **9.** Sme blízko troch budov (stavieb). **10.** Môžeme nájsť odpoveď na mnohé z týchto otázok.

36 Genitive Case (2nd Case)

A.

1. Restoration, gospel, Jesus Christ **2.** light **3.** beginning (From = *od* + *2nd case*), world, love, concern **4.** God, Father, Jesus Christ **5.** revelation (Without = *Bez* + *2nd case*), prophet (through = *prostredníctvom* + *2nd case*), spiritual darkness (into = *do* + *2nd case*) **6.** apostasy (During = *Počas* + *2nd case*), Christ **7.** redemption, their sins, gift (enjoy something = *tešiť sa z* + *2nd case*), Holy Ghost. **8.** this last dispensation.

B.

1. rodiny **2.** Ducha Svätého **3.** našej viery **4.** nášho srdca **5.** tohto (or tohoto) posolstva **6.** slova Božieho **7.** prekladov Biblie **8.** týchto spoločností **9.** Božích prikázaní **10.** slobodnej vôle **11.** apoštolov, zeme, kňazstva **12.** Svätého Mesiáša **13.** potrieb záujemcu, toho **14.** Ducha Svätého, obrátenia **15.** nás, nesmrteľnosti, večného života **16.** prorokov, apoštolov **17.** modlitby, viery **18.** osobných, rozhodnutí **19.** misií **20.** písiem

C.

1. Zúčastníte sa zhromaždenia (Večere Pánovej) s nami túto nedeľu? **2.** Pokánie nás pripravuje na obrady krstu a konfirmácie. **3.** Mali by sme sa jej spýtať, čoho sa bojí. **4.** Žiadny človek nemôže vojsť do kráľovstva Božieho bez krstu. **5.** Môžete sa tešiť z prítomnosti Ducha Svätého. **6.** Ježiš nás nezbavil našej osobnej zodpovednosti. **7.** Kniha Mormonova je zdroj veľkej sily. **8.** Premýšľajte o (jej) posolstve týkajúcom sa Ježiša Krista. **9.** Teraz sa naša rodina teší z pokoja a šťastia. **10.** Jedno z najväčších tajomstiev misionárskej práce je práca!

D.

Remember that nouns, adjectives, and pronouns (personal, possessive, or demonstrative) are put into second case if they:

a. are used when expressing “of”
b. follow genitive prepositions or genitive verbs

1. Nouns following *Zúčastniť sa* must be in second case - *Zúčastníme sa Božieho plánu...* **2.** Nouns following the second case preposition *Bez* must be put in second case - *Bez zjavenia a kňazskej právomoci.* **3.** Nouns following the second case verb *týkajúce sa* must be put in second case - *Pravdy týkajúce sa zásad a obradov.* **4.** Nouns following the second case verb *zbaviť sa* must be put in second case - *zbaviť sa hanby a pocitov viny.* **5.** When expressing “of,” adjectives must be put in second case - *Moc Ducha Svätého...* **6.** Nouns following the second case preposition *z* must be put in second case - *Boh sa teší z cudnosti.* **7.** When expressing “of,” adjectives and possessive pronouns must be put in second case - *Plán nášho Nebeského Otca.* **8.** Demonstrative pronouns following the second case verb *vzdať sa* must be put in second case - *Slovo múdrosti hovorí, že sa máme vzdať týchto látok.*

E.

1. Adjectives following the second case preposition *z* must be in their genitive forms - *Jedným z najdôležitejších prejavov...* **2.** The genitive form of God is *Boha*, not *Bohu* - *...vzďaľujú sa od Boha.* **3.** Correct **4.** The genitive form of *zem* is *zeme*, not *zemi* - *... boli zo zeme odňaté...* **5.** Correct **6.** Possessive pronouns following the the second case preposition *podľa* must be in their genitive forms - *... podľa našich skutkov a našich túžob.* **7.** Nouns following the second case verb *báť sa* must be in their genitive forms - *Ona sa bojí možnosti...* **8.** Correct **9.** Demonstrative pronouns following the second case preposition *z* must be in their genitive forms - *Čo ste sa naučili z tohoto príkladu.* **10.** Correct **11.** Personal pronouns following the second case verb *spýtať s*a must be in their genitive forms - *Spýtame sa jej...* **12.** Correct

F.

1. mäsa, kostí, úprimnej, modlitby, našich, rozhodnutí, našej, poslušnosti, prikázaní, poslušnosti, neho, plánu, nášho, Otca, Ježiša, Krista, uzmierenia, bremena, našich, hriechov.

37 Dative Case (Third Case)

A.

1. others, Lord **2.** attitude, your words **3.** you, you **4.** fall, our own weakness (Because = *Kvôli* + *3rd Case*) **5.** us, us, alcohol **6.** thy neighbour (Against = *Proti* + *3rd Case*) **7.** God, His Son

B.

1. vám **2.** Nemu **3.** Bohu, tejto moci **4.** im, tejto otázke **5.** tomuto, plánu **6.** tomu, nám **7.** ti, nám **8.** zjaveniu **9.** autorite **10.** tomuto nesebeckému činu **11.** ľuďom, tomu **12.** vám, väčšiemu svetlu, poznaniu, pokoju **13.** iným ľuďom **14.** tejto osobe **15.** svojim nasledovníkom, celému svetu **16.** úprimnému záujemcovi **17.** šťastnému životu **18.** mi, vám **19.** týmto ľuďom, posvätnej podstate **20.** náboženským názorom, tradíciám **21.** dispozícii **22.** pasážam **23.** odpovedi **24.** problémom, ťažkostiam **25.** miestnym podmienkam **26.** mladým ľuďom, týmto obrovským pokušeniam

C.

1. Budete vyjadrovať lásku k Pánovi, vašej rodine, ostatným misionárom a ľuďom, ktorým slúžite. **2.** Duch Svätý pomáha ľuďom porozumieť dôležitým pravdám evanjelia a pomáha im vyhnúť sa pokušeniam. **3.** Vďaka znovuzriadeniu rozumieme Božiemu plánu pre rodiny. **4.** Svetlo Kristovo dáva život a svetlo všetkým veciam. **5.** Ďakujeme mu za svoje požehnania a žiadame ho o to, aby nám pomohol poznať, či je posolstvo Knihy Mormonovej pravdivé. **6.** Pomôžte vašim záujemcom rozumieť Knihe Mormonovej a tomu, čo v nej čítajú. **7.** Bol bez hriechu a svojmu Otcovi bol úplne poslušný. Aj keď bol pokúšaný, nikdy sa pokušeniu nepoddal. **8.** Viera v Krista vedie k činu. Vedie k úprimnému a trvalému pokániu. **9.** Keď ste trpezlivý, odoláte tlaku a ste schopný čeliť nepriazni pokojne a optimisticky. **10.** Veríte v Bibliu? Tí, ktorí veria Božiemu slovu, sú požehnaní.

D.

Remember that nouns, adjectives, and pronouns (personal, possessive or demonstrative) are put into third case if they:

a. are used when expressing "to/towards" whom or "for" whom the action is being performed
b. follow a dative prepositions or dative verbs

1. In Slovak we say "it is cold to you" instead of "you are cold." - *Je mi ľúto, že je vám tak zima.* **2.** Nouns following the third case verb *pomáhať* must be in third case. - *Evanjelium pomáha manželom a manželkám.* **3.** The pronoun *nás* must be in third case as the blessings are being promised to us - *Boh nám sľubuje určité požehnania.* **4.** Adam should be in third case. (As written, the sentence says: God revealed Adam to the gospel) - *Boh zjavil evanjelium Adamovi a dal mu kňazstvo.* **5.** *Ktorý* should be in third case as the priesthood is given to prophets - *Boh povoláva prorokov, ktorým udeľuje kňazstvo.* **6.** In Slovak we say "our sins are forgiven to us" instead of "we are forgiven of our sins." - *Kristus nám sľubuje, že nám odpustí naše hriechy, ak...* **7.** The possessive pronouns *váš* following the third case preposition *k* must be in third case - *Vracajte sa späť k vášmu študijnému denníku často.* **8.** Joseph must be in third case, as it was told to Joseph - *Ježiš povedal Josephovi, aby sa nepripojil ku žiadnej z cirkví.*

E.

1. *Životné výzvy should be in* third case as *Čeliť* is a third case verb - *Dáva nám silu čeliť životným výzvam.* **2.** Correct (In Slovak, it is correct to "teach someone to something.") **3.** Correct **4.** *Konfirmácia* declines like *misia* - *Výzva ku krstu a konfirmácii má byť konkrétna.* **5.** The demonstrative pronoun *tieto* must be put in third case - *Aby sme zabránili týmto zdravotným problémom...* **6.** Correct **7.** Correct **8.** Correct **9.** In Slovak we say "our sins are forgiven to us" instead of "we are forgiven of our sins." - *Môžu nám byť odpustené hriechy uzmierením Ježiša Krista.* **10.** The pronoun *ich* should be in third case. - *Slúžte ostatným a pomôžte im získať evanjelium.* **11.** Correct **12.** *Zle* in this sentence structure is a noun (root form *zlo*), and should decline into third case as *proti* is a third case preposition - *Pán nám sľubuje požehnanie, silu a ochranu proti zlu.*

F.

1. ostatným, viere, pokániu, ľuďom, pravdivej náuke, vám, tomu všetkému, dodržiavaniu, znovuzriadeniu, Duchu, Božej vôli, ľuďom, tomu, tomu

38 Accusative Case (Fourth Case)

A.

1. me, scriptures; Učím sa to, čo je pre mňa dôležité, keď študujem písma. **2.** Christlike attributes; Potrebujeme rozvíjať vlastnosti podobné Kristovým. **3.** the truth, Holy Ghost; Môžeme nájsť pravdu skrze Ducha Svätého. **4.** my testimony; Čítanie z Knihy Mormonovej posilňuje moje svedectvo. **5.** living prophets and apostles; Dnes máme žijúcich prorokov a apoštolov. **6.** two young children; Ona má dve mladé deti. **7.** new assignment, Elder Carrier; Máme novú úlohu pre Staršieho Carriera. **8.** price, our sins; Ježiš Kristus zaplatil cenu za naše hriechy. **9.** Dušan, challenge; Potrebujeme pripraviť Dušana na výzvu ku krstu. **10.** your prayers; Viem, že Pán odpovie na vaše modlitby.

B.

1. stretnutie, stretnutia **2.** kráľostvo, kráľostvá **3.** zvyk, zvyky **4.** výzvu, výzvy **5.** svedectvo, svedectvá **6.** zhromaždenie, zhromaždenia **7.** cirkev, cirkvi **8.** zásadu, zásady **9.** misionára, misionárov **10.** člena, členov **11.** myšlienku, myšlienky **12.** sľub, sľuby **13.** záujemcu, záujemcov **14.** knihu, knihy **15.** odporúčanie, odporúčania 16. ulicu, ulice **17.** proroka, prorokov **18.** písmo, písma **19.** pochybnosť, pochybnosti **20.** týždeň, týždne **21.** záväzok, záväzky **22.** obavu, obavy **23.** túžbu, túžby **24.** útechu, útechy **25.** ruku, ruky **26.** zákon, zákony **27.** pravidlo, pravidlá **28.** skúšku, skúšky **29.** voľbu, voľby **30.** ťažkosť, ťažkosti **31.** obeť, obeti **32.** pocit, pocity **33.** vieru, viery **34.** pobočku, pobočky **35.** zbor, zbory **36.** náuku, náuky **37.** zázrak, zázraky **38.** chybu, chyby **39.** svetlo, svetlá **40.** Boha, Bohov

C.

1. nás, prorokov **2.** neho, naše, hriechy **3.** ňu, pomoc, útechu **4.** všetkých, slobodnú, vôľu **5.** každého **6.** ich, písma **7.** ma, misionára, toto, povolanie **8.** vás

D.

našu pomoc, duchovné deti, začiatku, duchovné posilnenie, našu pomoc, cestu, ktorú, ich, všetko, spoločenstvo, to, potvrdenie, potrebu, radu, našu lásku, lásku, pokarhanie, odmietnutie, čo, dary, plány, naše sľuby, druhých, požehnania, stabilitu, vytrvalú vieru, ktorú, uistenie, slová, radosť, oné slová

E.

Remember that nouns, adjectives, and pronouns (personal, possessive or demonstrative) are put into fourth case if they:

a. denote the direct object in a sentence (the noun being "verbed.")
b. follow an accusative preposition
c. are used in an fourth case expression including those of motion

1. The dative third case, not the accuasitve fourth case, is used to denote the indirect object (in this case "you") - *Ja som vám poslal list.* **2.** *Ktorý* should be in fourth case as it replaces a noun that was being verbed in the second clause - *Ten záujemca, ktorého sme učili včera.* **3.** *prorok* should be in fourth case - *... ako proroka.* **4.** *niekto* is the direct object of the sentence and therefore should be in fourth case - *Hľadám niekoho...* **5.** *celý Kniha Mormonova* should all be in fourth case as it is the direct object of the sentence - *Sestra Vaňková prečítala celú Knihu Mormonovu.* **6.** *lekciou* should be in fourth case as it is the direct object - *Učili sme lekciu...* **7.** *prorokach* should be in fourth case as it is the direct object; *náš* is a possessive pronoun, *nás* should be used instead - *Boh posiela prorokov, pretože nás miluje.* **8.** *milého manželka* should be in fourth case as it is the direct object. Also, the adjective must match the noun in gender - *Stretli sme jeho milú manželku.*

F.

1. Correct **2.** *svoje života* must be in forth case - *svoj život* **3.** Correct **4.** *príhovor* cases like *život* - *Môžeme počúvať príhovor...* **5.** Correct **6.** *Marek* cases like *syn* - *robiť pre Mareka/Marka* **7.** Correct **8.** Correct **9.** Correct **10.** *plnosť* declines like *radosť* - *Kniha Mormonova obsahuje plnosť evanjelia.* **11.** *váš*, the possessive pronoun, must be replaced by the personal pronoun *vás* - *...za vás.* **12.** Correct **13.** *Boh* cases irregularly (like *syn* in fourth case) - *Chcete spoznať Boha?* **14.** *situácia* cases like ulica - *Môžete pripraviť rozličné situácie...*

G.

1. ľudí, radosť, samých seba, slobodnú vôľu, vaše posolstvo, vaše posolstvo, duchovné svedectvo, ich, spásu, vašu vieru, svoje očakávania, veľké problémy, Ducha, ľudí, ich spásu, Ducha, čo, čo, vlastnosti, učenie, pokrok, ľudí, ich, záväzky, vaše posolstvo, všetky sklamania, radosť, Ducha pracujúceho

39 Locative and Instrumental Cases (Sixth and Seventh Cases)

A.

1. základ; základe, základoch; základom, základmi **2.** pasáž; pasáži, pasážach, pasážou, pasážami **3.** misionár; misionárovi, misionároch; misionárom, misionármi **4.** svetlo; svetle, svetlách; svetlom, svetlami. **5.** chrám; chráme, chrámoch; chrámom, chrámami. **6.** stroj; stroji, strojoch; strojom, strojmi **7.** nádej; nádeji, nádejách; nádejou, nádejami **8.** milosť; milosti, milostiach; milosťou, milosťami **9.** biskup; biskupovi, biskupoch; biskupom, biskupmi **10.** posolstvo; posolstve, posolstvách; posolstvom, posolstvami **11.** spôsob; spôsobe, spôsoboch; spôsobom, spôsobmi **12.** informácia; informácii, informáciách; informáciou, informáciami **13.** nabádanie; nabádaní, nabádaniach; nabádaním, nabádaniami **14.** kniha; knihe, knihách; knihou, knihami **15.** koniec; konci, koncoch; koncom, koncami **16.** príležitosť; príležitosti, príležitostiach; príležitosťou, príležitosťami

B.

1. misiou, službou **2.** vzkriesení, nesmrteľným **3.** Pánovej práci **4.** svojimi, rodinami **5.** správnom, vzťahu (exception), Bohom, Otcom **6.** srdciach, mysliach **7.** našimi prvými rodičmi, zemi **8.** Svojím uzmierením **9.** vedením **10.** autom, električkou **11.** vzťahoch, jednotlivými vlastnosťami, tomto, verši **12.** večnosti, tomto živote, bolesťami **13.** dňom **14.** tejto kapitole **15.** mieste, dobrým cvičením **16.** prácou, štúdiom, oddychom, zábavou **17.** patriarchálnom požehnaní **18.** našich pocitoch, Cirkvi

C.

1. V písmach sa Boží plán nazýva plánom šťastia. **2.** Keď sa riadia prikázaniami, ukazujú svoju lásku k Bohu. **3.** Pád bol súčasťou Božieho plánu. **4.** Spasiteľ dal pred svojou smrťou a vzkriesením svojim apoštolom právomoc. **5.** Musíme byť pokrstení vodou a Duchom. **6.** Dar Ducha Svätého je jedným z najvzácnejších darov Boha v tomto živote. **7.** Môžeme vytrvať do konca neustálym používaním viery, činením pokánia, a nasledovaním Ducha. **8.** Biskupi sú sudcami v Cirkvi. **9.** Týmto záznamom je Kniha Mormonova: ďalšie svedectvo o Ježišovi Kristovi. **10.** Sú Božími deťmi, našimi bratmi a sestrami, a potrebujú to, čo máme my.

D.

Remember that nouns, adjectives, and pronouns (personal, possessive or demonstrative) are put into sixth case if they follow a locative preposition, and are put into seventh case if they:

a. are used when expressing "through," "by," or "by the means of"
b. follow instrumental prepositions or instrumental verbs
c. are used for emphasis

1. *Posteľ* and *počítač* both end in soft consonants and case like *odpoveď* and *pokoj* respectively. - *Čítal Knihu Mormonovu na posteli pri počítači.* **2.** *Evanjelium* is an exception to normal casing patterns and

declines to *evanjeliu* in sixth case - *... o evanjeliu Ježiša Krista*. **3.** Although *tomto zážitku* are both conjugated correctly into sixth case (*zážitok* is an exception to normal casing patterns), when using the phrase *podeliť sa o niečo*, the noun should be declined into the accusative fourth case - *Dovoľte mi, aby som sa s vami podelil o tento zážitok*. **4.** *Verš* ends in a soft consonant and declines like *pokoj - V tomto verši...* **5.** *Taký* should be in seventh case as it follows the instrumental verb *stať sa - ...sa môžeme stať takými, ako je On.* **6.** *Pasáž* ends in a soft consonant and follows *odpoveď - V tejto pasáži...* **7.** Although *Ježišovi Kristovi* is conjugated correctly into sixth case, when using the phrase *mať vieru v niečo,* the noun should be declined into the accusative fourth case - *...už má vieru v Ježiša Krista.* **8.** As *ako* cannot decline, the word *tom* must be added to the sentence to match the sixth case preposition *o -...či vie o tom, ako cirkev...*

E.

1. *Dve* and *tri* should both be declined into their locative (6th case) plural forms - *Môžete svedčiť o posolstve o znovuzriadení v dvoch alebo v troch vetách.* **2.** Correct **3.** Correct **4.** *Obrátenie* cases like *prikázanie - Aké je spojenie medzi záväzkami a obrátením?* **5.** As the way was set "by" the Church, *cirkev* should be in 7th case. - *Spôsob pohovoru pred krstom je spôsobom stanoveným Cirkvou.* **6.** The second *evanjelium* should be in 7th case as *riadiť sa* is an instrumental verb. - *V duchovnom svete je evanjelium kázané tým, ktorí sa neriadili evanjeliom.* **7.** Correct **8.** Correct **9.** *Diskusia* follows *ulica*. - *Skončili sme lekciu po malej diskusii o modlitbe.* **10.** Correct

F.

v ktorejsi synagóge, duchom, v týchto dňoch

40 Noun Declension

A.

1. socializmu **2.** Bohu **3.** krstu **4.** dievčatám **5.** dievčat/ dievčeniec **6.** pokroku **7.** vzoru **8.** centre **9.** dôvodu **10.** moci **11.** kniežaťu **12.** zvieratá **13.** Kristovi **14.** dieťaťom **15.** výsledku **16.** hnevu **17.** dieťati **18.** príkazu **19.** vzťahu **20.** dielu

B.

	Evanjelium (*gospel*)		**Príklad** (*example*)		**Boh** (*God*)		**Dieťa** (*child*)	
1	evanjelium	evanjeliá	príklad	príklady	Boh	Bohovia	dieťa	deti
2	evanjelia	evanjelií	príkladu	príkladov	Boha	Bohov	dieťaťa	detí
3	evanjeliu	evanjeliám	príkladu	príkladom	Bohu	Bohom	dieťaťu	deťom
4	evanjelium	evanjeliá	príklad	príklady	Boha	Bohov	dieťa	deti
6	evanjeliu	evanjeliách	príklade	príkladoch	Bohu	Bohoch	dieťati	deťoch
7	evanjeliom	evanjeliami	príkladom	príkladmi	Bohom	Bohmi	dieťaťom	deťmi

C.

1. Zmierna obeť Ježiša Krista nám umožnila prekonať následky pádu. **2.** Pomáhajte im napredovať v evanjeliu. **3.** Je dobré, že sa chcete oslobodiť od pocitu viny, ktorý máte. **4.** Príde na svet, aby spasil všetkých ľudí. **5.** Požehnaní sú chudobní v duchu. **6.** Volajte k nemu proti moci svojich nepriateľov. **7.** Z tohoto dôvodu vyhľadávajú členovia Cirkvi informácie o svojich predkoch. **8.** Majú tri dievčatá a dvoch chlapcov v ich rodine. **9.** Sme pri múzeu v centre. **10.** Prečítal časti Knihy Mormonovej o Duchu Svätom a o jeho vplyve.

D.

1. *Dôvod* adds *-u* in second case - *Z tohoto dôvodu...* **2.** *Evanjelium* loses its *-um* ending and adds an *-a* in second case - *Posolstvo o znovuzriadení evanjelia...* **3.** *Krst* adds *-u* in second case - *...hodní krstu...* **4.** *Duch* becomes *Duchu* in third case - *porozumieť Duchu.* **5.** *Základ* and *plán* both add *-u* in second case - *...stredom základu plánu spásy.* **6.** *Dieťa* becomes *dieťaťa* in second case. **7.** *Kommunizmus* loses its *-um* ending and adds an *-u* in second case - *...aj počas kommunizmu.* **8.** *Pomoc* declines like *radosť* - *...pri pomoci...*

E.

"Iba prostredníctvom Spasiteľovej milosti a milosrdenstva sa môžeme očistiť od **hriechu**, aby sme mohli znova žiť v prítomnosti Boha. Aby sme sa mohli vrátiť k **Bohu**, potrebujeme obrady **evanjelia**, vrátane **krstu** a **konfirmacie**. Prostredníctvom **obradu krstu** uzatvárame zmluvu s Bohom. Táto zmluva je dôležitý krok **plánu spásy**. Ako misionári potrebujeme pomáhať každému **človeku**, aby sa pripravil na tento krok."

Review: Cases

A.

Dnes vás budeme učiť o **evanjeliu** Ježiša Krista. Evanjelium je stredobodom Božieho **plánu** a začína vierou v Krista. Veríme v **neho**, dôverujeme mu a spoliehame sa na **neho**. Táto viera nás vedie k **pokániu**. Budeme chcieť zmeniť veci v našich **životoch**, ktoré nie sú v **súlade** s Božou vôľou. Naša viera v neho tiež spôsobí, že si prajeme prejaviť **svoju lásku** k nemu dodržiavaním jeho **prikázaní**, vrátane **krstu**. Krstom sľubujeme dodržiavať jeho prikázania po zbytok našich životov. Boh nám sľubuje, že po krste od neho obdržíme **dar** Ducha Svätého.

B.

Veľa ľudí sa pýta: "Čo sa stane po **smrti**?" Súčasťou Božieho milosrdného plánu je, že všetci prejdeme **fyzickou smrťou**. Náš duch sa oddelí od nášho tela a určitý čas budeme žiť v **duchovnom svete**. Potom budeme vzkriesení s **nesmrteľným** telom, ktoré bude spojením nášho tela a ducha. Budeme súdení podľa našich **skutkov** a túžob. Tí, ktorí žili podľa evanjelia, obdržia najväčší dar nášho Nebeského **Otca**, dar večného života v jeho prítomnosti. Pri mojom vlastnom **štúdiu** som prišiel k tomu, že tento plán je pravdivý. Nerozumiem **všetkému**, ale chcem pomáhať každému **človeku**, aby sa dozvedel o týchto dôležitých **pravdách** a o Bohu.

C.

1. Môžeme slúžiť **Marekovi** dnes? (Dative (3rd case)) **2.** Čo je najdôležitejšie vo vašom **živote**? (Locative (6th case)) **3.** Budeme lepšie pripravení na život s **Nebeským Otcom.** (Instrumental (7th case)) **4.** Kvôli tomuto **rozhodnutiu** boli vyhnaní. (Dative (3rd case)) **5.** Boh vytvoril **rodinu**, aby bola zdrojom šťastia. (Accusative (4th case)) **6.** Vyučujte jeden z týchto **oddielov**. (Genitive (2nd case)) **7.** Čo ste sa naučili z tohoto **príkladu** o vašej vlastnej práci? (Genitive (2nd case)) **8.** Venujeme sa **ďalším rodinným činnostiam**. (Dative (3rd case)) **9.** Čo viete o tomto **posolstve**? (Locative (6th case)) **10.** Keď ľudia začnú veriť **písmam**... (Dative (3rd case)) **11.** Podelíme sa s obyvateľmi **zeme**. (Genitive (2nd case)) **12.** Môžeme obdržať večný **život**. (Accusative (4th case)) **13.** Ammón stál pred **lamanitským kráľom.** (Instrumental (7th case)) **14.** Podajte Pánovi správu o **vašich činnostiach** v ten deň. (Locative (6th case)) **15.** S **modlitbou** stanovte ciele. (Instrumental (7th case)) **16.** Boh sa zjavil **prorokom** v každej dispenzácii. (Dative (3rd case)) **17.** Povedzte im, čo budete na **týchto návštevách** robiť. (Locative (6th case)) **18.** Skrze viery, pokánia, krstu, a **daru** Ducha Svätého... (Genitive (2nd case)) **19.** Naše skutky sú vo veľkej **miere** deťmi našich modlitieb. (Locative (6th case)) **20.** Podelenie sa so **skúsenosťami** a **svedectvami**. (Instrumental (7th case)) **21.** Môže nás naplniť radosťou, **pokojom** a útechou. (Instrumental (7th case)) **22.** Aký je problém väčšiny našich **modlitieb**? (Genitive (2nd case)) **23.** Ktorá

zo všetkých **cirkví** je tá pravá? (Genitive (2nd case)) **24.** Varujete ľudí pred následkami **hriechu**. (Genitive (2nd case)) **25.** Dajte prednosť **pasážam** z Knihy Mormonove. (Dative (3rd case)) **26.** Študujte odporučené **písma**. (Accusative (4th case)) **27.** Pripravte záujemcov na splnenie **podmienok** pre krst. (Genitive (2nd case)) **28.** Riaďte sa prikázaniami a misionárskymi **pravidlami**. (Instrumental (7th case)) **29.** Vyčleňte si čas na **vysvetlenie**. (Accusative (4th case)) 30. Máte hlad po **poznaní** slov večného života? (Locative (6th case)) **31.** Na pomoc pri tejto **práci**... (Locative (6th case)) **32.** Ježiš nám ponúka odpustenie **hriechov**. (Genitive (2nd case)) **33.** Pred dvoma **tisícmi** rokov... (Instrumental (7th case)) **34.** Potrebujú **úľavu** od pocitov viny. (Accusative (4th case)) **35.** Toto je plán **štastia**, plán spásy, alebo plán Boha. (Genitive (2nd case)) **36.** Pod **vedením** Otca stvoril Ježiš Kristus zem. (Instrumental (7th case)) **37.** Mohli by sme pomôcť **tej žene**. (Dative (3rd case)) **38.** Každý človek na zemi je Božím **dieťaťom**. (Instrumental (7th case)) **39.** Pocity lásky, ktoré máme ohľadom našich **rodín** sú večné. (Genitive (2nd case)) **40.** Podelíme sa o **posolstvo**... (Accusative (4th case))

D.

1. ľuďom, hriechov **2.** základe, potrieb, záujemcu **3.** odpovede **4.** dôkazom, lásky **5.** milosrdenstva, milosti **6.** harmónii, vašou, znalosťou **7.** vyššiu, úroveň, myslenia, činnosti **8.** tieto, činnosti, celej, vašej, misie **9.** porozumenie **10.** synmi, dcérami **11.** tým, najlepším, miestom **12.** Krista, pokání **13.** nevšednému, prísľubu **14.** zákonov, krajiny **15.** ľudí, silou, právomocou **16.** týchto, zákonoch **17.** ostatných, náboženstiev **18.** sile **19.** zásadách, evanjelia **20.** následky, pádu **21.** týchto, dôležitých, právd **22.** písiem **23.** spôsobmi, vieru **24.** písmach, hviezd **25.** božského, povolania **26.** skúsenosťami, svedectvami **27.** znovuzriadení **28.** ľuďom, pokániu **29.** tejto, pasáži **30.** záujemcami **31.** týmto, slovám, vášho, srdca **32.** materiály, prácu, rodinnej, histórii **33.** prvým, prorokom, zemi **34.** pasáže, písiem **35.** zjavení, kňazskej, právomoci **36.** záujem, večnosť **37.** ďalšie, generácie **38.** lásku, Pánovi **39.** znovuzriadeného, kňazstva **40.** proroka **41.** našej, smrteľnosti, veci **42.** našich, srdciach **43.** svoje, rozhodnutia, písmami **44.** našom, vzťahu **45.** tomto, verši **46.** chrámu **47.** verš, Knihe, Mormonovej **48.** vašich, najušľachtilejších, túžob **49.** týchto, dosiek **50.** svojmu, svätému, dielu

E.

1. Musíme sa o evanjelium podeliť s ostatnými. **2.** Jeden z mojích obľúbených veršov je v Knihe Mormonovej. **3.** Veríte v Bibliu? **4.** Kvôli pádu Adama a Evy... **5.** S týmito dôležitými pravdami sa môžeme vrátiť k Bohu. **6.** Chcem pomáhať každému človeku. **7.** Boh nám dal telá z mäsa a kostí. **8.** V duchovnom svete sa budeme učiť viac o evanjeliu. **9.** Môžeme sa na Ježiša Krista spoliehať. **10.** On nám ukáže cestu k Nebeskému Otcovi. **11.** Som vďačný za moju rodinu a za ich pomoc. **12.** Žijeme naše životy v súlade s Božími prikázaniami. **13.** Budete sa učiť vierou a štúdiom písiem. **14.** Bola v nemocnici dva dni. **15.** Boh nás odmeňuje podľa našich skutkov a našich túžob. **16.** Kristus sľúbil svojim nasledovníkom dar Ducha Svätého. **17.** Stávam sa efektívnym misionárom. **18.** Zúčastníte sa zhromaždenia s nami túto neďeľu? **19.** Máme sa vyhýbať škodlivým látkam. **20.** Nebojte sa moci diabla.

Index

Slovak Words

Slovak Words 39, 43, 52, 97
- Aby 106
- Aký 24
- By 6, 133
- Byť 17, 20
  - and Accusative Case 187
- Či 138
- Kedy, keď, až 155
- -koľvek/hoci- 156
- Ktorý 39
  - When not to use 52
- Ľudia 197
- Mnoho/Mnohí 164
- Pre, Za, and Na 114
- Rád 126
- Sa/Si 6, 97
- Svoj 44
- Tešiť sa 127
- Vedieť vs. Poznať 76
- Všetko 56

A

Accusative Case (Fourth Case) 56
- of Všetci 56

Active Voice 117

Adjectives 38, 43, 52, 88, 117
- Adjective-Noun Agreement 38
- Declension Chart 207
- Declension of 38
- from verbs 88, 89, 117
- Hard 38
- Ktorý as an adjective 52
- Soft 38
- Soft Adjectives 64

Adverbs 59, 89
- Formation Of 59
- From verbs 89
- Negative Adverbs 20
- that change with motion 60

agreement
- of adjectives 181, 182

Agreement 48

Anything/Anyone 156

Assimilation of Voice 3

C

Cases 39, 44, 110, 175
- and Verbs 76
- Prepositions 110
- Pronouns 14
- Pronouns in Cases 11
- Question Words 24
- Summary 196

Commands 130

Comparative 64

Conditional 133
- If-Then 137
- Past Tense Conditional 137

Conjugation 75

Conjunctions 5

Consonant Clusters 131
- and Command Form 131
- Pronunciation of 3

Could 134

D

Dative Case (Third Case) 181

Days of the Week 149

Declension 48, 196
- Charts 207, 209
- Uncommon Declensions 196

Declination
- and Gender 32
- Question Words 24

Declinations 181

Demonstrative Pronouns 39
- Declension of 48

Dipthongs 2

Direct Object 186

Double-negative 21

E

Every Time 160

Expressing preference 127

Expressions 115, 187

F

Feminine Nouns. *See* Nouns
- Declension Charts 209

Formal Speech 11

For (Pre, Za, and Na) 114

Future Tense 17, 84, 85, 92
- with verbs of motion 92

G

Gender 32, 43
- and Pluralization 35
- Exceptions 33
- Identifying 32

Genitive Case (Second Case) 44, 164, 176
- and Quantity Words 164
- Forming Genitive Plural 165

H

Hard Consonants 2, 32, 37

How Often 159

I

If-Then 137

Imperatives 130
Imperfective 84, 92
and verbs of motion 93
Indirect Object 181
Informal Speech 11
Instrumental Case (Seventh Case) 191, 192
for Emphasis 193
Intonation
in questions 23

K

Ktorý 52

L

Locative Case (Sixth Case) 191
Prepositions 191

M

Masculine Nouns. *See* Nouns
Declension Charts 209
Military Time 148
Months of the Year 149

N

nada 21
nadie 21
Negation 17, 20
Neuter Nouns 32, 164. *See* Nouns
and Genitive Plural 165
and Quantity Words 164
Declension Charts 209
no 20
Nominative Case (First Case) 35
Nouns 88
and Pluralization 35
Declension Chart 207
Feminine Nouns 35
from verbs 88
Masculine
Animate vs. Inanimate 35
Neuter Nouns 35
Numbers 168
as Quantity Words 169
Cardinal Numbers 168
Declension Charts 211
Declension of 168
Ordinal Numbers 169
nunca 21

O

Of. *See* Genitive Case (Second Case)

P

Passive Voice 117
Past Tense 105, 137
Conditional 137
Perfective 84, 92
vs. determinate 92
Pluralization 35. *See* number (nouns)
Possessive Endings 44
Possessive Pronouns 39
Prefixes 92
Prepositions 53, 93, 110, 187
and Dative Case 182
and Fourth Case 187
and Genitive Case 177
and Instrumental Case 192
and Ktorý 53
and Locative Case 191
and Quantity Words 164
and Time 146
At the end of sentences 53
English to Slovak 214
Index of Prepositions 110
Long form vs. Sort form 97
of Motion 93
with Motion 187
Present Tense 17
Pronouns 43, 48, 97
Declension Charts 208
Demonstrative Pronouns 48
Declination of 48
Negative Pronouns 20
Personal Pronouns 4, 14
Declinations 14
Possessive Pronouns 43
Declination of 43
Reflexive Pronouns 6, 15, 97
Subject Pronouns 4, 10
Leaving Out 10
Pronunciation 1–3
of adjective endings 64

Q

Quantity Words 164
Numbers 169
Questions Words 155
Question Words 52
Ako 23
as “Than” 64
Čo 23
Declination 24
Kde 3, 23
Kedy 23, 155
Kto 23, 52
Like Ktorý 52
Prečo 23
Word Order 5

S

Should 134
Soft Consonants 2, 32, 37
Stress 1
Superlative 64

T

Telling time
  Ordinal Numbers 169
Telling Time 146
To like 126, 253

U

Unvoiced Consonants 2

V

Verb Conjugation 10
  Byť 17
Verbs 74, 79, 84, 88, 92, 97, 130
  and Dative Case 182
  Changing to nouns, adjectives, adverbs 88
  Command form 130
  Conditional 137
    If-Then 137
  Conjugation Charts 205
  Irregular 79, 206
  L-form 79, 104, 133
  Modal Verbs 76
  of Motion 92
  Past Tense 105
  Perfective and Imperfective 84
  Prefixes 93
  Reflexive 97
    Two in the same clause 97
  Summary of Tenses 86, 105
  Verb Endings 75
  Verb Prefixes 80
  Verbs of Motion 79
    Isť 79
  Verb Stems 74, 79
    Irregular Stems 79
    Regular Verb Stems 74
  with Fourth Case 187
  with Genitive Case 177
  with Instrumental 192
  Word Order 4
Voiced Consonants 2
Vowels 1
  Dropping out 36, 79, 104

W

When 155
Word Order 4, 14, 39
  and Adjectives 39
Would 133

THE CHURCH OF
JESUS CHRIST
OF LATTER-DAY SAINTS